

# Ultimately Tarot

by John Field



**The most informative book on the Tarot  
you have ever seen!**

In loving tribute to my sons Kyle and Luke for having the patience with me during the time it took me to write this book, and to my sisters Ann and Helen who I know will always be there for me.

Copyright © 2010 John Field

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without prior permission of the copyright owner.

ISBN 978 1 4461 9780 6

## **Disclaimer**

This e-book is the product of the author's research, long-term experience, and personal insights. It is not intended to be a substitute for therapy or professional advice, nor does it guarantee any specific benefit or outcome to the reader. Readers must accept full responsibility for their actions and use of the material in this e-book.

# Contents

Introduction.....	4
What is Tarot?.....	5
The History of Tarot.....	8
Tarot and Psychology.....	12
The Major Arcana.....	17
The Minor Arcana.....	27
Tarot and Astrology.....	33
Tarot and Numerology.....	48
Tarot and the Kabbalah.....	65
The Major Arcana Interpretations.....	76
The Minor Arcana Interpretations.....	214
The Spreads.....	419
Tarot and Psychic Ability.....	450
Chakras.....	473
Spirit Guides.....	483
Final Thoughts.....	493

# Introduction



In today's world we do not use our psychic instincts because we rely too much on technology and science, but we all have the ability to develop our psychic power. We have also become too reliant on others to make the decisions for us in our everyday life, instead of using our own intuition.

I am self-taught and have developed my psychic ability mainly through the tarot. I am no TV star, just an ordinary man who has worked and studied hard through classes, books and practice.

Approximately thirty years ago I used to design and read astrology charts for clients, and my interest in the tarot cards and psychic ability came about when I decided to phone a clairvoyant to read the cards for me. A couple of days later I arrived at the clairvoyant's front door, she answered it and said, "John, what on earth are you doing here?" I replied, "I've come for the card reading that I booked with you," to which she answered, "you have no need to be here, you can do it yourself." I had never met this woman before and she seemed to know everything about me, even before I had stepped over the threshold of the door. Anyway she made me a cup of tea and still did the reading. That first meeting with this clairvoyant will always stay in my mind, and from that day my life went in a different direction. I studied everything connected with psychic ability and the tarot.

# What is Tarot?



The Tarot is a deck of knowledge and a means of guidance through symbolism of events or obstacles in our spiritual (inner) or apparent (outer) world. The Tarot deck has seventy-eight cards and are divided into the Major and Minor Arcana. Arcana means “secret” or “mystery” and is from the Latin word *arcanum*. The Tarot can be used as a tool to arouse our intuition and an aid for meditation, divination, spiritual development, counsel and direction.

There has been a lot of debate concerning the Tarot because of a lack of understanding about their use. The dictionary says it is a fortune-telling pack, but I disagree with that interpretation. It is the tool that I use to gain insight and understanding in to a person's past and present situation.

It aids to guide the seeker to make the right decisions and possible choices in their life, and helps them to come to terms with issues from the past that they keep carrying with them into their present situation. So you can say that it combines spirituality and psychology, as they both increase awareness of the issues that are shaping their current circumstances. At the end of the day, the outcome is up to the person who is looking for the guidance because we can't change their will, we can only show them their possible choices, direction or action. It is not the Devil as some would believe.

When I started learning the tarot, I was looking for the ‘real’ interpretations for the cards. I eventually realised there is no such thing. There are no strict rules to interpret the tarot because we are all different and see things differently therefore you have to use your own intuition to guide you to the answers you are seeking.

There are twenty-two picture cards in the major arcana. These cards illustrate archetypes that everyone relates to psychologically, and various powerful forces such as the *Devil*, *Judgement* and *Death*. The major arcana (or trump cards) depict the greater events in our lives and symbolises some prevalent aspect of our experiences.

Each trump card has a name and a number, some are made up of characters, some have names that correspond with forces connected to heavenly bodies of astronomy, and some plainly carry the card's meaning. When these cards appear in a reading, the situation or issue is not commonplace or short-lived. They represent our motivating forces and our predominant feelings. The major arcana cards are unique because they can extract arcane and emotional responses. They inform us of the causes and the origins of the affairs and situations in our life, which are not really predictable but usually turn out to be.

The minor arcana depicts the more routine, everyday aspects of our lives, and offers remarkable information into our experiences or circumstances and aids to guide us in the right direction. The minor arcana contains fifty-six cards and are made up of four suits: Wands (or staves), Cups, Swords and Pentacles (or coins). Each suit contains ten pip cards (Ace to ten) and four court cards: The Page, The Knight, The Queen and The King. The four elements: Fire, Water, Air and Earth are also mirrored in the four tarot suits. The past, present and future situations, circumstances and events are divulged with the minor arcana, and the information provided is very accurate and valuable and an important part of the reading, but must be considered as complementary to the information revealed by the major arcana. The court cards refer to either a person or a situation, and can mean that other people are influencing the situation or getting involved when several court cards are shown in a spread.

Each card does have it's own traditional interpretation, and studying these meanings will develop and strengthen your intuition, which eventually will improve your psychic sense. Tarot can bring insight into everyday situations,

emotional problems, understanding people better, and helps you to see new opportunities or changes that may happen in your life, it can also advise you of how to handle these changes. By working with the cards regularly you will gather more information than you can in any book. Although, the more you read to start with, the more confident you will become.

When you choose cards for a tarot spread, whether for yourself or others, it will seem that you have unconsciously chosen the correct cards to interpret the current or past situation for that particular person's reading. In other words, a person receiving a reading will choose cards significant to their situation. Now all you need to do is practice and study the cards, it's not magic.

# The History of Tarot



There is no real proof when and where the Tarot originated, but they probably precede playing cards and were used for gambling and other entertainment.

Cards which are mentioned in connection with the Tarot are those of Baldini dated around 1470, a set regarded as belonging to Andrea Mantegna but there are no records of what they were used for, whether they were used for divination, amusement or gambling, we do not know.

Historically they date from the fourteenth century, and from court records of 1393 King Charles VI employed a painter named Jaquemin Gringonneur to design and produce three packs of gilded and coloured cards, for which a payment was made. These cards included the Major Tarot Trumps and the Minor Arcana.

In 1398 card gambling was banned in Europe, especially in Germany, but it has been recorded that in 1379 money was paid for a set of cards by the Duke of Brabant, and through the Code of Nuremberg in 1380 card-playing was re-established.

Some parts of the Minchiate card set of around 1415 from Florence is said to have been in the possession of Countess Gonzaga in Milan, but the complete pack contained ninety-seven cards which contained the Major Trumps and others taken from the Baldini card set.

A set referred to as the Bolognese Tarot contained the Major Trumps, but the twos, threes, fours and fives of the minor cards were taken out, leaving only



sixty-two cards. This set of cards is said to have been modified as a Tarot by an exiled Prince who resided in the city of Pisa at the beginning of the fifteenth century. This Bologna pack must have been evident what it was being used for, because in 1423, St Bernardin of Sienna was responsible for burning many decks of cards and preached against gambling and other forms of playing or using cards. The famous Visconti deck, created for the Duke of Milan, Filippo Visconti was saved from destruction.

In 1463 it was forbidden to import foreign cards into England, this is the first positive record in this country to mention cards. At this time the country was in the reign of King Edward IV, he did not ban gambling because card-making was a commercial success.

Many of the early packs of cards are French, and a well-known example is the Tarot de Marseilles. The Italians stopped making cards in the seventeenth century and started importing them from France, and they were probably used to play a game called tarocco in Italy and tarot in France. The designs or symbolism on the Marseilles are still used today and based on medieval origins.

In 1773 Antoine Court de Gebelin, an archaeologist, who just prior to the French Revolution, spent several years publishing a series of books named *Le Monde Primitif*. He was the first person to write about the Tarot when it was quite unknown in Paris, and pronounced it to be remnants of an Egyptian book belonging to Thoth the Egyptian god, patron of magicians and scribes. The Greeks and Romans related Thoth to their god Hermes. Gebelin believed that these fragments were a form of Tarot and had survived with the Israelites (gypsies) through their mass departure from ancient Egypt. The Romany word for a pack of cards is *Tar*. One of Gebelin's friends named Alliette wrote a book on the Tarot in 1783 (under his reversed name of Etteilla) and also created a deck of cards to accompany the book. Gebelin and Etteilla made a

contribution to our knowledge, but their views linking the Tarot to ancient Egypt, to Morocco and the magi are not accepted by today's Tarot historians.

Alphonse Louis Constant, a French occultist who changed his name to Eliphas Levi in, reported in 1855 that the Tarot was brought to Europe by the Romanies from the Middle East. Levi, a Catholic who had also trained as a priest, devised an interpretation of the Tarot based on the cabbala. Magicians and occultists became inspired by Levi's writings and founded a movement based on the Rosicrucians, a society dedicated to the study of metaphysical and mystical subjects. In the eighteenth century, freemasonry was involved with Rosicrusianism and had incorporated ritual and symbolism to which only those with special knowledge could decipher, and was intended only for those who had been initiated into the order.

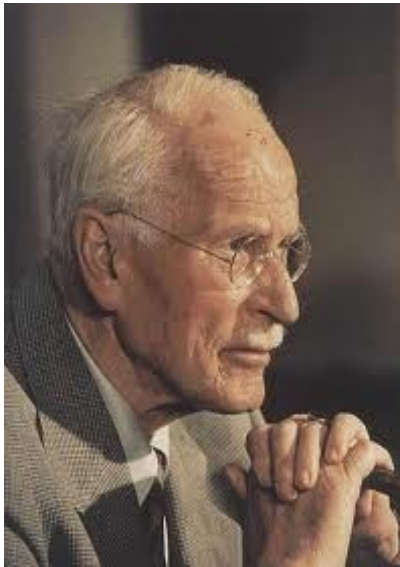
In 1889, Papus (Gerard Encausse) published *The Tarot of the Bohemians*. Papus was a Rosicrucian and believed that the major arcana signified the spiritual journey of mankind. He joined Levi's theories with the Hebrew system of numbers.

The Hermatic Order of the Golden Dawn developed the relationship between the Tarot and the cabbala, the mystical element of Judaism (the 22 paths of the Tree of Life). Samuel McGregor Mathers, one of the Order's founders, who described the Tarot as "a treatise on human will and spiritual enlightenment" changed the numerical order of the major arcana by switching positions of the *Strength* and *Justice* cards and positioning *The Fool* card before card number one *The Magician*, rather than leaving it after card number twenty-one *The World*. Mathers also incorporated astrology into the interpretations, which presented a mutual relationship with the zodiac, the astrological elements and the planets. Aleister Crowley, another member of the Order, designed his own deck of cards and reinterpreted the symbolism of the Tarot. They became known as the Thoth deck. He gave *The Fool* card the

number 0, because he believed *the Fool* should be the first card of the Major Arcana, and most modern decks follow this sequence.

Arthur Edward Waite, another member of the Golden Dawn, in 1916 worked with an artist named Pamela Colman Smith to design a new Tarot deck. This became known as the Rider-Waite pack (Rider comes from his publisher's name). Waite and Smith were strongly criticised because of the changes they made to the cards, especially the lack of artistic taste, but their interpretations made the Tarot more intelligible and understandable than the earlier designs. The Rider-Waite deck is now one of the most widely used decks.

# Tarot and Psychology



Carl Gustav Jung (1875 – 1961) was the first psychologist to relate the importance of symbolism and the tarot. He never really adopted orthodox analysis, but used his personal ideas to develop what he believed were lasting fundamental principles. Jung compared his ideas with those of other cultures, and began to add new words to our vocabulary. He was responsible for the now familiar jargon such as the ‘archetype,’ the ‘unconscious,’ the ‘collective unconscious,’

‘individuation,’ the ‘introvert,’ the ‘extrovert,’ ‘anima,’ ‘animus,’ and ‘synchronicity.’

Jung was a pupil of Sigmund Freud but broke away from his system of psychoanalysis and established his own psychic working. He founded analytic psychology, and concentrated more on a client’s current conflicts rather than following the path of Freud’s treatment of neuroses, who thought was possibly developed from childhood or sexuality. Jung stressed the importance of people needing to find a balanced opinion in any particular topic or question, instead of relying too much on logic or science, and accentuated the advantage of combining spirituality and a comprehension of the unconscious.

By 1934 Jung’s seminars no longer comprised of any case information, but was concerned with analysis and study of general mythology, folklore and Eastern religions. It was after he read Richard Wilhelm’s translation of the Chinese alchemical book “*The Secret of the Golden Flower*,” that gave Jung the seal of approval to publicise his focus on the study of alchemy. The book presented a working model for Jung to combine the particular philosophy, medicine and religion that explained his theory. When reading the book, Jung

found interesting similarities between the texts and their writers, especially within the Christian religion. To him, alchemy was about the process of eternal growth he called “individuation,” which is the process of personal development through communication between the conscious mind and the unconscious or subconscious. In other words, learning to communicate with that part of the mind which is usually inaccessible to the conscious mind, but which affects behaviour, emotions, actions, the inner self, psyche, id, and heart, the inherited instinctive impulses of the individual as part of the unconscious.

Jung defined the subconscious of a person as a division into two branches, a personal unconscious, which is derived from the individual’s experience, and a collective unconscious, which is derived from ancestral memory and experience common to all mankind.

When Jung was writing *Aion*, he became interested in “synchronistic connective principles.” He believed that astrological information could define characteristic traits of individuals, and, therefore, could be used as a study of character or an interpretation of a person’s situation. Jung employed four members of the Psychological Club of Zurich, one of them being his daughter Gret, a respected authority and teacher of astrology, and the other members had for a long time been interested in astrology through the Tarot. Gret provided much of the driving force for Jung to select it as the best method of what he was now calling “synchronicity.” They decided to use the Grimaud cards of Antoine Court de Gebelin, the *Ancien Tarot de Marseilles*, because Jung thought it was the only deck that had the right properties and fulfilled the requirements of imagery and symbolism that he obtained from the alchemical texts.

Jung’s “theory of synchronicity” assumes that everything in the universe is connected, and our outer world is a mirror of our inner world. When the interpretation of the cards make sense to the client in a tarot spread, then synchronicity is at work. Supporters of Jung’s tarot system have found that the

symbols and images in the major arcana cards of the tarot deck can be used to aid clients to identify with their archetypes. The images of the archetypal figures found in the tarot help unconscious knowledge to surface. They also help to relate with the client's difficulties or situation, and mirror the underlying causes, desires and fears which can shape the predetermined course of destiny or events.

Jung claimed that archetypes are abstract mental images of behaviour patterns, regular or logical forms, order, systems, habits, ideals or models inherited from man's earliest ancestors, and present in the collective unconscious. With experience you will become aware of how these archetypes will effect you and those around you. These archetypes include the shadow, the anima and animus, and the wise old man. The tarot also contains other important archetypes, especially the Self, being the master archetype, in which we shape our whole lives, and that the Self is constantly developing and only becomes fully realised when all of our personality aspects are equally evident.

The "shadow" links the aspects of our personality perceived by others. It refers to the detrimental aspects of our personality such as fears, inhibitions, emotional problems, obsessions, complexes, or fixations, which must be confronted and come to terms with, so that we can move on and become whole. The Jungian "shadow" archetype relates to the Devil in the major arcana cards, and refers to the dark side of our personality.

In Jungian psychology everyone has an inner image of their opposite gender. These images are unconscious and are often attributed or projected onto those whose characteristics match the inner image they carry. Jung described these unconscious images as "animus" and "anima." Animus is the masculine principle found in the female psyche, which means breath, wind or spirit. Anima, the feminine principle, means soul, and is found in the feminine part of a man's unconscious. The Emperor in the major arcana is the Jungian

archetype of the animus, and the Empress the archetype of the anima. Therefore, if the Emperor appears in a tarot spread for a woman, she may possess the masculine attributes of that card, and vice versa if the Empress was in a spread being read for a man.

The “wise old man” is a figure in the major arcana cards, and often turns up in a tarot spread when we are seeking guidance and direction. He represents the old proverb, “Know thyself.” The wise old man is suggesting that we trust our own inner guidance, to quietly contemplate and take the time to consider matters carefully. Jung’s “wise old man” archetype relates to the Hermit and also the Hierophant of the major arcana. Other archetypes will be in evidence later in this book with my interpretations of the tarot cards.

Jung invented the terms “introvert” and “extrovert.” He claimed that introverted personalities were those whose “ego” is turned more towards the internal and unconscious, whereas extroverts leaned more towards outer reality and external activity. Therefore, to be excessively introvert or too extrovert represents a lack of emotional or intellectual development. Jung classified the introverted and extroverted types, and divided them into activities of the conscious mind: intuition, feeling, thinking and sensation.

Jung considered that, each individual will have at least one of these functions but others may need to be developed through sustained or concentrated effort, if they were to become whole. He said: “For complete orientation all four functions should contribute equally.” These functions may help to improve our understanding of the Minor Arcana of the tarot deck:

<b>Jungian Function</b>	<b>Tarot Suit</b>	<b>Element</b>
Intuition	Wands	Fire
Feeling	Cups	Water
Thinking	Swords	Air
Sensation	Pentacles	Earth

Critics have found Jung's psychology excessively mystical and unscientific in some parts.

Despite the criticism, Jung's ideas have been hugely popular. Jungian psychology has led to the development of highly accurate personality profiling, and has contributed to the development of psychometric testing, which is widely used in human resources departments for assessing the suitability of job employment.



# The Major Arcana



The Major Arcana cards correspond to the archetypal stages of our life. The Fool is beginning this journey, and the twenty-two cards of the major arcana describe the different aspects of the situations we have to contend with or the people we meet in life, and attributes needed to take care of them. The images on the major arcana cards tell us of significant changes occurring in our life, and mirror important actions that may need to be taken, or discovers the hidden potential within us. It is a symbolic picture-book of a journey that starts with the innocence of the Fool, through the twenty-two stages of learning in order to master the situations and challenges in our life, eventually arriving at the World, the final stage of our journey, whole and enlightened.

The cards in the major arcana describe 'fated' conditions, with meanings that go beyond personal or routine situations. When a major arcana or 'trump' card appears in a reading, it can signify that we are being influenced by circumstances and forces that we have no control over. They also represent spiritual aspects and archetypes, as well as experiences that shape us on an inner level, whether or not they are obvious in our outer world. The symbols trigger our subconscious to go deeper than the surface messages, and as we become more confident when reading the cards we gain increased depth.

## The Fool's Journey

The Fool's Journey is a metaphor of his journey through life. Each major arcana card is a stage in his journey, or an experience he must incorporate to become whole. This is the Fool's story of our life.



### **The Fool**

The Fool is you and I starting out on our journey of life, unaware of what is before us. On his journey he will encounter many obstacles, learn many skills, he may fall in love, get married and have children. The Fool will also face temptation and be unaware of the hardships in front of him, but he has a desire to go forward and is ready to embrace whatever comes his way. He will be triumphant in some areas of his journey and may even become a hero. He may even come to a stage where he feels that he has fulfilled his journey, then later on in life realises he has other goals to accomplish and carries on from where he left off. So the Fool will keep on travelling on his quest until he understands who he is and the role he has to play in life.



### **The Magician**

On starting his journey, he first encounters the Magician, who teaches the Fool that everyone has the ability to create their own magic. The Fool soon realises that the magic comes from within, it is the magic of our will, our mind and our heart. He now learns to focus his creative energy by using his inner tools of willpower, awareness and concentration to make an impact and give magic to the world.



### **The High Priestess**

Having learned about willpower, the Fool feels that direction and expression of his will are missing and doesn't want to squander it. The High Priestess comes to his aid to teach him to fix his mind on a goal and his unrealised potential. The Fool learns to go deep into his subconscious and realises that nothing exists if we don't fix our mind on it. The High Priestess has helped the Fool to tap into the mysterious subconscious to become aware of the boundaries between visible and invisible. She informs him about hidden elements, emotional concerns, and of intuitive and psychic feelings. The Fool is reminded to listen to his inner conscience, knowledge, hunches and heart. He now understands that when

united with will that wisdom is born. The Fool has learned to exert his will in a wise manner. The Magician and the High Priestess compliment each other. Each is necessary for balance.



### **The Empress**

With will united to wisdom the Fool carries on with his quest and meets up with the Empress. She is the great Mother Earth and represents love, growth, productivity, fulfilment, satisfaction and joy. The Empress also signifies nourishment, fertility and abundance, and nurtures the Fool with her support, introducing him to the world of nature and sensation. He learns desire, to feel, to give and receive love, as well as being able to act, see, produce, give life and create. The Fool delights in the abundant goodness of Mother Earth and experiences happiness and joy in his actions.



### **The Emperor**

The Fool's joy of action needs to be directed. He is introduced to the Emperor, the husband of the Empress. The emperor represents structure and authority. The Fool learns there are patterns to his world, and is taught how to direct his actions towards an aim, a purpose. He also learns that his will is not always paramount and there are rules and certain behaviours necessary for his wellbeing. There are people in authority that will enforce such guidelines. These restrictions can be frustrating, but through patient direction of the Emperor, the Fool begins to understand their purpose. He understands his power of action never stops and always carries on. The Fool is becoming a leader and can use his ideas to help others. He can now move forward with courage and ambition.



### **The Hierophant**

The Fool ventures out into the wider world, and eventually comes into contact with the Hierophant. The Fool is curious, he thinks, "who is this priest who talks of mysteries and esoteric principles?"

He wants to know more of this secret talk and joins with a group of students who study the Hierophant's teachings. The Hierophant teaches the Fool in the disciplines of his way of life. The Fool learns of tradition and morals, such as conformity, beliefs, customs, conduct and behaviour. At first he struggles with this dogma and conformity. He tries to assess his faith in this system of belief, and wonders if it will outweigh his independence and his commitment to his own truth and way of life. After a while the Fool realises he feels a sense of belonging and identity within this organisation, these organised belief structures start to enlighten him and he begins to enjoy learning about these customs and values. Having grasped and understood this arcane grounding the Fool moves on to the next chapter in his life.



### **The Lovers**

Before, the Fool had been preoccupied with his own affairs, and now he is experiencing the desire for a sexual partnership. Now the struggle begins to unite this delicate subject with another person.

This is the moment when the Fool will have to make complicated and difficult choices. He is ready to learn about attraction, romance and a union with someone else. But is he ready? Perhaps he first needs to find a union within himself and decide if his own values, opinions and desire are strong enough to become involved in a relationship. The Fool will be ready to move into a relationship when he has found the desire and made the decision to do so.



### **The Chariot**

He has gone through the desire and made his choice. The Fool is now on the path of his destiny. His mind has been focused and energised by the difficult choices and decision-making at the Lovers stage.

The Fool is confident and has no doubt that he is going to succeed and go places. He has a strong personality, inner control and feels he is unique, has lots of self-esteem, a skilful mind and dreams and ideas that only he can express. The only thing wrong with this is the Fool has not learned that life is not as black and white as that, he has to realise life involves conflict and

compromise. The Fool must understand and be aware that his dreams are not going to be as straightforward as he thought they would be. He now knows they need planning and direction.



### **Strength**

The Fool has to draw on his own strength as he faces new challenges. He thought that he had everything under control, including himself, and now realises that life is not as smooth running as he had thought. The Fool has found there are many obstacles and barriers standing in his way which need to be overcome. He becomes frustrated and disillusioned, and excessive passion rises. The Fool does not realise that the strength he needs is within him. He has to learn to draw on his own inner strength to face life's challenges. He also needs to become aware of patience and tolerance, and needs to use a gentle and loving strength if he is to overcome these setbacks. When the Fool has learned to control his attitude he will be able to move forward.



### **The Hermit**

The Fool is now looking for answers to his own existence. He feels the need to search for his own truth as to why he is here, and takes time out alone, away from the rat race, to reflect and meditate on his feelings, his influence and his motivation. It is a matter of identity that the Fool looks within for direction. He may even need guidance from someone who could give him advice. When the Fool has found the answers to his own truth he will once again be in full control of himself and his prospects.



### **The Wheel of Fortune**

After his solitary soul searching, the Fool learns that life is unpredictable and he cannot take anything for granted, because Fortune changes. He now understands that thought becomes action, action becomes cause, and cause becomes effect, and the wheel of life goes round and round and we are swept along with it. The Fool realises

that the wheel can change, either by fate or by the careful deliberation of his conscious mind. His objectives and motivations are restored, and he realises his destiny and is ready to move into action again.



### **Justice**

Our actions have consequences and we alone are accountable for them. The Fool has to find some balance and harmony in his life and make some important decisions through wisdom and knowledge. He looks back on his past and the relationships that have made him the person he is now, and brought him to this stage in his life. He realises his past was not perfect and wants to make amends for any wrong doings. The Fool takes full responsibility for his past actions and hopes he can wipe the slate clean and move on. He needs to be true to himself or Justice will be served. Will he learn and have the ability to make a firm decision to lead a balanced life?



### **The Hanged Man**

The Fool moves on but finds life tough. It seems that everything around him has come to a standstill and his dreams are not being realised. The Fool feels he has no alternative but to let go and see what happens. His world has been turned upside-down and he feels lost. Eventually, he realises that after letting go things are starting to work out for him. The Fool has learned that sometimes sacrifices have to be made, and he is no longer deluded by his destiny or what role he has to play in life. The Fool's own inner self has guided him to the belief that his desire no longer makes any sense, because he has already experienced it and now it is free of urgency and pressure.



### **Death**

Only now, during his journey, is the Fool able to understand that he needs to shed old habits and needless concerns, or even end a way of life that is no longer appropriate, which also includes relationships and beliefs. The Fool discovers that Death is not a permanent state but a transition to a more fulfilling way of life.



### **Temperance**

After facing the death of his dream and his ego, the Fool becomes flexible, understanding with others and grounded in the real world. He has come far and found an inner balance in his life. The extreme experiences the Fool has encountered have made him become appreciative of moderation. He now realises that the journey through life is unpredictable, unrehearsed and always developing, and has learned to combine all of his qualities into a focused whole.



### **The Devil**

The Fool has matured, but despite this, he has to face more challenges in the shape of his own demons. Has he absorbed the lessons of Temperance? Life is filled with temptation and the Fool is urged to honestly analyse his pipedreams, his attractions, and his desires. These are chains that can tie us down so much that we become enslaved to them. The Fool needs to listen to his heart, and be conscious of his faults and shortcomings, then needs to accept them and move on. The Devil is made by us and can always be overcome by us. In order to grow the Fool will feel every emotion possible. By learning to confront his fears and emotional swings, he must deal with them face to face in order to free himself from restriction, and must not allow them to deter him from pursuing his inner or spiritual path.



### **The Tower**

If the Fool has not learned the lessons of the Devil then a severe shake up may be inevitable, represented by the Tower. The Fool tumbles over the edge. Everything he expected from himself comes crashing down, and much of the confidence he had built up in the earlier stages of his journey has faltered and now he is experiencing an overwhelming fall from grace and unpredictable life changes. The Fool must investigate the causes of his downfall and disposition, and maybe direct his thoughts towards his own ego and temperament, as well as looking at the obstacles that the outer world (society) has put before him. Perhaps this drastic change will make the Fool face the truth about being tied to materialism and temptation symbolised by the Devil.



### **The Star**

After the upset of the Tower, the Fool now finds his own Inner Light and the negative energies of the Devil are replaced with hope and inspiration. He is ready for further enlightenment and development of his special talents. The Fool's heart is free and he has learned that he does not need to even try to exercise his influence. He has attained inspiration and knows what needs to be done. This is the peace after the storm. He now has peace of mind and has new goals to aim for.



### **The Moon**

The joy and happiness brought by the Star has made the Fool vulnerable to the illusions of the Moon. He begins to have his ego tested through his fantasies, his imagination and visions that have stemmed from his personal and collective subconscious. The Fool has developed inner conflict, feelings of dread, fear of the unknown and struggle. He cannot see clearly and jumps to the wrong conclusions and makes unwise decisions. The Fool feels that others are deceiving him and treating him unfairly. He has become disappointed with people and his experiences, and thinks he is being victimised by his circumstances. What the Fool does not



realise is that when he focuses on bad luck and misery he will bring more of the same to his life through the law of attraction. The Fool needs to learn to take charge of his reactions and attitude and not to be overpowered or overemotional by his circumstances, but look for the cloud with the silver lining. When he has found this he can move on.



### **The Sun**

The Sun is shining down on the Fool, and after being lost in the moonlight he can now see where he is going. He has learned a great deal throughout his journey, now everything seems brighter and he is overjoyed. No challenge is too daunting and his conscious planning and individual efforts are being rewarded. Happiness and illumination have come into the Fool's life after the suffering of his long journey.



### **Judgement**

The Fool looks back on his journey and sees the errors he has made along the way. The difficulties, the temptations, the guilt, embarrassment, discomfort and regret have all become lessons through his journey. This is a time for revival, a time to pay off old debts, emotionally or financially and wipe the slate clean once and for all. The Fool has now discovered who he really is and can make the necessary decisions for the future. He can now move forward with a renewed sense of clarity, he is ready to follow his dream and true vocation. Now it is time for the Fool to excel himself.



### **The World**

The cycle is now complete. The Fool is free to go in any direction he likes. By combining and balancing the inner harmony he has finally attained, with the skills he has learned in life, he has achieved real success. The Fool is adept in any undertakings and profits at whatever he takes on. He is confident and everyone makes sure that he is rewarded for his skills and service. He has accomplished many things, and

there are many opportunities open to him, so the Fool was not foolish after all. He is now fully aware of his place in the world and knows this is only the end of one cycle in his life, and will inevitably start on another journey that will lead him to even greater levels of knowledge and understanding. The Fool will never stop growing.

# The Minor Arcana



The largest part of the deck is the Minor Arcana which consists of fifty-six cards. The Major Arcana tells us about the archetypal characters, events, values and universal themes that strongly stand out at the time of the reading. The Minor Arcana breaks down these themes into manageable components to enable us to work with the circumstances of our everyday life that

we may have to deal with, such as our activities, concerns, emotions, the people involved, or our own personality.

The Minor Arcana are divided into four suits, Wands, Cups, Swords and Pentacles, and each of these suits have a particular approach to life. The four suits encompass every aspect of life and give more personal detail to the areas of our situation that is represented by the Major Arcana. In other words, while the Major Arcana is very important indeed and indicates strong areas of concern or strength, the Minor Arcana will pick out the bones of the situation.

## The Suits

### Wands

The suit of Wands corresponds to the element of fire. They relate to the suit of Clubs in an ordinary pack of cards, the season of spring and the months of March, April and May. People born under the element of fire and the astrological star signs of Aries, Leo and Sagittarius are also represented in the suit of Wands. The element of fire is partially similar to Jung's Intuitive type. It is the impact of the leader, the entrepreneur, the master, the maestro, the expert and the professional. Creative thinking and the ability to use his or her talents in whatever field of business are also a Wand and fire element trait. If a Wand is surrounded by Cups, it can lose the energy of fire through

boredom or lack of enthusiasm, so before you take it for granted that Wands are in a positive position look to see where they are placed in the spread. The fire element expresses hopefulness and confidence and even when this optimism is badly positioned, it one way or another, usually triumphs. When there are several wands in a spread they bring movement action and creativity. They are associated with travel whether it is mental, physical or spiritual, and can signify business trips or journeys for pleasure. Mental journeys and challenges are also suggested by this suit. Wands also indicate deals and negotiations that may be related to business matters, property dealings, family matters, party gatherings and social events. Wands are enthusiastic, ambitious, and are not shy when it comes to taking a chance or a gamble, and could be tempted to take more risks than is sensible. Creativity, especially in the forms of writing and the spoken word are indicated with the Wands.

### **Cups**

The suit of Cups corresponds to the element of water. They relate to the suit of hearts in an ordinary pack of cards, the season of summer and the months of June, July and August. People born under the water element and the astrological star signs of Cancer, Scorpio and Pisces are also represented in the suit of Cups. The element of water is partially similar to Jung's feeling type. Cups are the suit of emotions and sensitivity. They describe relationships, feelings, love, romance and psychic insight. The feelings suggested by the Cups suit are the ability of the Water element to flow and fill up spaces. These spaces can surface as a wakening of creativity and fertility, whether it's the birth of a child, the abundance of nature, or the development of talent or ideas. In career matters the water element suggests the ability to become aware of our subconscious motives, learn to trust our intuition and develop greater emotional understanding. Cups and the water element can feel and sense the amount of trust in the people that you need to work with.

## **Swords**

The suit of Swords is similar to the Spades in an ordinary pack of cards. They relate to the season of autumn and the months of September, October and November. People born under the air element and the astrological star signs of Gemini, Libra and Aquarius are also represented in the suit of Swords. Swords are a suit of intellect, thought and reason and correspond to the element of air. The element of air is particularly similar to Jung's thinking type. Truth, justice and moral principles are the concerns of the Swords suit. Swords can indicate conflicts, worries and difficulties that need a solution or action to be taken. They also suggest people of social stature or authority with problems or upsets. Swords and the air element are linked with the educated mind. Ideas are always carefully thought out, scrutinized and categorised. Sometimes the Swords refer to mental circumstances or theoretical situations rather than definite actions or events. When Swords appear in a spread, whatever the situation, courage is always needed. Words, communications, conversations and verbal arguments are regular characteristics of the Swords suit.

## **Pentacles**

The suit of Pentacles corresponds to the element of earth and symbolizes material concerns. They relate to the suit of Diamonds in an ordinary pack of cards, the season of winter and the months of December, January and February. People born under the element of earth and the astrological star signs of Capricorn, Taurus and Virgo are also represented in the suit of Pentacles. The element of earth is similar to Jung's sensation type. Pentacles and the earth element govern things that we can see, touch, taste and smell, and matters involved with business, career, property, status and money. They are a suit of practicality and security, and linked to working with the specific requirements needed for any task, situation or, in fact, any matter. Pentacles also symbolize prosperity and success in almost everything. They are concerned with what is actually occurring at the time rather than what is wanted, therefore, a more realistic approach should be taken on.

## **The Structure of the Suits**

The suits are structured much like our everyday playing cards with the ten numbered cards (Ace – Ten) and four court cards (King, Queen, Knight and Page). Each card speaks to us through its own energy.

### **Aces**

An Ace announces the themes of its suit and always represents positive forces. They are strong, energetic and a natural leader of the suit.

### **Numbered Cards**

The number of the card has a symbolic message. They are the different aspects of our everyday life through our situations, emotions, interactions with others, events and experiences we have encountered. The numbered cards are also connected with the everyday feelings, thoughts and activities that are happening around us.

### **Tens**

A Ten takes the themes that are introduced by the Ace to its logical solution.

### **Court Cards**

The court cards are character types with personalities that mirror the qualities of their rank and suit. They show us the quality or essence of the person we could adopt, or avoid, to help us through our circumstances. Other than indicating people and their personalities, they represent ideas, messages, situations and events likely to happen. Court cards are also associated with the astrological signs of the zodiac.

### **Kings**

A King is mature and masculine. He demonstrates authority, leadership, discipline, control and mastery in the areas associated with the suit they are connected to. Kings are strong-willed, assertive and direct and will take action to get the results he wants.

## **Queens**

A Queen is mature and feminine. She personifies the quality of the suit, the female energy or influence. Queens are associated with feelings, relationships and self-expression. She is receptive, nurturing, caring and loving, and also has good people skills, therefore, has an awareness and understanding of the people around her.

## **Knights**

A Knight is a young immature person in their teens or twenties of either gender. He is prone to excess because he has not learned to put some balance into his life and moves frantically from one extreme to the other, wild with excitement, trying to find his way in life. But we tolerate the Knights because they are sincere and eager. Knights can be many things, (go back to our knights of old, one minute they are in a raging battle and the next they are rescuing fair maidens or searching for the Holy Grail). Basically, Knights in a reading can represent people or the personality of the person represented by the suit, but it can also correspond to action or motion.

## **Pages**

A Page is a playful child or the child or adolescent within us. He is the innocence of youth and acts out the qualities of the suit with pleasure and abandon. The Page is easygoing and impulsive. He symbolizes adventure, possibility, communication, messages, development and a time for new beginnings.

## **Choosing Your Tarot Deck**

This is really a personal choice. There are many tarot decks out there and initially you will probably choose a deck that catches your eye. I have quite a few tarot decks, but mainly use the Rider-Waite cards. I suggest that if you are beginning to study the tarot you may want to use the Rider-Waite deck to start with, as the images are very colourful and every card is represented in pictorial form. They will make it easier for you to hold the symbols in your mind

in order to interpret the meanings for yourself. Alternatively, you can relate to the symbolism from my interpretations within this book. As with this book, many of the tarot books in the shops relate to the Rider-Waite deck and their archetypal symbols, therefore, it is probably a good first choice. The images will also help to stimulate your imagination and awaken your intuition. Another deck that is similar to the Rider-Waite cards is the Robin Wood pack, but the choice is yours. When you become familiar with the tarot you will probably buy more decks anyway.

### **Getting to Know Your Tarot Cards**

Once you have chosen your cards get accustomed to handling them. Look at them, shuffle them and keep using them in order to penetrate them with your energy. Spend time focusing on the pictures of each card and imagine it is a situation or place you can enter. Note anything of significance in the card, look at my interpretations if you need to or even ask others what they see in the card. Look for aspects in the cards that grab your attention and write your interpretations in a notebook. When you become more confident start to read two or three cards and look for the story in them. Just try to notice what the cards are saying to you without letting anything cloud your insight, such as your ego or sugar-coating it because you do not like what the cards are telling you. Each card should link into each other and will have a beginning, a main body and a conclusion. Always remember that you will never stop learning with the tarot. If you think you have all the information you need and stop learning, then you will stop growing as a reader and a person. The more you work with the tarot, the more it will reveal its secrets.

### **Protecting Your Tarot Cards**

Personally, I wrap my cards in a purple silk cloth and then put them inside a purple tie-up pouch that I then place inside a wooden box specially made for the tarot deck, but this is my little ritual. It does not really matter how you store them as long as you protect them from damage and others getting their hands on them without your permission.



# Tarot and Astrology



## The Four Elements

As mentioned earlier the four elements are Fire, Water, Air and Earth. They are a metaphysical idea dating back to the principles of the elements that now form the zodiac, which were applied from the Greek physician Hippocrates in the fifth century BC to Ptolemy, the Greek astrologer, astronomer and mathematician from the second century AD. It

is an idea that is used in Western astrology, alchemy and magic today therefore it is useful for a beginner of the Tarot to understand the basics of these elements.

Basically, the Fire element is generally passionate, enthusiastic and focused; the Water element is emotional, feeling and adaptable; the Air element needs mental stimulation, interaction and movement; the Earth element is practical, full of common sense and grounded. The elements also correspond to the four states; hot, dry, moist and cold, as well as the four temperaments; choleric (angry), melancholic (sad), sanguine (cheerful) and phlegmatic (calm).



## Tarot and Astrology

It is entirely your choice whether or not to use the connections between the tarot and astrology, and should regard these links as further meanings of tarot symbolism. The beginner to the Tarot should first learn about the symbolism and the archetypes of the cards, but by all means read

on if you want to combine astrology to the tarot cards.

The four elements of Fire, Water, Air and Earth are also some of the essential principles of Astrology therefore, a basic study of Astrology can be useful in understanding some of the cards and their influence. I find the connection with astrology useful when it comes to reading the court cards, as each court card can be represented by an astrological star sign. The exception to this are the Knights, but they do relate to the beginning of a cycle within their particular suit. The Major Arcana also has astrological attachments that are mentioned along with my interpretations of the Major Arcana cards.

## **The Court Cards and Astrology**



### **The Court Cards of the Element of Fire**

Aries, Leo and Sagittarius are the Wand's Fire signs of the zodiac. When these court cards appear in a spread they often signify a person, and sometimes describe a person's circumstances, situations or mental condition. In a spread the King, Queen, Knight or Page of Wand's can signify that the questioner may actually be a fire sign, or behave in a spirited (fiery) way. However, these traits are very basic and should be used as a guide, but will give a picture as to the type of person you are dealing with. We humans are much more complicated, but these traits can be very helpful in a reading. These fiery people and their situations are described as idealistic, dramatic, spirited and quixotic. They signify the fearless strength and outgoing qualities of fire.



### **Positive Aries – King of Wands**

In order to achieve success Arians take risks. They are energetic leaders, adventurous and have quick reactions that sometimes need subduing. Arians can be quick tempered, impatient, but are pioneering. They are courageous and assertive and seldom sit around or wait for others. Arians will take the initiative because they like to be in the lead, at the front of everything. They are often bold and direct but are

eager and passionate, and their energy and enthusiasm can motivate or inspire others, particularly to take action or be more adventurous. Arians need to feel that they are reaching their goals. They are determined, well organised and are usually successful in business. Wands describe the opportunity for new growth, especially in business, or they are encouraging the questioner to adopt some of the same positive qualities of the fire sign.

### **Negative Aries**

Arians should try to avoid being quick-tempered or impulsive, but their major faults are selfishness, insensitivity and single-mindedness. If things are not going right for Arian people they can become disillusioned and difficult, and may fly off the handle into a rage or become bored and detached. Sometimes they also need to resist being the bully. When the Wands represent the negative face of Aries they usually appear in the work context.



### **Positive Leo – Queen of Wands**

Leo indicates the attributes of creativity, loyalty and trust. These types are often generous, big-hearted, romantic and idealistic. Like the Sun they have warmth that emanates, surrounds and inspires those who come into contact with them. People working in the entertainment business, the theatre, the arts or other media may be represented by Leo.

Leos have a real zest for life and love their freedom to indulge in the limelight. In relationships, Leo Wands represent warm, romantic types and are loyal and sensual lovers. They love to be loved, admired, pampered, flattered and above all respected. Although Leos have a fun-loving side they can be assertive and like to be in leading roles rather than in a supporting role. Leos' commanding manner makes them ideal to take on a leading position, but if they take command without being asked they can appear domineering. Their strength, courage and integrity can inspire others, and will leave a lasting impression with their sense of drama.

## **Negative Leo**

Leos can be surprisingly sensitive and easily hurt. They don't take criticism very well, so any criticism needs to be constructive otherwise you will not be in Leos good books. Leos tend to dominate in a relationship, it is a tendency that needs to be gently checked. They are very self-assured, possibly to the point of vanity, and also have a need for attention and sometimes develop an overpowering sense of drama. Leos can become moody if they are not the centre of attention. If they don't fulfil their potential they will just seek out fun or become lazy and lethargic. These negative Wand traits usually appear within a close relationship.



## **Positive Sagittarius – Page of Wands**

Sagittarians are affectionate and exceptionally optimistic.

They like nothing better than an exciting challenge and are always thinking of ideas and plans for new projects.

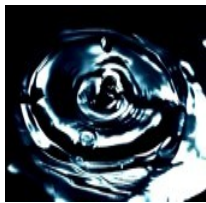
Sagittarians are adventurous and love to travel and explore in order to widen their horizons geographically, socially and spiritually. When the Wands symbolise these qualities,

challenge is essential where a career is concerned. Sagittarians don't like to feel restricted in a job that does not challenge them, either intellectually or physically. In relationships they make lively partners and will make plans for social occasions as they usually have lots of friends. Even if you are in a committed relationship with a Sagittarian, they would like to feel that they still have a certain amount of personal freedom. They are honest but have a direct approach and a tendency to be outspoken and tactless. However, for some reason their open and reasoned approach seems to get them out of difficulties.

## **Negative Sagittarius**

Sagittarians have a tendency to do too many things at the same time therefore their main problem is focusing on one thing at a time and finishing it. They cannot stand being restricted, so any relationship with a partner who is

possessive will be difficult, and probably would not last very long. Sagittarians are so enthusiastic that sometimes it can lead to taking risks, which needs to be curbed. They need personal goals and life without them will seem meaningless. If they can't be fulfilled they are likely to be overcome with depression. Sagittarians are often rather tactless and blunt, and cannot understand why others could be offended or hurt by their remarks. When the Wands signify these tendencies, they may be found in connection with work, life-patterns, and maybe personal relationships.



### **The Court Cards of the Element of Water**

The suit of Cups corresponds to the element of Water and the astrological star signs of Cancer, Scorpio and Pisces.

Typical characteristics of these Water elements usually become apparent as clear traits in the people symbolized by the Cups. Their type of personality and pattern of behaviour will be in the information of the adjacent cards in the spread. If it is not, then the cards may symbolize situations and circumstances. You can expect the Cups to be emotional characters who may be sensitive and creative. Negative Cups represent characters that are overemotional, moody, temperamental, changeable and hypersensitive. They can also be calculating, dishonest and deceptive.



### **Positive Cancer – King of Cups**

Cancerians are home-lovers and are sensitive, intuitive and loving. They have a remarkable intuition, and their instinctive reactions and decisions can usually be relied upon. They are also emotional and brave and will never give up. Cancerians have good business sense and can be clever and crafty, their skill and intuition serves them well.

They know how to accumulate money and hang on to it. The Cancerian tenacity is also apparent in their careers, they will choose to commit themselves to a chosen career path and settle down in it. They usually have warm and loving relationships because they have so much to give and will do

it instinctively and intuitively. Cancerians are happy to create something that will automatically deliver what they need and require, and never make a demand in a relationship. They are sentimental and their love of the past will ensure that special occasions and anniversaries are suitably celebrated. When the court cards relate to Cancerian traits, it may be someone or people who are attached to you by strong emotional bonds. If a spread concentrates on relationships or family matters, then the court cards may represent family members or a partner, even if they are not Water signs.

### **Negative Cancer**

Their major fault is moodiness and they can be overprotective. The ruling planet of a Cancerian is the Moon. Their moods can fluctuate with the Moon's phases, so you never know whether they are going to be happy or miserable. Cancerians are very sensitive to any kind of criticism. They also have an incredible memory therefore we have to be very wary of offending them because they will remember it for years to come. They take love very seriously, and if a Cancerian person becomes attached to you they can be too possessive and suffocating. So, if there is someone who seems like that to you, one of the Cups will probably represent that person.



### **Positive Scorpio – Queen of Cups**

Scorpios have overwhelming energy and are prepared to work hard for their security and material comfort. It is essential for them to use their energy in a positive way. It would seem that money rules their life, but it only looks that way because they are ambitious and often become enthusiastically involved with their work. Scorpios can be extremely jealous. They need someone who can be compassionate enough to deal with their physical and emotional demands with warmth and sympathy, and when they have found such a partner all of their energy will be channelled into the relationship. In the zodiac, Scorpios are one of the most sensual signs and will make a wonderful lover and companion. They are sometimes

accused of being interestingly addicted to sex. They also possess a lively psychic understanding, like a kind of sixth sense. When the court cards represent Scorpio types they are overflowing with energy, mysterious, emotionally impassioned and powerfully magnetic. Scorpio people perhaps have the strongest personalities of all the zodiacal types. They can manipulate people to their will and it is not just with their way with words, it goes deeper than that, it is like some kind of bizarre mind power. The willpower they can exercise over other people is huge. Those people you are attracted to or have a powerful effect on you may appear in a spread as Cups. The surrounding cards and the strength of the reading should make this evident.

### **Negative Scorpio**

Jealousy is the worst fault of a Scorpio, and if they have the minutest of suspicions that you have been flirting with someone, even if it is innocent, their anger will erupt like a volcano and will probably break up the relationship. They are also very secretive which can become obsessive, and they hate others sticking their noses into their personal affairs. Scorpios are prone to overindulging in all the wrong things and this needs to be curbed. If they learned to control their tempers, especially when they think they have been unfairly treated, they would do both themselves and others a great favour. If any of these are indicated elsewhere in the cards, members of the suit of Cups tend to signify the people involved.



### **Positive Pisces – Page of Cups**

Pisceans have a sensitive and caring nature. They often give more time trying to solve other people's problems than they do for their own. Pisceans make good friends, and they are kind and good at understanding the needs of others because they have a huge amount of intuition. They are imaginative and capable of dreaming up magnificent and ambitious schemes, but when it comes to put them into action, they lose

their confidence and make excuses. The Piscean can fit into any environment but then tend to fade into the background, and from there others just take them for granted, but behind the scenes their work is relentless and valuable. They can also make a terrific, sensitive and caring partner and lover, but can be too emotional and romantic. Pisceans have potential spiritual or mystical aspirations and a healthy creative imagination that could be put to good use, but usually lies dormant because of a lack of confidence to push ahead. They have a taste for the arts and all that is romantic and lyrical such as poetry and music.

### **Negative Pisces**

The qualities a Piscean has can be wasted if they are too quixotic and indecisive. They tend to lie to themselves and others, rather than face harsh reality. Their temperament can lead to real and imagined problems with health, and their mental health is easily upset by tension, and stress can cause them to overindulge in food, drink and maybe drugs. Pisceans can occasionally try to reinvent themselves by taking on a different persona and shaping themselves to it, rather than look for their own personality. They can also be critical of their partner for no particular reason, and can also become hypochondriacs.



### **Court Cards of the Air Element**

Gemini, Libra and Aquarius are associated with the Air element and the suit of Swords. They represent thinkers and intellectuals. The Air element tries to bring balance to the suit of Swords. Swords and the Air element symbolize people who are open, talkative and fair. Information and organising ideas into an understandable collective captivates them. People with the Air element in their zodiacal sign may emotionally appear to lack warmth and affection, and seem to be unsympathetic and distant, but in actual fact they have very deep feelings but have difficulty expressing them. They often represent professional and educated types of people who are endowed with a sharp and quick mind.



When Swords are negative they symbolize people who can be liars, verbally aggressive, hostile and resentful. They seldom look to physical violence and would usually hurt with sharp words.



### **Positive Gemini – Page of Swords**

Geminians are lively, intellectual, quick-witted and talkative. They are logical, quick thinkers and need variety in life.

They are also very independent, and jealousy and possessiveness does not play any part in their life. Friends are very important to Geminians, and they will find it

unbearable to be stuck in a relationship where they are not able to have the freedom to spend time with their close friends. They are capable of taking in information very quickly, but take the risk of knowing too little about too much. In relationships, Geminians find it very difficult to commit to a steady partner, and the relationship will not last very long if the partnership is tedious because they can become easily bored and need shared interests, but not necessarily shared views as Geminians love to have a debate. They can be sophisticated and have a superior artistic palate. They are tactful and also good judges of character and ability.

### **Negative Gemini**

Geminians may show themselves to be confidence tricksters and liars, they love to flirt and can concoct scheming ideas to make their plans run smoothly. Their change of mood can be tiresome because it is like living with two different people, one day they will be warm and loving towards you and the next day will be angry and grouchy, and criticise everything you do.

Punctuality is not one of their strong points either. When gathering information Geminians can tend to lose interest through boredom, and their knowledge of the subject will turn out to be nothing more than superficial.



### **Positive Libra – King of Swords**

Libra is the zodiacal sign of balance and harmony. They are fair and compassionate and love everyone to be happy like themselves. Librans make good mediators because they can see both sides of a situation and love a good discussion but cannot stand disagreements. They have a strong sense of justice, fair play and morals that comes from their need for balance and rapport in their relationships. Their sociability and magnetism make them likeable people. Librans need to be liked and are friendly, affectionate and highly value their relationships. They can also be creative and artistic and it is usually reflected in their homes and their clothes. They have charm and an attraction they definitely know how to use to their advantage. Librans are always in demand socially because they make good company to be with.

### **Negative Libra**

Librans can be indecisive, that is because they are always looking for balance, and then start thinking about the reasons for and against a situation, and never actually make a decision. In relationships, Librans tend to jump into a love affair thinking that this just might be the one true love and perfect partnership, therefore, obviously they sometimes get it wrong and end up heartbroken, until the next time. If Librans cannot find the balance they are always looking for, they can turn from being charming and polite to annoying and obstinate. They can be easily influenced and too easy-going, to the extent where they will neglect themselves and become lazy.



### **Positive Aquarius – Queen of Swords**

Aquarians are kind and are the Good Samaritans of the zodiac. They are amiable and warm and always there for their friends. Aquarians are emotional, liberal and understanding. They are individualistic and make their choices freely, their ideas are usually original and can be fond of paradoxes, and are drawn to everything that is unique, novel, different and romantic. They can adapt to almost any situation or circumstance as long as they have their independence, and are able to express their original and personal ideas and creativity. Although Aquarians are ambitious it is for the freedom and not necessarily monetary gain. Aquarians are adventurous, keen and ready to undergo unusual and exciting experiences.

### **Negative Aquarius**

Aquarians cannot bear to be tied down in any way, mentally or physically, and find it hard to stay in a relationship because it means having to adapt to their partner's habits. They may be lazy, shy, unstable, dishonest, cunning and deceitful, and their whimsical change of mind, conduct and sudden moods can cause confusion and irritation to friends and other relationships. Negative Aquarians often worry about money and don't fair well to petty rules and regulations, they like to work within their own rules, and because of this it can make them stubborn.



### **Court Cards of the Element of Earth**

Pentacles are linked with the zodiacal signs of Taurus, Virgo and Capricorn and the element of Earth. These court cards symbolize people who exhibit earthy characteristics in themselves, or others in your life. They represent hard-working people who are also warm, sensual and like their material comforts. Earthy people are not flirtatious and therefore, favour commitment in their relationships. They may also have difficulty with being sympathetic, but will be helpful and supportive

in their practical way, such as organising help, or offering food and money. In a crisis, Pentacles people are fantastic, and they are also excellent hosts and make permanent loyal friends.



### **Positive Taurus – King of Pentacles**

Taureans need security in their lives and like to build a secure home. They are patient, determined and have a great deal of common sense and strength, especially in a crisis. They are methodical and like order around them, and also persistent, so they will keep plodding on to the end.

Whatever they choose as a career it has to be steady because Taureans are not risk-takers, they go to work for the money. They are afraid of being in a situation that is financially unstable, even if the job is boring they will stick to it because it is a guaranteed income. Because they are good with money they may be found in banking careers or other financial institutions. Many Taureans are naturally musical and artistic and may have an interest in the performing arts. They attract many followers whether for business, campaigns or activity. The warm-hearted Taurean is loyal and loving and operates better in a stable, steady environment. Above all they need to create a happy home and family life, they need to put down roots. The love life of a Taurean is very important as they are sensual lovers, and for them to emotionally develop they need a lasting relationship or partnership. They know how to handle their finances and cannot stand being in debt, but if close friends or relations are having difficulties they will gladly offer monetary help. A Taurean is socially very successful and they make good hosts when deciding to throw a party.

### **Negative Taurus**

Taureans have to try and control their possessiveness and jealousy, it is not good being on the receiving end when they become angered, it is like a red flag to a bull, they will charge with fury and fight to the end. Usually Taureans will try to avoid an argument, but do not push them too far. If their security is

threatened they will become bitter and unhappy, and they are not good at handling their emotions and may become lazy and stubborn. Their love of food can tend to put weight on them therefore, that coupled with laziness, who knows what will happen if they don't take any exercise.



### **Positive Virgo – Queen of Pentacles**

Virgoans are very careful, precise, thorough and tidy. They are usually talkative, friendly, lively, obliging and make themselves useful to others. If a Virgoan takes a positive direction in life they will turn out to be intelligent and sensible, very good at working on intricate assignments and not afraid of hard work. They are very organized, and will spend some time in planning a task to make sure that they have the right results, because they have to complete a task to the best of their ability. Virgoans are incredibly diligent and keep a firm control on everything, especially finances. They are very sensible, relaxed and even-tempered, and will not let any sign of emotion get in the way of their good judgement or insight. The Virgo person has an ability to adapt their behaviour to whatever situation or circle they put themselves into, and it is usually planned to obtain an end result, probably to get into a particular circle of people to improve their social standing. The considerate Virgoans make good friends especially if you need a shoulder to cry on. They are very perceptive and have a very sharp wit, which of course is in good taste and judgement, and any advice a Virgoan gives you should be considered because it would be sensible advice. In relationships, Virgoans adapt very well to married life as they are faithful, reliable, responsible and will keep the home nice too, but they will be especially proud of their family, but do not expect to see any feelings or emotion there, because they are quite undemonstrative.

### **Negative Virgo**

Negative Virgoans tend to worry about almost anything and can end up with stress related ailments, such as indigestion and bowel disorders. They also

will be terribly upset if any criticism is made towards them, because they find it hard enough to live up to their own standards and often lack faith in their own abilities. Virgoans are usually reticent and retiring, and they will withdraw from any kind of public exposure or notoriety but will criticise other people's activities or actions. It can be pretty stressful too for Virgo people to develop and stick to a close relationship, as it's that lack of faith again! Virgo people who are deficient of their positive qualities can be cunning, cruel, erratic, unstable, cynical, sarcastic and sharp in their tone of speech, finding fault and being critical. They can also be snobbish, mean and overly selfish.



### **Positive Capricorn – Page of Pentacles**

Capricorns are practical and careful. They are patient, hard-working and strong-willed and will focus all their energies towards one goal. They despise outrageous or excessive behaviour and are unshaken by adulation or sweet talk, and rarely show amazement or surprise. They are thorough and methodical in everything they do and their work will be done in a quiet, routine pattern. Capricorns are ambitious and set their sights high and are prepared to work hard to achieve their goals. They put a lot of effort into their work and often make it to the top of their profession. Although they are good workers behind the scenes, Capricorns can make excellent leaders. You will find many Capricorns working at their own businesses, because they tend to work in a solitary position anyway even though they do work well with others. In relationships Capricorns make true and loyal friends. In a partnership, they are capable of sincere and passionate affection but find it hard to show it. Love is a serious matter to a Capricorn and they will not give away their feelings or emotions too easily, they will always think the relationship through carefully before deciding to take action. If you get off with a Capricorn do not expect them to be romantic, showering you with flowers or leaving messages in your lunchbox, but they will provide for the family and be very loyal and loving.

### **Negative Capricorn**

Capricorns are noted for being ambitious and will stand up for themselves, and that gives them a reputation of being hard nuts. They don't anger very easily but it will take them a long time to forgive, and will take their revenge when the time is right. If a Capricorn should lose their position of authority they can become moody, resentful and bitterly critical. They can also become prone to depression and melancholy. When in the extreme, Capricorn people can be the most detestable people on the planet, tyrannical, lustful, morbid, deceitful, cunning, selfish and miserly. They normally find it hard to show their emotions, but a negative Capricorn will seem cold and detached to their partner. A Capricorn person can be a mystery or paradox.

# Tarot and Numerology



Numbers have been used for divination and prediction since the dawn of time, and everything from the past, and future things to come are all tied up in what we are doing and learning now, in the present. Learning to understand the numbers associated with the Tarot will help the reader to work more constructively with the cards. Numerology will give the reader a lot more information that will

be helpful in predicting the future life path and character of a person. The following information and interpretations of the numbers will enable the reader to understand the principles that epitomize each of the numbers in the Tarot.

## **Number 1 – The Aces, The Magician (I), The Wheel of Fortune (X), The Sun (XIX)**

The key words for the number one are begin, create, initiate and undertake. They suggest all that is potential and possible. This is where the seed takes root and the result is new life. One is a single component that is dramatically changing from day to day, or the beginning of an important event or happy occasion that will become a whole and be able to support itself. In other words, sometimes other people know us better than we know ourselves, this is because we are not always sure of our own potential, which maybe due to the fact that we have not yet united fully with our own Self and are still not aware of our qualities. When we do become aware then we become one with our Self. Consequently, the number one relates to the ego and the Self, and refers to the personal resources a person possesses. Many ones in a spread emphasize the availability of these resources, but does not guarantee whether they are going to be successful, fulfilled or used profitably. It indicates sudden movement and usually promises hope and progress after disruption and change. Therefore, the adjacent cards in a spread should be able to assess



the amount of energy and degree to which these personal resources can be used. The number one like the Self is independent, individual and singular. One also likes to be first in line therefore ambitious, dynamic and a natural leader with a powerful will and great potential. This number is willing to take the initiative and the action needed to create new opportunities for growth and change.

### **Key Words**

**Positive:** Ambitious, creative, competitive, confident, courageous, decisive, dominant, drive, dynamic, energetic, gregarious, imaginative, individualistic, knowledge, leadership, motivated, original, pioneering, proud, self-determination, strength, strong convictions, strong desires, strong opinions, will-power.

**Negative:** Antagonistic, boastful, bossy, cynical, demanding, domineering, egotistical, indecisive, impatient, jealous, lacks restraint, lacks originality, overbearing, loner, possessive, selfish, single-minded, too proud, tyrannical, unstable, vacillating, weak-willed.

### **Number 2 – The Twos, The High Priestess (II), Justice (XI), Judgement (XX)**

The egotistical number one has changed its nature and form and wants to merge with a partner and to share its feelings with others, to become two. The number two symbolises duality, which means there is an opposite, two underlying principles or forces that are equally balanced such as man and woman, day and night, hot and cold, inside and outside, good and bad, and so on. However, duality is not always balanced, for example, the duality of good and bad in a person is unable to be seen or felt until there is an action or reaction taken by that person. It is therefore someone who displays opposing good and bad personalities, similar to that of Robert Louis Stevenson's Jekyll and Hyde. For this reason, it is a possible union or a possible opposition within the personality of someone. In this form of duality we may need to learn

to control the balance. Accordingly, the number two may represent our search for union, harmony and balance through being receptive, sensitive, sincere and intuitive. This number is related to our emotions and feelings. People with a strong element of this number in a spread may find it difficult to find a solution or reach a conclusion to any problems they are up against. This is because their emotions and feelings may cause them to doubt their decision, and their mind will fluctuate backwards and forwards trying to find a satisfying solution. Therefore, their mind seldom rests, but the twos in a spread give the opportunity to restore the balance and resolve any conflict.

### **Key Words**

**Positive:** Agreeable, arbitration, association, balanced, charming, considerate, cooperative, calm, emotional, gentle, goodwill, harmonious, intuition, inspiration, mediation, modesty, objective, passive, partnership, persuasion, peace, protective, receptivity, sensitivity, sociable, sincerity, sympathetic, tactful, visionary, wisdom.

**Negative:** Alone, agitated, careless, clumsy, co-dependent, crafty, depressed, deceitful, extreme, extroversion, easily upset, fussy, indecisive, lack of confidence, moody, overemotional, over-tolerant, oversensitive, reticent, selfish, subservient, self-centred, strife, suspicious, tactless, timid, touchy, undignified, worried.

### **Number 3 – The Threes, The Empress (III), The Hanged Man (XII), The World (XXI)**

The number three is the effect number one has on number two, that is the effect of unity on duality. It can be looked upon as some other factor that has encroached on the peace and harmony of the number two creating a division or disunion. The number three relates to personal creativity, therefore, you can say the unity of number two has created another element, for example, the birth of a child, now two becomes three. The two people involved will have their life dramatically changed by this birth and must adapt their lifestyle to

accommodate the arrival of this child, as they are now a family. The number three also corresponds with growth, action, energy and enthusiasm.

Therefore, any problems the twos encounter must be settled so that they can move on into a much wider stage of development, and enjoy what has been achieved through their unity. There is always movement and progress with the number three that is usually built upon with whatever has been attained in its earlier work. If there are many threes in a spread then the person receiving the reading can expect to do very well in whatever field of activity they put their mind to. The number three is active, fertile and nurturing, it is the birth of something new, development and enterprise bringing with it material benefits, happiness and joy.

### **Key Words**

**Positive:** Abundance, artistic, balanced, birth, creative, charming, expressive, friendly, fertility, freedom loving, fun loving, gift with words, growth, happy, humorous, imagination, joy, literary, loving, lucky, multitalented, optimistic, productive, sensitive, success, versatile.

**Negative:** Argumentative, boastful, busybody, conceited, contrary, critical, cynical, deceitful, exaggerating, extravagant, fearful, gossip, hypocritical, indecisive, insecure, intolerant, jealous, killjoy, lazy, moody, pessimistic, scattered, self-indulgent, self-doubting, snobbish, sad, shy, sly, timid, talkative, unprepared, unforgiving, unfinished tasks, unimaginative, worried.  
Ultimately Tarot 28

### **Number 4 – The Fours, The Emperor (IV), Death (XIII)**

The number four is symbolised by the square. Ancient civilisations thought the Earth was quadrilateral, as a result the number four related to the Earth and material world. The square is the outcome of the inner resources of number one combined with the personal creativity of number three. This combination has given rise to a condition that is somewhat constant, stable and unchanging, much like the four quarters of the moon or the four seasons,

comforting and reassuring. Even the world is divided into the four directions of the compass points, North, South, East and West. There are also four suits in the Tarot deck which also relate to the four elements Fire, Water, Air and Earth. The square is the most stable structure that man can make. Have you noticed that most manufactured products are square or have four sides? For example, the TV, mobile phone, microwave, washing machine, fridge freezer, your house, and so on. Even Jung's introverted and extroverted types are divided into four activities of the conscious mind, intuition, feeling, thinking and sensation. However, as comforting as the fours are, it may have distinct limitations, where we could find ourselves being cast into the unknown suddenly facing hardship and many obstacles to overcome. Success is possible but must be achieved through hard work. The number four relates to building safe foundations and security and implies being careful and steady in your work or duties, and also putting in the effort. The fours are a stage in the progress of our goals and not the fulfilment of them. It is akin to the scientist who is trying to work on a formula for a panacea, a universal remedy. The scientist has to be realistic, practical and definitely resolute, with steadfast concentration and constant dedication. There may be a ground-breaking result, but the inclination towards limitation could prove to be disappointing, irritating and frustrating. The fours need to be balanced and in harmony like the four elements otherwise they can become inflexible and discordant. People with a strong presence of fours in a spread will be hardworking, practical and diligent and probably be successful in the business and financial world.

### **Key Words**

**Positive:** Application, accurate, building, concentration, constructive, determined, detailed, dexterous, diligent, exact, firm, hard-working, honest, logical, loyal, methodical, orderly, organised, patient, practical, pragmatic, reliable, secure, self-disciplined, sincere, skilled, stable, strong, trusting.

**Negative:** Bossy, careless, destructive, emotionally repressed, fussy, habitual, hides affections, impractical, lack of application, lack of concentration, lazy, obstinate, prone to excesses, rigid, rebellious, resentful, stubborn, tenacious, too frugal, too strict, uncommunicative, unfeeling, unreliable, unstable, untidy, weak, worrying.

### **Number 5 – The Fives, The Hierophant (V), Temperance (XIV)**

The symbol for the number five is a man who is stood with outstretched arms and legs as in the shape of the pentagram, and contained by the infinitive circle. When the pentagram points up it represents the forces of light, but when pointing down represents the forces of darkness. The five is astrologically associated with Mars which is the planet of energy, ambition, bravery and daring. However, it can also bring discord, fear, uncertainty, and upheaval. The energy of Mars can lead to disputes, anger, changes and fluctuation. The number five is not that bad though, there is freedom, choice, opportunity, vitality and determination. However, when this number has influence in a spread, everything could suddenly manifest as quite a surprise and constant effort will be needed in order to overcome obstacles, hardship and disorders as a result of not facing the problems, misunderstandings or discord between our desires, ambitions and motivations. If we respond well to changing patterns then we rise to the challenges with which we are presented. If we hesitate, withdraw or mislead, our opportunities may turn to regret. The number four is a condition or position that is stable and reassuring, but it is an order that does not change, it is rigid, rooted and inflexible. The fives will need to break down the structure of the fours in order to attain a new condition that is open and accessible to new ideas that are not dogmatic, but lively, active and responsive. With the fives there is always another goal to reach, along with the obstacles we have to overcome in getting there. This is about trying to balance and control our own lives and coming to terms with our everyday responsibilities and the demands that are put upon us. It is the number for those of us who have overcome the chaos

and disorder that we had created in the first place. Skill is needed to handle this volatile energy successfully.

### **Key Words**

**Positive:** Adaptable, adventurous, bright, change, curious, daring, drive, energetic, enterprising, enthusiastic, fond of travel, freedom loving, independent, lucky, magnetic, mental agility, mystical, progressive, quick, resourceful, sexual attraction, sociable, strong instincts, thrifty, variety, versatile, witty.

**Negative:** Avoids responsibility, changeable, confidence trickster, demanding, destructive, dislikes routine, drifting, drives too hard, easily bored, hates restriction, headstrong, impatient, impulsive, inconsistent, irresponsible, lustful, nervous, over-cautious, overconfident, pessimistic, restless, too outspoken, unfinished business, unreliable.

### **Number 6 – The Sixes, The Lovers (VI), The Devil (XV)**

After the disruption of the fives we can now start to restore some stability back into our lives. We can relax a little, lick our wounds, assess the damage and be grateful for what we have. The number six is symbolised by the six-pointed Star of David and the Seal of Solomon. God created the world in six days therefore it is the number of completion and perfection. The influence of the sixes welcomes the perfection that surrounds us. We begin to see the qualities that please our aesthetic and moral senses, and have a more favourable estimation of the world. However, it also indicates limitation because we cannot go further than perfection, unless a new element is introduced, one which is not related to the six of the minor arcana. The six is not good with setting limits. However, well-integrated sixes bestow clairvoyance and sharp insight. It is important for the six to merge so we can achieve a balance between our material and spiritual life, then this potent union will allow us to become masters of our own destiny. The number six is

linked with love, family, health, harmony, peace, caring for others, marriage and home. It gives us sensitivity, tenderness, understanding, sympathy and love for others. This number symbolises relationships of all kinds, but those with a dominant six in a spread need to spend more time looking after themselves instead of spending too much time on their relationships with others. The influence of the sixes brings beauty, fun and laughter, and the negative side of the world such as, the suffering and injustice that exists urges us to try and restore the harmony and balance because of our love for humanity and this planet. Sixes bring the best out in us. Its appearance in a spread indicates positive feelings and events.

### **Key Words**

**Positive:** Adjustment, artistic, balanced, beauty, caring, creative, dependable, domestic, emotional, entertaining, feelings, friendly, harmony, health, humanitarian, idealistic, loving, love of home/family/children/animals/nature, nutrition, peace, responsible, service, sympathetic, universal, unselfish, worldly.

**Negative:** Anxious, complaining, discontented, domineering, family ties, inert, interfering, irresponsible, jealous, obstinate, others' troubles, outspoken, overcritical, self-centred, self-righteous, self-sacrificial, selfish, snobbish, stubborn, suspicious.

### **Number 7 – The Sevens, The Chariot (VII), The Tower (XVI)**

There are seven colours of the rainbow, seven deadly sins, seven virtues, seven original planets used in astrology, seven chakras of the body, seven days of the week, on the seventh day God rested after creating the world, and so on. This is a profoundly revered number with spiritual significance, and is a link to spirituality. We all possess within us seven vital centres known as the chakras, which control the body's vital function. These chakras or psychic centres have a practical effect on our daily lives. Even though we may not be aware of it, these psychic centres are a constant exchange of energies that

directly affects our psychic development and intuitive thought, and helps us to climb towards self-accomplishment and release. The seven was considered to be the number of the gods, who brought universal order, balance and harmony into our world. It is important that we find a balance in our lives, therefore we must learn to trust our intuition. Seven is the symbol of the Greek god of time, Chronos, and reminds us that everything materially made has a limited life span, hence, not fully real. This number deals with the limitations of the material world and a sense or a lack of time. People with many sevens in a spread may be conscious of the time. If there is a strong number seven we may tend not to trust ourselves or trust others, and therefore must firstly get to know ourselves through self-discipline, then eventually we will reap the rewards. We must evaluate our special skills and also learn to understand the things that make us happy or sad, then put them down to experience so that we can use them again as valuable tools for a more comprehensive life. Seven is a number of wisdom, understanding, growth and accomplishment. We gain confidence, independence, and insight under the influence of the sevens, and they guide us to discover and examine our capabilities. This number helps us to recognise our Selves. The number seven reveals that something is going to happen, to be achieved, reach a satisfactory end, attain a kind of perfection and success. It shows good signs for the future, but we should really never regard any of the Tarot cards as being either good or bad within themselves. The Tower is a number seven card and it's symbolism looks to be devastating, but basically it means we have overstepped our limitations and need to assess where we have been overindulging in the material side of our life. A number seven is a useful tool for getting things finished.

### **Key Words**

**Positive:** Analytical, contemplative, dignified, faith, idealistic, intelligence, intuitive, investigating, love of solitude, meticulous, mindful, observant, original, perfectionist, pride, rational, reflective, researching, sensitive, spiritual, specialist, spontaneous, technical, thoughtful, trusting.



**Negative:** Argumentative, cold, confused, critical, cynical, hidden motives, hidden thoughts, lacking generosity, lacking self-expression, misunderstood, over-analytical, overly sensitive, over rational, repressed, reserved, sarcastic, self-absorbed, silent, skeptical, suspicious, temper, uncommunicative, unreasonable, withdrawing.

### **Number 8 – The Eight's, Strength (VIII), The Star (XVII)**

The number eight is regarded as the first cubic number according to the followers of Pythagorus. The eight's are similar to the concept of assessment inherent with the fours. They are involved with practical matters and the usual requirements for our existence. With this number we need to pay close attention to detail and put in a lot of hard work, because at the end of the day we only get what we deserve, in other words, we only profit from what we put into it. Many of us have difficulty with this because our Western culture is very materialistic, Eastern cultures control their material needs, or probably have to, because of their lower standards of living. The eight is symbolic with fate, which means it is out of our control and there is nothing we can really do about it, except learn from it. Some of us are able to manage our lives fairly easily but others find it very difficult to make it all balance. Eight is a number that attempts to reach for perfection, and drives us to go out and buy some material commodity to represent that we are getting there. The behaviour of the number eight operates around areas concerned with money, sex and power. However, because it is principally concerned with our hopes and plans it can tend to come into conflict with the emotional and sensitive sides of our nature. For example, our home life and love life may suffer because we simply have not got the time to be involved in that side of our lives at the moment. Consequently, all the hard work and effort needed to make a success could lead to the neglect of those who are dear to us. This number can persuade us to change our outlook and accept fate. Because of its similarity to the idea of infinity, we can assume then that the number eight holds nothing definite, and therefore eight's are contained forces that eternally renew. The real key words for the eight's in the minor arcana would then be regeneration or renewal.

This is why the number eight often predict a beneficial crisis, in other words necessary because it sets free new energies. When an eight appears in a spread, it means something is suddenly coming to an end, because it cannot continue on its course any longer without being regenerated or renewed. This number holds the power of rebirth, even before anything develops or takes place, and takes us to a final end in which there is no return. The eight's in a spread can suggest significant changes in money, relationships, career, home life and status.

### **Key Words**

**Positive:** Ambitious, authoritative, business acumen, capability, discriminating, drive, energetic, executive ability, financial rewards, goal-orientated, good judge of values, good with money, hardworking, karma, leadership, material success, organisational abilities, persevering, powerful, practical, protective, realistic, recognition, responsibility, self-confident, strength, supervising, works for a cause.

**Negative:** Bullying, controlling, demanding, domineering, drives too hard, forceful, impatient, intolerant, irresponsible, materialistic, miserly, money difficulties, over-ambitious, overactive, plays power games, repressed feelings, stubborn, tense, weak, workaholic.

### **Number 9 – The Nines, The Hermit (IX), The Moon (XVIII)**

November is the ninth month of the Roman year, hence the word nine deriving from the Latin *novem*, and *neuf* is nine in French, which also means new. These bring us a link between the number nine and the idea of things being exposed and new. The prime example is the nine months gestation period that the foetus is carried in the womb between conception and birth. We can say then, that the number nine presides over the gestation of life and birth of human beings, therefore can be regarded as the number symbol of the perfect cycle. Another point of view is that if we add all the numbers up from one to nine we get forty-five, then if we add the four and the five together

(4+5), it totals to nine. The number nine is the ultimate completion and manifestation of the idea that started at number one and symbolically far-removed as is possible. Whereas one is ego, self-love and start of a cycle, the nine is anti-ego, divine love and completion. The nine symbolises the sum total of our thoughts, words, creativity, talents, abilities and actions that need to be developed and accomplished in order to make our plans materialise. This number enables us to see the rewards of our efforts. It is also about giving without expecting a favour in return. In the minor arcana it represents the development of a plan, a detailed investigation, a focus of components or interests that will be purposely directed towards its conclusion of being visibly and perfectly developed. Practically it can mean a certain success or a happy achievement, reached through perseverance, patience, receptivity and tenacity.

### **Key Words**

**Positive:** Artistic, broad-minded, compassionate, charitable, creative, forgiving, good with people, helpful, humanitarian, idealistic, impressionability, intelligent, intuitive, kind, leadership, loving, objective, perfection, philanthropic, romantic, selfless, sentimental, spiritual, sympathetic, talented, tolerant.

**Negative:** Changeable, careless, demanding, depression, disappointed, escapist, failure to use talent, frustrated, impulsive, inferiority complex, jack of all trades, miserly, moody, overly sentimental, possessiveness, seeking approval, selfish, too detached, too much love of self, unforgiving, wrong habits.

### **Number 10 – The Tens, The Wheel of Fortune (X)**

The tenth card of the major arcana in the Tarot deck is the Wheel of Fortune, this card symbolises the material or non-material elements in our lives that come and go, round and round, whether good or bad. It is about ideas, thoughts, actions, plans, resources and even mistakes that may or may not

have been thought about, which create the ups and downs in our lives. Life tends to be cyclical and sometimes beyond our control, it is like life and death, for example, a cycle of our life may die or end, another turn of the wheel may bring back life or a new phase, returning back to a unity or a whole again. An example of this symbolism is that if the numbers from one to ten are added up we get a total of fifty-five. Then by adding the two fives together ( $5+ 5$ ) the result is still ten, then by adding together the one and the nought ( $1+ 0$ ) we return back to one. Therefore, the cycle always goes round and round from a beginning to an end and from an end to a beginning again. Similarly, the Tetrahedron, Pythagoras' symbolic pyramid is based on the numbers one to four, when we add up the numbers from one to four we get a total of ten. The confusion at that time with the Tetrahedron must have been immense, because it is a quadrilateral figure disguised in the shape of a pyramid. It is constructed of four levels and each level represents one of the four elements. The first level, base or number four, represents the Earth element, the second level or number three, represents the Water element, the third level or number two, represents the Air element, and the fourth level or number one, represents the Fire element. The Tetrahedron stimulated thought and inspired the people of the ancient world, and still does today. The number ten is an important symbolism that can take us from an idea into a perfect whole. Whatever we are living and working towards is recognised at the number ten. It is the final show of whatever has been on our mind and in our thoughts for a period of time, whether it is positive or negative. This subconscious activity is very important to the study of the Tarot. It is about recognising the unseen obstacles we may have to contend with when chasing our hopes, dreams and ambitions. This way we can use the invisible forces to direct us down the correct path, instead of coming to a dead end. Ten is about recognising that a stage in our life has been completed and our aim has been realised. We may now be able to relax for a while until the next idea or concept comes into our head, and off we go again back on the cycle of the number ten.

## Key Words

**Positive:** Ambitious, competitive, conviction, creative, energetic, executive skills, forceful, fond of company, independent, natural leader, practical, progressive, self-confident, strong, strong willpower, success-orientated.

**Negative:** Arrogant, demanding, dictating, dominating, egotistical, impatient, does not use opportunities, selfish, too proud, unstable.

## The System of Numbers

### What's in a Name?

A good deal of information about the character and life path can be predicted using numerology. It is also fascinating to discover what life path our personal year may take. But first we need a number system as follows:

### The Alphabet System

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R
S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	

Fig 1

As we can see the A, J and S have the value of the number one, B, K and T have the value of number two, and so on. We can now connect the letters to the number and analyse what they mean, especially within a person's name, as follows:

**Full name:**

J	O	H	N		E	D	W	A	R	D		S	M	I	T	H
1	6	8	5		5	4	5	1	9	4		1	4	9	2	8

Fig 2

Now we add up the numbers under each letter, thus:

$1 + 6 + 8 + 5 + 5 + 4 + 5 + 1 + 9 + 4 + 1 + 4 + 9 + 2 + 8 = 72$ , then the seventy-two is reduced by adding the two numbers together,  $(7 + 2)$ , giving the number nine. Therefore, this name has the characteristic of the number nine. However, even though this is going to be the strongest characteristic, this name has other strong distinguishing features because, if you notice, the name has three ones, fours and fives, which means there are equal strengths of other traits to this character. The other numbers are not strong enough because there are only one or two of them, which means that these numbers are the weakest and would need to be consciously controlled.

**Example of the Name Characteristic:**

With a number nine personality, any form of problem, obstacle, dilemma, difficulty or hardship are not in John's vocabulary, because he is convinced that with a little work everything will sort itself out. Others may feel John's attitude is rather cynical but they are likely to benefit through his ideas and energetic resourcefulness because John is exceptionally generous, which often leads to his kindness being taken advantage of.

**The Life Number**

Now let us say his date of birth is the 28<sup>th</sup> August 1968, we simply add up the numbers of this date to give us the number of his possible direction in life. For example,  $2 + 8 + 8 + 1 + 9 + 6 + 8 = 42$ , then we reduce this number by adding up the two numbers,  $(4 + 2)$ , which gives us six. The number six is John's life number. If the number totals more than nine then we can reduce it

again by adding up the two numbers. For example, if say the number is 12 then we reduce it by adding up the one and the two, (1 + 2), giving us three.

### **Interpretation of the Life Number**

John's life number is six therefore he must take on many responsibilities in life such as family and work. His true desire is to express love, and although John can be faithful, he can also be demanding, and will not stop searching until he has found his soul mate. John will probably surround himself with people he sees as the epitome of love, and you may not find anyone more thoughtful towards others. Therefore, if John does not allow his objectives to be swayed by others in whatever direction he plans to take, then he will succeed.

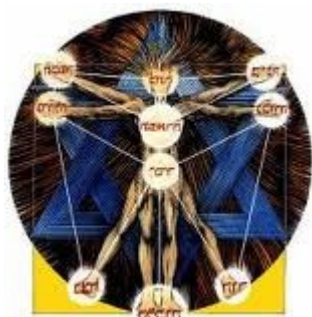
### **Personal Year Number**

This is similar to the birth date number, except instead of the year of our birth we use the present or future year. For example, the 28<sup>th</sup> August 2009. As before we simply add up the numbers of this date, therefore,  $2 + 8 + 8 + 2 + 0 + 0 + 9 = 29$ . Then we reduce this number by adding together the two and the nine as before, (2 + 9), which gives us eleven. Now this number being more than nine needs to be reduced even further as mentioned earlier. Therefore, the eleven becomes (1+ 1), which gives us the year number of two.

### **Interpretation of the Personal Year Number**

If John's personal year number is two then he may need to work in tune with others and therefore, become aware of their needs as well as his own. John may have to be sensitive and tactful when handling other people, and may be called upon to assess situations concerning others because he may have to try and settle disagreements. Partnership matters will become important to John during this year, but it is also a year of personal creativity in which he may suddenly be prompted by creative inspiration that will urge him to be very productive, reliable and stable. When interpreting name numbers, life numbers and personal year numbers refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

# Tarot and Kabbalah



## What is Kabbalah?

Firstly, let us take a look at the different spellings of the word Kabbalah to avoid confusion. In general Kabbalah or Kabala is the original Hebrew version, Cabala is the Christian version and Qabalah is the Hermetic version.

The Kabbalah is a system of esoteric knowledge and a key to controlling and achieving mystical experiences and true spiritual union. Kabbalah can be translated as “received tradition” or “oral tradition.” It is used to describe Jewish mysticism, which found its inspiration in the *Sefer ha-Zohar* (“The Book of Splendour”) of the thirteenth century. The Kabbalah allows any aspect of life, both rational and paradoxical, to be absorbed into the body and mind and related to any other aspect on many levels.

## Brief History of the Kabbalah

The Kabbalah is said to have first appeared in written form with the *Sefer Yetsirah* (Book of Formation”), through a traditional narrative that is said to date back to Abraham. The *Sefer Yetsirah* is a piece of work that details the basic structure of the Kabbalah, and interprets the creation of the universe through thirty-two hidden paths of the Sephiroth (“numbers,” “emanations” or “spheres”), and the twenty-two letters of the Hebrew alphabet. It’s exact date of origin is unknown but it is attributed to Rabbi Akiba, who was martyred by the Romans for refusing to renounce his faith and belief in the Kabbalah.

Spanish Kabbalist Moses de Leon (1250 – 1305) wrote the *Sefer ha-Zohar* (“Book of Splendour”), between 1280 and 1286. It deals with the ten Sephirah emanating from the indescribable infinite *en sof* (absolute) through which the universe is created and maintained. The mutual interaction of these Saphirah and their individual natures are seen both as expressing the nature of divinity and as archetypes for all of creation. The *Bahir* (“Book of Illumination”)

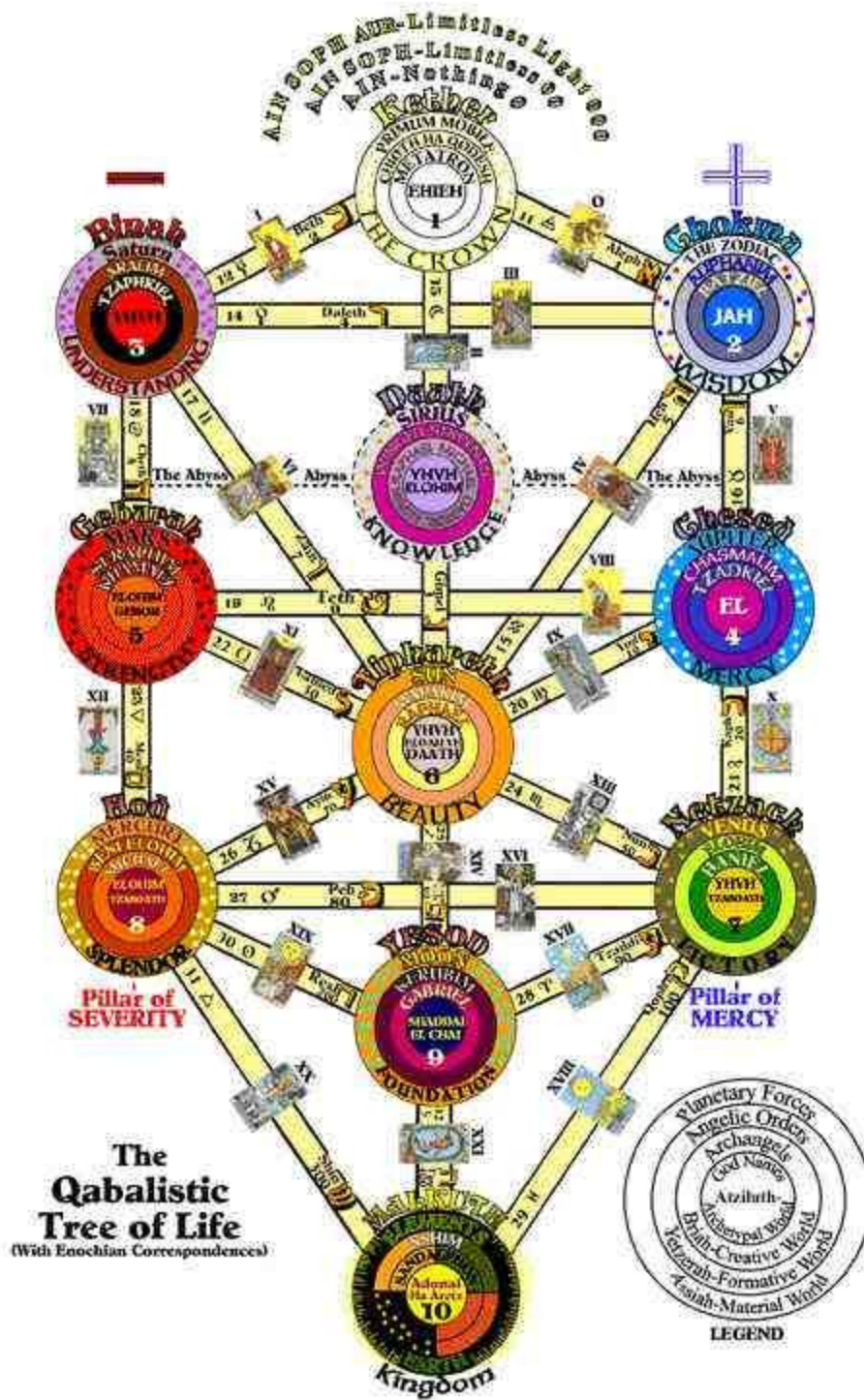


another important Kabbalistic text appeared in France around the eleventh century.

In 1492 the Jewish exodus from Spain spread the classical Kabbalah throughout Europe. The German Kabbalah was created by Aaron ben Samuel that had an emphasis on magical rituals based on Merkabah mysticism. Christian or Western Kabbalah grew from Germanic Kabbalism and found its own language and development in Western Mystery Orders such as the Hermetic Order of the Golden Dawn.

The nineteenth and twentieth centuries have seen further development of the Western Kabbalah through occultists Eliphas Levi, Papus (1865 – 1916), and members of the Golden Dawn, Aleister Crowley (1875 – 1947), Dion Fortune, who was born Violet Firth (1890 – 1946) and S. L. “MacGregor” Mathers, the co-founder of the Hermetic Order of the Golden Dawn. Links between the Kabbalah and many other philosophical, mythological and religious systems have been put forward and detailed, the most important being the links between the Kabbalah, meditation, prayer, magical rituals, numerology, astrology and the Tarot.

# The Tarot on the Kabbalah Tree



## **Sephiroth on the Tree of Life**

The Tree of Life is the depiction of the Sephiroth (numbers, spheres or emanations) of the Kabbalah, and is a symbol of modern Western occultism. Each of the ten emanations within the Sephiroth is called a Sephirah, and together they form what is called the Tree of Life. This Tree is the central image of Kabbalistic meditation. It portrays symbolically the descent of the Divine into the apparent world. The Tree of Life is constructed of three pillars and ten Sephirah (numbers, spheres or emanations). Each Sephirah describes a certain attribute of sacred energy, and taken together as the Sephiroth they form the unity and spirituality of man, and the path by which humankind must take to ascend to spiritual enlightenment. The Tree of Life is built upon the ten Sephirah as illustrated in the diagram above.

There are 22 paths on the tree of life, one for each letter of the Hebrew alphabet. There are also 22 cards in the Major Arcana of the Tarot, and each of these corresponds to a Hebrew letter and a path on the Tree of Life. The usual attributions of the Major Arcana to the paths are shown in the diagram, but some occultists offer slightly different placements.

Each path expresses the interaction between a pair of Sephirah that connects a Major Arcana card. For example Major Arcana Temperance signifies balance, coordination and the ability to live and work in harmony with others. The interaction of Sephirah six, (Tiphareth – Beauty), and nine, (Yesod – Foundation), mirror this balance with the attributes of Tiphareth finding stability in Yesod. When interpreted: some aspects of our relationships need to be embraced and fused through love, compassion, interaction and compromise, and new possibilities may need to be explored through our dreams, instincts, desires and creativity, so that we can build for the future and retain a sense of security and stability. Obviously, this is only simplified. The meanings of the paths can only be approached through study and meditation. An apt design of symbolism with the Tarot deck can help in this

process, and learning to understand the Kabbalah helps to promote a deeper understanding of the Tarot.

There are ten Saphirahs in the Saphiroth or the Tree of Life and ten numbered cards in each suit of the Minor Arcana. This gives a simple and strong analogy. For example, the Sefirah on the Tree of Life follow a sequence, from the new beginning or creative impulse of Kether in the first Sefirah to completion in the tenth Sefirah of Malkuth, therefore, the numbered cards in each suit follow this pattern from the Ace to the ten. For example, the fives belong to the Sefirah number five that symbolizes Strength.

The Sephiroth may be viewed as a psychic reaching out to mankind. Each Sefirah of the Sephiroth is an emanation of an attribute of the psyche. Many have described the Sephiroth in various ways, two are prominent: the four worlds and the higher man. The description of the worlds is better described as the four levels of worlds. Included within this description is the highest world, which is the World of Archetypes and Divinity (*Atzilut*), next is the World of Creation (*Beriah*), then the World of Formation (*Yetzirah*), and culminating with the World of Manifestation (*Assiyah*). Therefore, the system can be further refined, as each of the suits of the Minor Arcana corresponds to one of the four worlds. For example, Beriah in the world of creation corresponds to the Water element and the Tarot suit of Cups. So the Seven of Cups corresponds to Netzach in Beriah. Netzach is the Sefirah of intuition, creativity and the emotions, and Beriah the creative world, hence the Seven of Cups in the Tarot deck has meanings associated with happiness and self-fulfilment in one's love life, deep and strong relationships and something new taking place, maybe a birth. The analogies between the Kabbalistic worlds and the Tarot suits are as follows:

## The Kabbalistic Worlds and the Tarot Suits

Sephirah & Card Number	Meaning	Tarot Suit	Element	Kabbalistic World	Court Cards
Aces Kether	Crown or Will				
2's Chokmah	Wisdom	Wands	Fire	Atzilut (Divine and Archetypal)	Kings
3's Binah	Understanding	Cups	Water	Beriah (Creative)	Queens
4's Chesed	Mercy Or Grace				
5's Geburah	Severity Or Strength				
6's Tiphareth	Beauty Or Harmony	Swords	Air	Yetzirah (Formative)	Knights
7's Netzach	Victory Or Endurance				
8's Hod	Reverberation				
9's Yesod	Foundation				
10's Malkuth	Kingdom	Pentacles	Earth	Assiyah (Manifest)	Pages

### The Sephirahs

The structure of the Sephiroth can be from Kether to Malkuth, or vice versa. The ultimate purpose of the Kabbalah is to unite the psyche and man. When

viewed from top to bottom a psychic essence is reaching out to us. In reverse order, it is our attempt to climb the mystical levels of the Tree of Life to reach the level of divine consciousness. Each of the ten Sephirah represents a spiritual and/or physical characteristic of man, each are an emanation of an attribute of the spiritual, the appearance of the pure and divine attribute.

### **Kether or Crown**

The first or top Sephirah is Kether or Crown, and is the pure and divine essence. Kether is described as *ain*, nothingness, and *en sof*, absolute. Within this nothingness and absolute are every attribute of the divine that will be manifested in the lower Sephirahs. Kether represents knowledge or knowing, the divine consciousness itself, the spiritual side within and around us. Kether represents ultimate reality and spiritual transcendence. It is full realisation expressed in the mystery traditions as the mystical bonding of the material and the spiritual, of heaven and earth. Kether is the pure and divine essence or the hidden, highly intelligible brain.

### **Chokmah or Wisdom**

From Kether comes Chokmah, the Second Sephirah, and is mainly the manifestation of divine thought, contemplation and meditation. This Sephirah represents wisdom, the active or dominant principle of knowledge. It is the mystery of creation, the process of development through learning and skill. Chokmah has the knowledge of the divine, the right brain. The perfect archetypes of each and everything dwell with Chokmah.

### **Binah or Understanding**

The third Sephirah is Binah. Binah is like a mirror that has no reflection, empty and dark, and needs Chokmah's help to give her life. When she receives Chokmah's reflection she inherits the intelligence of Kether and the wisdom of Chokmah, and she then becomes a sublime beam of radiant light. Binah represents a true understanding of what is known, and is the receptive and reflective aspect of knowledge. Because Binah receives the reflection she has

a feminine nature, and becomes masculine when passing this knowledge onto the other Sefirah. This is true of each Sefirah except for Malkuth; they are feminine when receiving and masculine when passing on divine attributes. Since Binah is the first recognized receptive Sefirah she is frequently called the “Great Mother.” Binah has the ability to distinguish between the real and unreal, the left brain.

As a portrayal of human anatomy, Kether, Chokmah and Binah form the head, and all are concerned with knowledge.

### **Chesed or Mercy**

The reflection of Binah now begins to descend through the other seven Sefirahs. The first divine attribute mercy in the Sefirah of Chesed. Mercy in Chesed makes sacrifices to bring happiness to others according to their needs. Chesed with infinite kindness adapts to the limits of all things, and gives everything life by offering a structure to enable us to be set free from adverse limitations. Chesed always aspires to the divine and has an illuminating nature, and is the right and merciful arm.

### **Geburah or Strength**

There is cooperation between Chesed and Geburah. While Chesed gives life to everything, Geburah the next Sefirah shows strength and severity and gives shape, form, or limitations to everything. We have to have limitations in our life otherwise we would not be able to distinguish between justice and injustice. This strength is in agreement with judgement. We need established limits for everything, so that we each receive what is justified and needed. When the limits are established all things become closer together because they share similar associations, and participate more positively.

Severity is first manifested as cosmic darkness, and it is here that evil seems to emerge through the appearance of a void because of its ability to shrink to make room for creation. Then mercy (a strengthening influence) fills all

created things and beings with radiant light of divine immanence. It is the cleansing of all that is not good. Binah seems to present this evil in its reflection, therefore appears to promote good through Chesed and invalidates evil through Geburah because the end result is totally good. Geburah has true judgement of all things, or the left and enforcing arm.

### **Tiphareth or Beauty**

The next Sephirah Tiphareth mainly expresses divine beauty. This beauty is received from the unique qualities that are incarnated in Kether. Within these qualities are all of the divine endless possibilities that are exhibited in Tiphareth. This Sephirah above all other is the centre of the divine heart and compassion, which embraces and fuses everything, surrounding the world of evolution. Tiphareth's approach is identified as shared action (give and take) in all relationships. All of the divine attributes of the Sephiroth pass on to Tiphareth, therefore he manifests all of the qualities and characteristics ascribed to lower Sephirahs while revealing the mysteries of the higher Sephirahs.

It is here that we enter into the nirvana of the spiritual realms. Tiphareth is the midpoint between the world of everyday reality and the realm of ultimate spiritual transcendence on the journey towards mystical enlightenment. It represents the theme of rebirth, or spiritual resurrection. Tiphareth has inner and outer beauty, and is the heart symbolizing beauty and love.

### **Netzach or Victory**

Accompanying the emanation of divine beauty is the manifestation of divine victory Netzach. He is active and positive and has intuition and a spiritual passion. This is the Sephirah of love and romance, and represents creativity and the emotions. Netzach is spiritual power or the right hip of cosmic force. He comes forward from Tiphareth as an endless flow of pure life, composed of energy and karma, and fills everything born with this cosmic collective of the divine.



### **Hod or Reverberation**

This illusory collective, however, does not happen alone. This collective can only happen with the help of Hod. Hod takes on a feminine role when receiving the life Netzach pours out. As the life flows it clears a path in the mind to make room for the creation which Hod receives. Therefore, both Netzach and Hod must simultaneously come forward from Tiphareth. Hod in its feminine role has negative power when making room for new creation, echoing the victory of Netzach. Hod represents intellect, rational thinking, communication and logic. This Sephirah is the natural force, or the left hip, or the cosmic negative force.

### **Yesod or Foundation**

Yesod is the direct outcome of the actions of Netzach and Hod. Yesod is the unique act, which simultaneously presents and renews all that is radiated and expressed into a united and perfect state. Yesod is the final flow of all the attributes expressed by the following Sephirahs, and is the coming together of them. The perfect archetypes of everything are also present in Yesod just as they are in Chokmah. Yesod is associated with dreams, imagination, sexual fertility and the energy of the subconscious mind. This Sephirah represents the synchronisation of mind and body, activity, or the productive organ or creative act.

### **Malkuth or Kingdom**

Malkuth, the tenth and last Sephirah, is called the “kingdom” of god. This Sephirah is purely feminine because she has no Sephirah to pass on her received qualities. From the right side of the Sephiroth she receives the bright and intelligible qualities, from the left side the dark and unintelligible ones, and from the centre pillar of which Kether is the highest situated, the higher-intelligible attributes, therefore, Malkuth possesses all three. Malkuth is the final destination of all the emanations of the Sephiroth, therefore a receptive principle. This Sephirah represents familiar everyday consciousness, and is associated with the earth, the environment, all living things and the activities

surrounding these. All the many higher possibilities of the divine are presented to Malkuth where they are realized. The inspiration from above shines down below. The lower seven Sephirahs are said to reflect in detail the first three higher Sephirahs. Malkuth has receptivity, she is the feet, the female body, the important material receiver of the emanations of the Sephiroth.

### **Daath**

Daath appears within the Sephiroth but it is not a Sephirah or the eleventh Sephirah as it is frequently referred to. Daath includes the first conscious knowledge in Kether and when reflected from Binah becomes attached to cosmological intelligence. Simply, Daath is divine intelligence that is inaccessible until it is reflected from Binah and spread throughout the entire Sephiroth. This intelligence presents the divine and its attributes as well as the perfect archetypes of all things. Daath is divine knowledge inspiring everything.

Each card of the Major Arcana can be used as a meditative doorway through which we can pass to reach a higher level of understanding. Using the Major Arcana as meditative doorways on the Tree of Life involves what are known as “pathworkings.”

# The Major Arcana Interpretations

## 0 The Fool



**Astrological Influence:** Uranus

**Key words or phrases:** Beginning. Entering a new phase. Going on a journey. Opportunity to be taken. Change. Starting something new. Evolving. Expanding horizons. Feeling carefree. Heading into the unknown. Progress. Being spontaneous. Acting on impulse. A sudden departure. Uninhibited. Carefree. Target to reach. Doing the unexpected. Exploiting. Living for the moment. A sudden change of situation. A transitional period. Letting go of fear and worry. An enthusiastic initiative. Believing. An obstacle to cross. Having faith. Accepting your choices. An ultimate aim to reach. A moment of madness. Pursuing a dream. Trusting your heart. Taking a chance.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

In the Waite deck the Fool card depicts a young man dressed in elegant clothing paused at the edge of a precipice. The sun is shining and he is looking up at the sky rather than looking to where he is positioned. Although he is stationary it is obvious by his stance and the dog bounding to try and catch his attention, that he has no intention of stopping. The Fool seems to have no fear of what is ahead of him, so perhaps he believes he will be saved if he fell. He carries a white rose in his left hand and an expensive staff over his right shoulder that has an embroidered satchel attached to it.

The **precipice** symbolises that we might be facing a dangerous situation and need to make an important decision as to how to deal with it. The **precipice** is

alerting us to situations that have unknown elements or that can be risky. We often have to face the unknown, and possibly be open to taking a risk, and psychologically, some actions we take can put us on the edge and force us to overcome our fears in order to give us the strength to push forward through our own limitations. Therefore, we need to face our fears or difficult situations and make decisions in one way or another.

The **dog** signifies loyalty, protection and companionship, they are devoted and can also warn us of danger. **Dogs** are widely connected with death and the spirit world. The Incas believed the **howling of a dog** signaled the death of a relative. The Ainu people of Japan believed that **dogs** had psychic powers and could see ghosts. The Maya buried **dogs** with their masters so that they could guide them through the afterlife. In Greek mythology, Cerberus the **watchdog** guarded the underworld.

The **white rose** suggests innocence, wisdom and spiritual purity. **White** is the colour of light and is considered lucky. In Africa the colour **white** is believed to drive death away, therefore associated with healing. The **rose** is a symbol of perfection, the heart, and romantic and sensual love, and can indicate a wedding within the year. It is also associated with the Wheel of Life, which symbolises the continuous cycle of life, death and rebirth. Within the Wheel, the point of liberation is at the hub, and represents a spiritual journey from the edge to the centre, and from activity to stillness, this is the purpose of meditation.

The **staff** signifies the support we need to help us through life. It symbolises a journey that we must embark on, fortunately we will not have to do it on our own, as we will receive help in some way.

The **satchel** signifies that we might be having problems with elements of our identity, maybe we need to adopt some of the more feminine qualities of our personality. It represents how we look after our own resources in life, and not

necessarily material resources, as it is a symbol of holding and carrying what is valuable to us, such as gathered knowledge and intuition.

The **sun** is associated with the principle of authority, the first identified as being the father. It is linked with individuality, personality, will, ego, creative energy, health and vitality, and influences both physical and psychological development. At its highest level, it is striving for psychic union. It is the male energy and represents the animus. The **sun** suggests happiness, warmth, conscious awareness, guidance and vitality.

On the whole, the Fool card represents that an important new chapter in our lives is about to begin, in which a risk may need to be taken. It is about our choices and receptivity, and our desire for knowledge and new experiences, because without them we will become shallow and boring. Symbolically, the Fool is about to set out on his journey in search for knowledge and spiritual enlightenment, he is ready to learn and grow and he believes that anything is possible. It has not entered his head that there is a possibility of failure or that he might come across some trouble along the way, and he does not know the meaning of fear because he has never experienced it.

In Chinese mythology, Tripitaka, a Buddhist monk, travelled from China to India to acquire the Buddhist scriptures. The Emperor gave him a white horse for his journey but a dragon devoured it, so Tripitaka rode the dragon instead. The priest Sha Ho-shang was his companion on the journey and their guide was the monkey-god Hanuman, who was helped by a pig-like god named Chu Pa-chieh. Throughout the journey Tripitaka had to face eighty-one tests that was arranged by Buddah, which he managed to triumph over with the help of his companions.

The changes and challenges that we face in life could take us anywhere, but we all need challenges to spark our creativity and spirit in order to develop our full potential. Without these challenges our motivation deteriorates and we

become stagnant. Obviously the outcome may be uncertain but we need to have the faith in ourselves to overcome the obstacles and challenges in our lives. However we need to rid ourselves of our old habits, tradition and outworn methods, and learn new ways of doing things in our own original and unique manner. Therefore, we need to listen to our own inner voice and not be swayed by what other people might think.

The Fool card is numbered zero, and like the Wheel of Life is a symbol of the continuous cycle of life, birth and death. Zero is also a symbol of potentiality, and represents the blank void of infinity, from which, it is said life originates from and returns to. The Maya represented the zero shape as a spiral, suggesting the womb symbolism of the shell and foetal life. This number is also considered to represent the beginning of a spiritual journey.

The astrological influence of the Fool is the planet Uranus, which is the planet of impulse, sudden changes, independence, decision making, originality, and freedom. Uranus stimulates our originality and ability to act with dynamic individuality, willpower and independence. It also represents novel ideas, education, hopes and wishes. It is about our potential vitality and spirit, and our ability to seize opportunities, our aptitude to innovate and invent, and our interest in science.

### **Interpretation**

When the Fool appears in a spread it suggests that you are about to embark on a new phase of life. New opportunities are on the horizon perhaps in the form of a new job, career, or business venture. It could also be something great in your relationships, maybe your existing relationship develops into something new, or you enter into a new relationship. You are about to start a journey of self-discovery and can go in any direction you like, seize the adventure and bring excitement into the new experiences you discover. However, you must realise that everything does not always go to plan, so expect the unexpected. Have faith, believe in yourself and follow your

instincts. Take a chance if you think it is the right thing to do, don't worry what other people might think and go for that sudden opportunity or choice. You are open to new suggestions and ideas and have an ultimate goal to reach.

It is going to be a complete new direction in the way you live your life. You are not afraid of the unknown and have the confidence and idealism to push yourself forward into the next phase of your life. However caution is advised, and because your attitude is one of peace and trust, be careful of offers that are too good to be true because they might be just that, so don't be naïve when you are faced with certain choices, use your common sense. Things are going to drastically change, but your success will come when you turn your back on the areas of your life that no longer serve you or your growth. You are capable of original and new ideas and you will make some surprising discoveries. There are many challenges ahead but you will overcome them, just follow your heart.

### **Negative**

This is not the time for you to take any risks, such as trusting people you are not quite sure about or changing your job, think of the consequences before you dive into any situation. Luck has temporarily run out on you so keep hold of your money. Maybe you feel a fool for allowing yourself to be deceived or cheated and did not think things over properly and made the wrong choice or decision. Perhaps you are unable to control a situation because you have been listening to other people and made the mistake of not following your own instincts.

### **People**

Those with an irrepressible urge to take a different direction in life. Those who want to follow their instinct. Those who decide to move on and evolve. Those who have an ultimate aim in sight. Those who start new ventures or make dramatic changes.

# 1 The Magician



**Astrological Influence:** Mercury

**Key words and phrases:** Using initiative. Free spirit. Taking action. Your potential talents and qualities coming to light. Doing what needs to be done. Being creative. Knowing what you are doing. Experiencing power. Using your talents. Ability to convince others. Self-confidence. Carrying out plans. Willpower. Making a strong impact. Opportunities. Originality. Manual and intellectual ability. Flexibility. Organisational skills.

Making magic. Individuality. Focusing on a goal. Mastery.

## **Symbolic Meaning**

A youthful male figure dressed in a robe is depicted on the Magician card in the Waite deck. Above his head is a horizontal symbol of infinity representing the Holy Spirit, and around his waist is the alchemical symbol ouroboros, the serpent devouring its own tail. He stands raising a wand with his right hand, and his left hand is pointing down below, which indicates that he is transferring sacred energy from above to the world below. On the table are the four symbols of the four Tarot suits, signifying that he has control of the four elements of natural life and creation, wands represent fire, cups represent water, swords represent air, and pentacles represent earth. There is a bower of red roses above his head, and in the foreground below they are mixed with lilies.

The **robe** suggests status and power. The **red robe** represents power, strength, dynamism and sensuality, and the **white robe** represents innocence. The Anglo-Saxons believed that the colour **red** protected them from evil and provided them with magical powers.



The **symbol of infinity** is shaped like a figure eight and is an ancient Egyptian symbol of eternal life.

The **ouroboros** is the ancient Greek symbolic serpent with its tail in its mouth representing the cycle of life, eternity, totality, and the inseparable self-supporting character of Nature.

The **wand** represents the authority of the Self. It symbolises the “magical” powers that influence us, and to be aware of any external forces that needs controlling. The **wand** describes the movement from above to below, from Heaven to earth, from the nadir to the zenith and vice versa, it embraces spirit and provides a link between the higher and lower worlds. The Greeks considered the **wand** to represent destiny and fate. Numerically it is related to the number one.

**Roses** are a symbol of the heart, of perfection, and of sacred, romantic and sensual love. The **rose** also has a connection to the centre of the Wheel of Life, the endless cycle of life and death. The centre or hub is the point of liberation, and it symbolises a spiritual journey as a movement from the edge of the wheel to the centre, much like the purpose of meditation.

**Lilies** represent purity in alchemy, and are linked with courage and perseverance. They are identified with Christian devotion, purity and innocence. Older traditions associated **lilies** with fertility and erotic love.

On the whole the Magician signifies the divine will to attain liberation and union from above. However, it also suggests that we may need to look at the nature and the intentions of the people that come into our lives. Are they being honest or are they deceiving us? It could also be that we may need to look at whether we are being deceived into a false sense of security by our own illusions and have become attracted by something or someone that is

false. The Magician can also represent the need to take an original approach to a problem, or maybe organise things in a unique but powerful way.

Probably the most famous mythological magician is Merlin. He is credited with building the Round Table, and of course the creation of the magic sword, Excalibur. It is said that he transformed himself into a knight, named Jordans, of the court of Gorlois. Merlin did this to help Uther Pendragon to seduce Igraine, by changing him into her husband, Gorlois. However, he would only do this if Uther promised that he would give Merlin the baby son that was born between them. This was the future king, Arthur, and Merlin took the boy and fostered him with Ector. This story is one of deceit and guidance. The deceit involved was in the seducing of Igraine, but good came from it through Merlin's guidance to steer Arthur to the throne for the good of the country.

The Magician is a teacher and a guide and urges us to control our path through life by gaining knowledge, and by using our creativity and willpower. It is suggesting that we develop our potential and direct our talents and skills in a positive, suitable and sensible way. We may have to deal with many tasks at the same time, so we must use our ingenuity and integrity when making our choices, and have responsibility and control in the action we take.

This card's number is one, which is the number of masculine power, and is a symbol of beginning, creation, unity, creative power, individuality, initiative and Self. It represents the ability to start something new in a powerful and decisive manner. It refers to ambition, vigour, enterprise and leadership that are combined with a powerful will and great potential.

The astrological ruling planet of the Magician is Mercury, which is the planet of communication, intellect, reasoning and teaching. This planet influences us to concern ourselves with our children and our personal local environment. It is the mental attitude that governs many important patterns of behaviour, such as deciding where to live, local schooling, local travel, and everyday business

matters. Mercury influences the mind, communication and general mental capacity, and it governs how the mind works and how we are able to translate thoughts into actions.

In Roman myth, Mercury was the herald and messenger of the gods, he was also the god of art, commerce, eloquence, fertility, games, luck, roads, thieves, tricksters and wisdom. He is depicted wearing a winged hat and sandals, and carrying the caduceus, a magic wand with wings and entwined serpents, that is said to have transformative power to change male to female and vice versa. The caduceus symbolises the mediation between opposing forces and is now interpreted as an emblem for homeopathic medicine. Mercury is credited with the invention of fire, the lyre from the shell of a tortoise, the shepherd's pipe, astronomy, musical scales, and measures.

The Magician indicates that we all have the power we need within us, it is basically how we do things and how we learn through our experiences and lessons in life.

### **Interpretation**

When the Magician appears in a spread you should expect a new beginning and a fresh start, so use your initiative, skills and creative abilities to their full potential. The time is right to put your plans into action and start on new projects. There are choices to be made and you must be decisive and determined as to which direction you take. If you focus your mind, your own intuition and wisdom may guide you in the direction that you need to go in. Be original, use your creativity and imagination, and use the special skills and talents that you have gained to reach your goals. You have the ability to convince others of what you can do, so promote yourself and show them. Approach any problems from a different angle, you have a natural power and great ability to overcome conflict, so assess your abilities and start making some decisions.

You are good at developing positive relationships and can expect a change in your love life, perhaps a new romance will start up or an existing relationship starts to go from strength to strength. If you are thinking of starting a new relationship make the first move, because it doesn't always come and sit on your lap. Business affairs look promising too, you may have luck in securing a new job, employment opportunity or starting your own new business. Whatever the situation you will be successful financially, in new projects, ventures, creative pursuits, new partnerships, and any effort or enterprise you do on your own.

The Magician card can also signal the beginning of psychic awareness. However, don't commit yourself to any venture too quickly because the Magician can be a trickster, so be aware of any trickery, exploitation or manipulation around you. In the end, this card is suggesting that you are a true leader and an original thinker, and your talents and qualities are coming to light. It is advising you to be creative and there will be many happy surprises in store for you. In other words, you are the master of your own destiny.

### **Negative**

There may be unfortunate changes in your career or upsets in your family, through your own restlessness or a lack of intelligent planning. There may also be malicious gossip, bickering and altercations going on in your domestic life. You seem to be hesitating and becoming impatient about something. Perhaps someone has been lying to you and put you in a tricky situation. Maybe you are finding it hard to put your plans into action. You feel that you are doing all the work and being taken for granted. This makes you feel lacking in willpower, inspiration and energy, and makes you feel unappreciated. Someone or something may be preventing you from moving forward. Look into other people's motives because there might be some trickery going on.

**People**

Those who are open-minded, inquisitive and dynamic. Those who start or achieve something new. Those who are starting a period in their lives where they can exert their free spirit and willpower. Those who increase their knowledge through education or travel. Entrepreneurs. Teachers. Inventors. Guides. Magicians. Artists.

## 2 The High Priestess



**Astrological Influence:** The Moon

**Key words or phrases:** Spiritual forces. Knowledge. Secrets. Wisdom. Matters not yet revealed. Intelligent and thoughtful reflection. Forethought. Spiritual enlightenment. Psychological insight. Intuition. Clairvoyance. Inner illumination. Virtue. Experience. Moral guidance. Looking within. Serenity. Learning about feelings. Being receptive to influence. Trusting your inner voice. The subconscious. Uncovering

mysteries. Opening to dreams and the imagination. Meditation. Hidden issues. Seeing your hidden talents. Early memories. Looking beyond the obvious. Help. Advice. Past conditioning. Sensing the secret and hidden. Hidden influences. Opening to the unknown. Esoteric knowledge. Occult wisdom. Access to hidden knowledge and learning.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

In the Waite deck the High Priestess is depicted sitting on a throne between the two pillars of Solomon's Temple. There is a crescent moon at her feet, and she wears a silver crown that represents three phases of the moon, the full moon, the waxing moon and the waning moon. On her breast is a large cross, and on her lap is a scroll with the word Torah inscribed on it. She wears a long robe of blue and white that partly covers the scroll, and the veil on the temple pillars behind her is decorated with embroidered palms and pomegranates.

The **pillars** are suggesting that we create stability and support. However these **pillars** have an esoteric symbolism. They symbolise polarities, or opposites, for example, black and white, terrestrial and spiritual, positive and negative, creation and destruction, life and death, and so on.

These **two pillars** echo those on the front of Solomon's Temple in Jerusalem. The **left pillar** was made of black stone and was related to the moon, decay and the waning year and cursing. It was named Boaz, and means "it shall stand." The **right pillar** made of white stone and was related to the sun, the waxing year and blessing, and was called Jachin, meaning "in strength."

The **upturned crescent moon** is an attribute of the Egyptian goddess Isis and Christian symbolism of the Virgin Mary, as she is sometimes also depicted with an **upturned crescent moon**, much like the High Priestess, and is associated with mystery, intuition and the powers of the subconscious. The virgin goddess Artemis is usually depicted either holding a **crescent moon** or wearing one on her head.

The **waxing moon** is associated with rising energy, echoing pregnancy, and is often thought to be a good time to start new projects. The **full moon** is at its strongest, and represents the fullness of the female energy, and is linked to the symbolism of the circle, signifying wholeness. The **waning moon** is a time for cutting back, decreasing and letting go of things.

The **cross** became the central symbol of Christianity. Since Christ said "My kingdom is not of this world," the early Church tried to separate the spiritual and terrestrial realms. Spirituality became the dominant force of the Christian world, whereas life on earth, the world and the body became seen as forces that needed to be overcome instead of linking them all together as parts of a natural whole. The **cross** is closely linked to the symbolism of four, which signifies wholeness, perfection, harmony, order, stability and solidity. It has been suggested that the **four arms of the cross** represent the four phases of the moon, the four elements, the four winds and the four seasons.

The **scroll** is a symbol of learning and law, and subscribes to the knowledge or information that has been given to us in order to improve our lives. It can also represent hidden knowledge as well as the passing of time.

The **Torah** is the first five books of the Hebrew Bible, and is believed to contain all of God's teaching as divulged to Moses on Mount Sinai. It is more than a mine of laws and stories, and is seen as the inner dimension of our earthly world, and the medium by which we may gain access to the higher realms of spirituality.

The **robe** represents status and power. The **white seamless robe** symbolises innocence, spiritual purity, wisdom and holiness. It suggests warmth, love and protection, either physical or emotional or, the spiritual protection of faith. The **blue robe** is a symbol of peace and purity, and the colour of the Virgin Mary. It is associated with meditation, dreams, contemplation, introspection and desire.

**Palms** are associated with relaxation and unwinding. The people of Mesopotamia believed that the world axis passed through a **palm tree**.

**Pomegranates** have often been associated with fertility, symbolising the womb, but also death. In Greece, a **pomegranate** is broken on the ground at weddings and on the New Year as a symbol of fertility and abundance. In Hebrew belief, the **pomegranate** was the fruit that led to the fall of Adam and Eve. Therefore, it is strongly identified with sexual temptation, but also with unity, and linked to fertility, love and marriage.

On the whole the High Priestess card has a strong connection with the moon, and symbolises the feminine force and insight. It is telling us to tune into our own intuition in order to attain the energy that will connect us with the hidden knowledge that is needed to find the answers to our questions. This card is advising us to nurture our spiritual wisdom and knowledge and to develop our psychic abilities. It is urging us to go beyond our everyday awareness and search the depths of our subconscious, possibly through meditation, and become receptive to our spiritual side. This may guide us to a belief system that will enable us to see something, possibly of future things to come, that we



may not be able to put into words, but we will intuitively know and understand the information that we are being given.

The High Priestess is associated with the number two, which symbolises duality and balance and the polarity of opposing forces, such as Yin and Yang, man and woman, light and dark, spirit and matter, and so on. It is the first feminine number and represents the nurturing of the seed that was planted by the energy of the number one, similar to the womb. It is passive, intuitive, receptive and emotional, and represents the drive for harmony and balance.

Astrologically, the High Priestess is ruled by the Moon, and represents the mother, feelings, instincts, changeable moods, the feminine principle of anima, and fertility. It is concerned with our inner emotions, reactions, responses and habitual behaviour. It represents the mothers or mother figures in our lives, and also the home, security and the care of those who need us. The moon is connected with our imagination, intuition, psychic powers and dreaming, and is particularly associated with women, fertility and birth. Even though the moon has no light of its own, it is a great reflector and manifests the qualities of receptivity that is necessary for the intuitive process and for experiencing feelings. It reflects the way we respond emotionally and intuitively to situations, and how our attitudes govern aspects of our everyday life. In short, it is about what we know intuitively, and how we think or feel about things.

### **Interpretation**

The High Priestess often appears in a spread when you are starting new training or learning, or how to manage a new system of approach to a situation or idea. It is a time when you will need to try to extract your hidden potential and unseen talents, or where you need to pay attention to your subconscious feelings. This card is suggesting that you overcome your own self doubts, trust your hunches and intuition, and listen to your heart and that

little inner voice to guide you when making important decisions. Don't take things at face value because your instincts are probably right. Work at developing your abilities and spiritual side, and open up to your intuitive potential, and you may soon realise that a secret or hidden aspect of something presents itself to you, leaving you feeling that you have been helped and guided by what you discover.

You may be entering a learning phase and may be interested in getting in touch with that side of yourself which is dark and mysterious, or subjects on the paranormal or the occult, and perhaps someone will appear to teach you about these hidden mysteries. Any studies will go well and you will feel a sense of self-worth. However, you need to be careful and aware when you are exploring the hidden aspects of the psyche, and you will need to use your intuition to decipher between which is the truth and which is deception.

This card also suggests that there are papers or paperwork that you could profit from, probably concerning finances, payments or time schedules, perhaps you are waiting for results of some kind, or maybe there will be a pleasant surprise concerning a problem that has been bothering you. You may find yourself thinking about incidents and memories belonging to the past, as if you are guarding some knowledge, but the High Priestess suggests that you should keep your own and other people's secrets.

This is a gestation period and changes are taking place, so make time for yourself and look for your own personal fulfilment, rather than what other people think will be successful for you. A situation that seems to be running smoothly may need a little more thought before you take action, but soon you will have a new release of energy and be able to tackle the problems with ease. This card also signifies that someone who is honest, maybe a friend, will have some worthwhile advice for you.

**Negative**

You may be troubled, frustrated or upset over a tedious time consuming or unpleasant job situation. Perhaps you are not leaving enough time for yourself because you are so preoccupied with work or your career. Someone, probably female, for some reason may be feeling jealous and destructive towards you, and whispering to others behind your back. Home does not feel like a refuge anymore, so this would be a good time to get out and about, and let them all get on with it. You may be disappointed with having to wait, and with people who promise and do not deliver the goods. The High Priestess can also imply loss of control and hysterical outbursts.

**People**

Mature or experienced women that have an inborn or obtained knowledge of life. A mother, a woman in a high-ranking job, or a woman of influence because of her expertise, her qualities or social status. Those who have developed intuitive awareness and psychological insight. Those learning about their feelings. Those who trust their inner voice and hunches. Those who have secrets, hidden issues and hidden talents. Those who are learning through books, further education or training.

## 3 The Empress



**Astrological Influence:** Venus

**Key words and phrases:** Prosperity. Creativity. Productivity. Wealth. Wellbeing. Giving birth. Nurturing and caring for others. Sentimental nature. Practicality. Union. Synthesis. Giving and receiving pleasure. Sensuality. Motivation. Doing physical activity. Continued growth. Material comfort. Receiving lavish reward. Status. Focusing on the body. Feeling vibrantly healthy. Social standing. Abundance. Having

more than enough. Appreciating beauty. Physical love and affection. Relating to plants and animals. Feeling connected to the earth. Feminine sexuality. Basic needs comfortably met. Marriage. Gain. Fertility. Pregnancy. Maternal instincts. Nurturing. Willingness to help others. Birth. Motherhood. Feet firmly planted on the ground; Successful results of hard work. Fulfilled potential. Good fortune.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

In the Waite deck the Empress depicts a dignified woman sitting on a cushioned throne in a fertile garden. She wears a crown embellished with a cluster of twelve stars and a white robe decorated with flowers, and holds a sceptre indicating that she has power and authority. Her heart-shaped shield is inscribed with the astrological symbol of Venus. In the foreground is a field of corn and a waterfall behind her that is surrounded by trees. The Empress is pregnant and represents that everything is born of the Mother.

The **crown** is an indication of high status, and elaborate head-dress have been worn for thousands of years, from the feathered head-dress of the Native American chief to the jewelled crown of the monarch. Symbolically, it suggests the acknowledgement of our success, and to recognise that we

have many opportunities to expand our knowledge and awareness. The **crown** can also represent honour of some kind, triumph and dedication to duty.

The **twelve stars** symbolise universal fulfilment. It is the number of the Tribes of Israel and Christ's disciples. There are also twelve gates to the City of Jerusalem, and the "Tree of Life" bore twelve fruits. The **twelve stars** also relate to the zodiac and the twelve months of the year, representing a complete cycle.

The **robe** is also a symbol of status and power and is still used today, like the robes of state decorated with white ermine, and the judicial, ecclesiastical and academic dignitaries.

The **flowers** on the Empress's robe represent feelings of pleasure and beauty. They suggest that a feeling or ability is beginning to come into being, and there is a freshness of what we are doing. The **red** colour of the **flowers** is linked with love and fertility, and signifies vitality, strength, dynamism, life, sensuality and power. They are also associated with pleasure, beauty and relaxation, and denote giving and receiving.

The **sceptre** was originally a male fertility symbol. It implies royal or divine power and has been used as a symbol of imperial or royal position. The Empress holds the **sceptre** vertically, which represents the spiritual link between the higher and lower worlds.

The **Venus** symbol on her shield represents love, harmony, union and beauty. In Roman mythology Venus was the goddess of beauty, love, gardens and springs. Originally she was the Italian goddess of vegetation but was adopted into the Roman pantheon and given the attributes of the Greek goddess Aphrodite.

The **shield** symbolises protection and liberation, and was part of a knight's badge of honour and identification.

The **corn** is associated with summer, harvest, fertility and fruitfulness. It is used to symbolise human fertility, and also represents new life or new developments in other ways and reaping the rewards of our labour. In Greek myth Demeter was the goddess of agriculture, corn and fertility. It is said that she had sexual intercourse with Iasion in a ploughed field and produced Plutus. She also punished Erysichthon with perpetual hunger when he cut down a tree in her sacred grove.

The **waterfall** is often taken to represent an orgasm, or any display of emotion that is powerful and yet under control. It can also suggest some kind of spiritual cleansing. The **waterfall** represents our ability to create new life in response to our desires, and signifies peace and comfort or going with the flow.

A **pregnancy** can signify ideas, projects and plans for the future. It suggests new beginnings or a major event that will bring immense changes and responsibility. **Pregnancies** represent ambitious plans and projects that we feel will need nurturing and bringing to life. It can also mean that a waiting period is necessary for something, possibly the completion of a project. Perhaps we need to be patient and wait for the natural process to take place in order to fulfil a task. Obviously it can indicate the birth of a child for either someone close to us or ourselves. In Egyptian myth, Hathor was a mother-goddess, and goddess of childbirth, fertility, joy, love, marriage, music and the sky. It is said that she breast-fed the Pharaohs and greeted the souls entering the underworld.

The **trees** symbolise steady growth, age, experience, time and continuity. They are a symbol of life and creation. The oak, for example, is a symbol of longevity, strength, reliability and resilience. The roots symbolise the provision

of wisdom from our collective experience and may indicate how we feel about our own roots.

The Mother Goddess was all-powerful and was identified with nature and the earth. She was believed to be the creator of limitless fertility and abundance that fed and sustained life, but she could also destroy and demanded respect as part of nature's regenerative cycle of birth, growth, death and rebirth. The earth was worshipped in ancient times as the supreme mother-goddess and was believed to be both alive and divine. Mother Earth was a figure of great compassion and the source of all life and fertility. Paleolithic images of the mother-goddess have been found dating back 40,000 years.

On the whole the Empress symbolises fertility and new life, and represents the abundance of nature, fertility and growth. This card is about caring, mothering and birth, and embodies marriage and motherhood. It reminds us that everything moves in cycles from birth to death to rebirth, and indicates the birth of a child or the birth of a new project. The Empress is suggesting that we have the power to live and multiply, and is urging us to put some passion into our dreams and our creative potential. She denotes the fertile and creative power of the feminine, and the devotion and nurturing that is required before anything can be brought to fruition. There is a strong sense of wellbeing with this card, she is protected, secure and emotionally fulfilled. This card is suggesting that we take on some of her characteristics and go with the flow. It is also advising that we secure a solid base on which to build a secure future.

The Empress's card number is three and relates to the bringing together of opposites to create something new. It expresses all aspects of creation, such as birth, life and death; past, present and future; and mind, body and soul. The number three is a creative number and represents creative enterprise and growth, and all that is active and fertile. It also suggests material benefits from a fruitful harvest.

The astrological influence of the Empress is the planet Venus, which relates to our emotions and motivations. Venus denotes the desire to achieve harmony in relationships, and indicates opportunities for advancement, acclaim and popularity through an agreeable and helpful nature. Emotionally, Venus has a very friendly and romantic influence that often leads to marriage, especially if the planet has an influence in a male's horoscope. It symbolises success in artistic and creative pursuits, which will lead to improving the financial situation so that we are able to obtain the comforts and luxuries that we desire. Venus also denotes the birth of a child, and work on the home, such as redecorating or refurbishing. Good health usually comes with the influence of this planet through the freedom of worry because of its affect with harmonious thinking.

The Empress represents the Mother archetype and our experience with mothering, nurturing, emotions, and our creative impulse.

### **Interpretation**

When the Empress is in a reading a creative and productive phase is about to happen, and it is time to express your creative instincts. Your influence will achieve something that will lead to growth and prosperity in all aspects of your life. This card signifies that you can improve your circumstances by drawing on your own wisdom, understanding, strength and creativity, to bring stability and harmony into your everyday life. In your working life you are directed towards creative pursuits, such as art, sculpture, writing or anything associated with beauty, or the caring profession, such as nursing, maternity care, childcare, or care for the elderly. If you use your talents wisely and responsibly then your efforts and achievements will be rewarded, and result in a better standard of living, which will lead to good fortune and financial security, enabling you to surround yourself with material comforts.

This card suggests that you will have successful and creative partnerships in both business and personal relationships. You are warm and loving and your



personal relationships will be filled with joy and contentment. Maybe you are in love and want to make a commitment to your partner and are about to make arrangements to marry. Sexual relationships are satisfying and there may be news of a pregnancy or a birth, and all will go well if you are pregnant, but if you are not it indicates that someone around you could be. However, it warns that you should take extra care if you don't plan to have a baby just yet. You are a good homemaker and your creativity urges you to make your home a more beautiful place, perhaps you are thinking of redecorating or refurbishing your home or maybe thinking of moving into a larger house, possibly in the countryside, or at the least with a garden. A stage of personal fulfilment is being reached and you are enjoying the simple pleasures of life, you may have a love for nature, such as the countryside, gardening or even growing your own food.

If you have been ill you are now entering a recovery period and will soon get better, so it is time to pamper and take care of yourself. A strong need for emotional wellbeing will be fulfilled as you begin to tune into your inner feelings and emotions. Listen to your feelings or instincts and open your heart and mind to the powers of your intuition, and learn to trust them more. You are happy with your life and something is about to come to fruition, maybe there is something that you have kept a secret for a while and now you are motivated to tell others about it.

The Empress is a competent woman who feels safe and secure, she has sincere feelings, is kind and helpful but can be a little self-indulgent. Therefore, this card is suggesting that you take on some of these qualities and encourage those who need your support. By all means be generous with your time, however, deter others from becoming too dependent on you, and without feeling guilty don't give too much to others either. It also suggests a woman who embodies these principles and may become a role model for you. Focus on being rather than doing, relax and enjoy yourself.

**Negative**

You have a lost your influence through your emotions becoming unstable or through a lack of affection because you are not mixing with others, or because of your lazy and unenthusiastic behaviour resulting from self-indulgence.

There may be a loss of material comforts due to reduced financial circumstances. Financial resources may have deteriorated due to spending extravagantly on luxuries. Perhaps there is sorrow because of a broken relationship, maybe you are attracting those who can't live in harmony, or attract those who take advantage of your warm and loving nature. There may be sexual difficulties, maybe impotence or frigidity, or you are having a sterilisation or vasectomy, or an unwanted child may be conceived. There is something missing or lacking in your life, or you want to find something creative and meaningful to do, but do not know where to start.

**People**

A wife, mother or sister. A woman who exerts an influence or power over an achievement, a material creation, or a specific area of work. Those connected with music, painting, acting and other artistic pursuits. Those engaged in trades that cater for the pleasure of the public or for personal adornment, such as dress designers, beauticians, manufacturers of clothing accessories, florists, hairdressers and confectioners. For a man, it is the woman of his dreams.

## 4 The Emperor



**Astrological Influence:** Aries

**Keywords and phrases:** Taking a leadership role. A man of influence. Practical and realistic. Dealing with authority. Being in a position of control. Structure. Stability. Strength. The drive for achievement. Exerting control. Success. Commanding. The impulse to create something of lasting value. Establishing law and order. Regulation. Applying rules and guidelines. Setting direction. Rational thought. Ambition. Security.

Applying reason. Firmness. Co-ordinating. Commanding. Confidence. Wisdom. Sticking to a plan. Logic. Setting direction and tone. Creating order out of chaos. Uses head over heart. Self-control. Confidence. Completion. Certainty. Common sense. Achievement. Organisation. Recognition. Authoritative. Material wealth. Setting standards of behaviour. A job promotion. Working within the legal system. Establishing a project on firm a foundation. Establishing a family line. Rational understanding. Government.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

In most Tarot decks the Emperor has a beard, and is shown wearing a crown and sat on a throne adorned with rams' heads. In his right hand he holds a sceptre with the Ankh cross, and in his left hand he holds the globe of dominion. He is clothed in regal robes, under which he wears medieval armour. In the background there are mountains with a reddish tinge.

The Emperor's **beard** is an important aspect of the male symbolism and represents wisdom, dignity, virility and sovereignty. It signifies the need to consider the more masculine attributes in ourselves and others. It can also mean deceit and insincerity, so we must guard against concealment, secrecy and deceit. The **beard** was the sign of the king, and in ancient Egypt

beardless rulers, including women, were depicted with false beards to proclaim their status.

The **throne** is a seat of power and authority in both terrestrial and spiritual realm. It is a traditional symbol of sovereignty, divine authority and power. The **throne** is a symbol that acknowledges our right to take authority, and can represent our ability to belong to groups, or to society.

The **rams' heads** on the throne are a symbol of masculine power, strength and authority, and associated with the astrological zodiac sign of Aries. They are symbols of solar energy and represent renewal, fertility and the return to spring. They also symbolise virility, zeal, passion and obstinacy.

The **sceptre** is a symbol of authority and rulership. It was originally a male fertility symbol, and now implies royal or divine power and has been used as a symbol of imperial or sovereign position. The **sceptre** can represent our right to use our authority, and also signifies the transference of divine power from above to below.

The **Ankh cross** that is attached to the sceptre was an ancient Egyptian hieroglyph for life and immortality. It symbolises the union of Heaven and Earth, and carried to symbolise the powers over life and death.

The **globe** or **orb** was first used by the Roman Emperors to show their dominion over the world. It was a power symbol of the gods or imperial rulers, and a symbol of totality. The **globe** or **orb** suggests that we can develop a much more worldly aware perspective. We have certain powers within us that enable us to create a sustainable future for all, and for this to happen we need to have a wider understanding and perspective of the world.

The **robe** or **cloak** can suggest warmth and love, but also protection. This protection can either be physical or emotional, or the spiritual protection of faith. It also suggests status and power.

The **medieval armour** symbolised the knightly virtues of courage, protection, honour and strength. It signifies chivalry and the need to protect or be protected, possibly from something that we feel is threatening us. It could also be a stubbornness that prevents us from moving into new situations.

The **red mountains** are a symbol of obstacles and challenges to be overcome. They also symbolise transcendence, eternity, purity and spiritual ascent. They are associated with immortals, heroes, sanctified prophets and gods. The **red** colour is associated with energy, fire, passion, love, sex, anger and danger. In all they suggest that we have the vitality, strength and dynamism needed to overcome our obstacles and challenges to achieve our goals.

The Emperor and Empress are together as a couple, as were Mars and Venus. The Empress and Venus represent the female aspect and are receptive and nurturing, and the Emperor and Mars represent the male side of our nature and are dynamic and extrovert.

The Emperor has similarities to Zeus in Greek mythology. Zeus was a supreme god, rain-god and sky-god, and in human form was depicted wearing a crown of laurel leaves, seated on a throne and holding a sceptre. As a supreme god he symbolised male power and authority for both divine and human worlds. He led the gods in the war against the Titans, and after a ten-year struggle the gods were victorious, then he and his brothers shared the world between them. Pluto took the underworld, Poseidon took the sea, and Zeus took the earth and the heavens.

On the whole, the Emperor card signifies our inner control, discipline, willpower, and the need to have control over our own domain, and the capability to analyse and think rationally. It is about our ability to make difficult and important decisions, and our capability to drive forward with a direct and firm attitude and put them into action. It represents our moral behaviour and the rules by which we live our lives. This card signifies our ambition and motivation for status, material wealth and security. It is suggesting that we have the ability to create order out of chaos by being creative with our ideas, and transforming them into something solid and practicable. If we are motivated then we have the energy to take control of our situations, but we must be aware that we will have to work within a structure, and will need to set boundaries within that structure.

However, the Emperor can be stubborn and critical, and he can focus on his objectives without any concern or regard for anything or anyone and at times can be impulsive and have fits of temper. The Emperor card often indicates the father figure or boss, so it could represent someone in authority that may be of service to us to help us to structure our plans. It could also be someone we can depend on when we are in difficulty.

The Emperor card is the number four and is related to the four seasons, the four elements and the four phases of the moon, and in Christianity the four Evangelists. In Pythagorean theory it represents perfection and in Native American belief symbolises harmony. Its symbolism is connected to both the cross and the square, suggesting balance, order, stability and solidity and security, but also restrictions and limitations. This number is the foundation on which we build for the future through our sense, reason, logical thinking, control and systematic work.

The astrological influence for the Emperor is Aries, which is the sign of action, energy, enthusiasm, anticipation, command and sometimes audacity. Arians always plan ahead and pursue their goals with great determination. This is the

sign of leaders and warriors. However, even though they are full of energy, they usually charge ahead with little regard for themselves or others. They are honest and direct but tend not to think before they speak or take action.

Arians will excel in any job in which they can organise, express themselves and are able to use their intellectual powers. They can be very passionate, and an Aries man will look for a strong partner. The Emperor represents the Father archetype and our experience with authority, reason and logic.

### **Interpretation**

When the Emperor appears in a spread, it indicates that you may have the opportunity to play a more powerful role, or take control of a situation that could develop into a very successful future.

You have the confidence and ambition to reach your goals and you want to make your mark on the world. This power and authority is based on your experience, so aim high and go for what you want. Be prepared to take the lead because you are a natural leader. You will find yourself in a position that could be financially rewarding, however, you will have to keep control by being alert and putting in the effort, but your natural wisdom will bring balance to your judgements and decisions.

New or untried ideas may be put to the test that will involve you having to take on more responsibility, and other people may also be looking to you for direction. Perhaps you are going to be offered a promotion or some kind of acknowledgement that gives you a higher status, or maybe you are starting your own business or company, either way it will improve your earnings. However, if you prefer to be the boss or be in a job where you are in control, you will need to develop a structure and a resolve to work by.

In your relationships you take a mature and practical approach, but find it difficult to express your emotions very often because you like to keep them in control. The Emperor also relates to someone close to you who is protective

and has a strong character, perhaps it could be your partner, boss or father, or it could be a man who will be a great influence on everything that is happening around you. It is a person that you will be able to turn to for advice and support. Sometimes this card suggests someone who can be aggressive or stubborn, so don't be pressured or bullied by anyone who is strongly critical, especially males or authority figures.

You are in a strong and solid position, so it is time to put your plans into action in order to reach your goals and achieve success. Be more practical and responsible, use your intelligence and reason, stick to your principles, and things will go better than you think.

### **Negative**

There may be difficulties resulting from recklessness, undue haste or ill-applied energy and initiative. There may be a feeling of hostility or domestic strife arising from your own aggressiveness, assertiveness or ill-controlled passions. If you are in a management or leadership position, you may be about to lose some of your authority. Someone is behaving sly, insensitive and unreliable, and may be using you. Maybe you are dealing with someone who is putting on an act and is not all that they seem. Perhaps you are wasting too much energy by taking action without thinking, and are finding that your work is not as successful as you thought it might be, or you can't be bothered to put in the effort and are evading your responsibilities and not finishing your projects and plans.

### **People**

Those exercising personal initiative and enterprise. Those who are assertive and pioneering. Those working in connection with engineering, salesmanship, art, politics, the armed forces, or legal profession. Those capable of amicable cooperation in business. Those who can bring quarrels to a peaceful end. Those engaging in political activities. A father, a male partner, or brother. Those who are in your life now, or those who enter your life, and are



protective, strong, worldly and authoritative. Those who are trustworthy, solid, and dependable, and who you can turn to for advice and encouragement.

## 5 The Hierophant



**Astrological Influence:** Taurus

**Key words and phrases:** An official ceremony. The establishment. Moral requirements. Professional advice. Teaching. Learning. Preference for tradition. Conformity. Established codes of behaviour and belief. A search for meaning. Places of worship. Attendance at a wedding or religious service. Rites that link with tradition of a community.

### Symbolic Meaning

In the Waite deck the Hierophant or Pope is seated on a throne between two pillars. He wears a triple-layered crown and holds a triple cross sceptre in his left hand, while his right hand gives the ecclesiastical sign of benediction. At his feet are the crossed keys and two monks or priests kneeling before him, wearing albs decorated with white lilies and red roses.

The **throne** symbolises the seat of power in both the temporal and spiritual world. In the ancient world of architecture the **pillars** were associated with temporal and spiritual authority, and also have an esoteric connection in Jewish belief.

The **triple-layered crown** indicates high status and leading authority in the ecclesiastical and spiritual world, and depicts the Hierophant's spiritual power, temporal power, and the power he has over the sovereignty on Earth.

The **triple cross** represents the ability to combine the material, physical and spiritual aspects of life. It suggests that we may need to merge our religious or spiritual requirements with the more mundane areas of our lives.

The **sceptre** is a symbol of authority and rulership, and is a link that represents embracing spirit between the higher and lower worlds. It describes the movement from above to below, from Heaven to Earth, and from the nadir to the zenith, and vice versa.

The **sign of benediction** signifies that we are given favour from heaven, and have the go ahead to search for a spiritual or religious meaning to our lives.

The **crossed keys** symbolise the keys to heaven and earth that Christ gave to St Peter. The Church adopted keys as symbols of authority, and the papal coat of arms shows two keys, one silver key and one gold key. They are a symbol of spiritual and worldly authority, and of giving access to sacred and temporal wealth. **Keys** signify unlocking the door to transient and spiritual power, and it was said that they were adopted from the Roman god Janus.

In Greek mythology, Janus was the two-faced god of beginnings, dawn, doors, gateways and travel. He saved Rome from the attacking Sabines by creating a spring of boiling water at the gateway. The two doors on his temple in Rome were only closed when the nation was not at war. It was said that he had one young face and one old face and is depicted carrying a key and a rod, and some people regard Janus as a pre-Latin deity who was adopted into the Roman pantheon.

The **monks** or **priests** represent the inner awareness of a belief system, and the side of ourselves that has developed a code of behaviour, and maybe a change of attitude, belief or awareness. They signify that it is time to access the inner truth or spirituality that we all possess, and take responsibility for our lives.

In Christianity, **white lilies** symbolise purity and chastity, and also purity in alchemy. They are said to have grown from the tears of Eve after she left the Garden of Eden. They are also the flowers of the Virgin Mary.

Again in Christianity, **red roses** symbolise the blood of martyrs and life after death. A sect founded in Europe in the 15<sup>th</sup> century called the Rosicrucian Brotherhood combined the symbol of the rose with the cross to form the emblem of their society.

The Hierophant is the ruling power of external religion and the spiritual domain. He represents the handing down of established teachings, and the need for order and awareness of our inner self, and contact with our spiritual side. He is the Pope, the supreme pontiff.

In ancient Greek lore “hierophant” was a word for a priest who was an official interpreter of sacred mysteries and esoteric principles. The Pope is the Pontifex Maximus, and is the head of the principal college of priests in Rome. The word *pontifex* means “builder of bridges,” therefore the Hierophant is making a connection to guide us to the divine or the spiritual and leads us to enlightenment and the truth.

This card reflects our desire to search for the meaning to things in order to become more connected within ourselves and become more aware of the world around us. It describes the inner feeling that we all have when we say, “there must be more to life than this,” and sooner or later we start to follow a different path to enable us to feel more whole. The Hierophant is about our desire to find a balance between our temporal and spiritual urges. He represents the need to find a spiritual meaning to our lives.

He is associated with the number five, indicating matter (bodily, corporeal substance), perception (feelings, intuition), impression (awareness, sensory powers), action (ideas, psychic and instinctive activity), and knowledge (intelligence, understanding and wisdom). The number five signifies spiritual power, inner wisdom and mental ability, and also the ability to combine information. It represents activity and seeks constant change and variety, and

also uses experience to put things into action. The number five influences the need for social contact, education, ideas and communication with others.

According to Hindu belief and doctrine, mental awareness leads to self-knowledge (sixth sense), which brings together all the qualities and powers of the five senses to form their quintessence, developing into a kind of perceptive, extrasensory power.

The Hierophant's astrological influence is in the sign of Taurus. This places a focus on our material, physical, emotional, mental and spiritual resources, and the way we would be able to shape them in order to strengthen our position. Taurus brings opportunities for improving our financial position and for adding to our material possessions. He has an influence on building the foundation of some enterprise, increasing our mental resources by analysing and probing into the physical laws of the universe, multiplying spiritual resources by acquiring a knowledge of the secret laws underlying the universe, achieving regeneration, undertaking study, and research requiring intense application. Taurus is methodical and steady and likes to have order in everything around him. He is warm-hearted, loyal and loving, and functions best in a steady, stable environment. His need for security and material comfort encourages him to preserve things rather than destroy them. He is full of common sense, a good listener, and provides a good shoulder to cry on as well as giving practical advice.

### **Interpretation**

The Hierophant often appears in a spread when you are having difficulties with other people or when you are not happy with your life, and are searching for answers to your problems. It may be asking you to look beyond your differences if you are having conflict with a friend or a loved one, and try to understand what draws you towards each other. If you are going through difficulty or a critical situation that you would rather not deal with, you will be able to sort it out or someone could come to guide and support you, maybe a

teacher, mentor, confidant, therapist or a counsellor. This person may possibly be an older man who you could confide in, he may give you good advice and open your mind to look at the situation from a different angle. He may also support you with any references that you may need to put forward for job applications or courses you want to apply for.

You are searching for truth, understanding, new ways of thinking and new opportunities, and suggests that you need to look deep inside yourself for answers of a spiritual or philosophical nature, and also urges you to combine your spiritual or religious needs with the more mundane areas of your life. You might be drawn to a subject based on your growing spiritual awareness to achieve a meaningful structure to your life, however, you will have to follow the conventional or traditional route in learning, training or attaining wisdom to develop a spiritual path as there are no easy short cuts.

Perhaps you want to belong to something or look for your own path rather than follow the one that society has laid out for you, but for some reason you are holding on to old outdated thoughts and ways. Do not be afraid to be unconventional if your spiritual desire takes you in a different direction, get rid of memories of past failures, feelings of loss, old routine, and people who criticised you in the past, and move into the new and unknown to find new opportunities.

You are going to gain insight into something or a situation that has been a mystery or previously been obscured, and you may gain some unexpected assistance.

Maybe you are a person of tradition and dislike any disruptions in your life, and you may like regular routine even to the time you eat your meals. You may believe in the traditional elements of marriage and you want your role to be clearly defined, because you have always had a structure to whatever you were taught.

The Hierophant also indicates that you like to be held in high esteem by your peers, but do not necessarily like to conform to their rules and regulations. However, there may be a situation where you will have to be careful and thorough and play by the rules, and also look at your own behaviour before telling others how to behave, so it is advising you not to do anything to upset or annoy others. Perhaps you need to take a different approach when you are faced with a choice rather than automatically going down the same old path, or you may need to learn how to operate in a new way and develop more strength of will. This card can signify attending a wedding or some other church ceremony. It can also suggest new keys to a property, possibly a new home, or new business premises.

### **Negative**

There may be financial losses or illness through neglecting or foolishly wasting your resources or energy. You may be involved with someone whose behaviour is irritating and self-indulgent, and showing tolerance to his/her behaviour is annoying you. You may be feeling stifled by rules and regulations and feel you need to break out, instead of following the tradition or path that society has laid out for you. You are having some conflict with principal or critical people and finding it hard to communicate effectively or put your ideas across. Maybe you are being prevented from moving forward by those in authority. Get a second opinion when seeking advice, titles or letters after a name does not mean that you are getting the right information. Put your foot down, and stop being too easygoing, and allowing other people to get away with things that are not right.

### **People**

Those who have some form of spiritual authority. Those with a good knowledge of human nature. A man who has influence and holds important responsibilities and position. Those who are knowledgeable, wise and experienced in life. Those you can confide in. Good advisers. Those who would give you their support. Those you could ask for a reference or approval.

Those who are in a high-powered position, such as an ecclesiastic, a doctor, a politician and a judge.



## 6 The Lovers



**Astrological Influence:** Gemini

**Key words and phrases:** Choice. A new relationship. An important decision. Temptation. Reviewing an important relationship. A desire to share your life with another person. Torn between two lovers. Commitment. Choosing which path to follow. Marriage. Union.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

The Lovers card is a representation of human love. The illustration depicts a naked man and woman standing in a garden with the sun shining over a winged figure hovering above them. Behind the female figure is the Tree of the Knowledge of good and evil with the serpent coiled around it. Behind the male figure is the Tree of Life whose branches bear twelve flames, which may represent the signs of the zodiac.

The **sun** is a dominant symbol of creative energy, vitality, passion, courage, knowledge, intellect, truth and eternally renewed youth. It suggests happiness, warmth and conscious awareness, and symbolises the energy that we have.

The **winged figure** signifies a Guardian Angel (possibly Raphael the Archangel), who gives the couple his blessing. Raphael is the archangel of healing and travellers. He wears the colours of early morning sunlight, and emanates green or yellow rays. The Archangel Raphael is an agent through which the will of God is delivered. Archangels are said to be androgynous, they bring loving kindness, protection and divine messages to humanity. They are also associated with Mercury or the sun.

The two **naked figures** standing in a garden has a connection with Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden. The story of Adam and Eve represents them as being a couple of innocents who were totally unaware of their differences, sexuality, good or evil. When they ate the fruit of the Tree of the Knowledge, which was forbidden by God, they gained a moral sense of good and bad, and became responsible for the corruption of human nature.

**Nudity** is linked with innocence and with the desire to be open and honest. However, it can relate to our self-image or self-expression, and the need to be seen for what we are, and not for what is assumed or communicated by the imagery of our mind.

The **Tree of the Knowledge** is so called because it bears the “fruit of knowledge,” whether it is the knowledge of good or evil, or of life, wisdom or immortality.

The **serpent** or **snake** represents uncontrolled passion and suggests temptation, but also signifies our search for our spiritual nature. The **snake** has Satanic characteristics as depicted in the story of Adam and Eve, however, the Nassene Gnostics, who concerned themselves with esoteric mystical knowledge, honoured the **snake** as a liberating influence who helped to make Adam and Eve fully human by introducing them to the Tree of the Knowledge. According to Jung, **snakes** symbolise all that is totally subconscious and instinctive, which can come into conflict with conscious attitudes. However, the subconscious and instinct borders on spiritual and unique wisdom, therefore, the snake can symbolise both evil and wisdom that overrides human morality.

The **Tree of Life** is a universal symbol of creation. It has its branches in the heavens, its trunk in our earthly world, and its roots in the waters of the underworld. It is seen as a way of accessing the mysteries of our spiritual life and our relationship with God, and links heaven to the earth.

On the whole, the naked couple suggests the youth, purity, innocence and love, before Eve tempted Adam with the apple, and contaminating life with material desire. Alas, the concept of original sin was born. We all have to face making important choices in our lives. However, the Lovers suggest that our choices should not be made lightly, as there is often more at stake than we realise. When we enter into a relationship we are attempting to unite opposites. These two polarities must be gently brought together for harmony to prevail. We all have different traits, whether positive or negative, or some that we are even unaware of, until it is mirrored in our partners. When these aspects of our character are echoed back to us, we then become more self-aware of our traits. We must also be consciously aware of our choices and decisions, if not, complications could result if we choose wrongly. Therefore, self-awareness equips us to take responsibility for our decisions and enables us to become whole. Sometimes this card refers to a choice between two distinct paths that will need a decision as to which direction we take in life, whether it concerns our love life, job, travel, or any other path in life, which will mean our lives will change forever upon our decision.

The number six is associated with the Lovers, and is related to the six-pointed star, which signifies harmony and balance, and is a symbol of union and equilibrium. Six relates to our feelings and emotions, giving and caring, and looking after the health of others.

Gemini is the astrological influence of this card, which is the sign of adaptability, flexibility, intelligence, eloquence and communication. They are sociable and light-hearted, although they can be changeable and too easily influenced. Gemini focuses on our immediate environment and all the physical and mental processes by which we determine our relation to it, such as communication, family and education. It brings opportunities for travel, improving our standard of education, ability to attain honours, writing and publishing. Gemini also leads us to activity in transport, communication, spreading ideas, recording facts and with foreign countries. It denotes events

in the lives of brothers, sisters, close neighbours or friends. Gemini also signifies opposites and duality, and is associated with contact, communication and the intellect.

### **Interpretation**

You need to think very carefully about something, and make up your mind as to which direction you want to take. Perhaps you have a crucial decision or choice to make, and are torn between your head and your heart because it is probably to do with a relationship. Possibly there are choices in love and an element of sacrifice is involved, for example, you might have to choose between two different people or you are with someone who will not make a commitment, or you are seeing someone who is already in another relationship. You will have to weigh up the pros and cons of these decisions because the consequences could have a profound impact. Maybe things are not going according to plan and you are feeling trapped because you are in a dead-end situation or marriage, and feel that you have sacrificed your ideals or dreams, and now you wonder what on earth you are doing in this situation. In this scenario, this is probably a good time have a heart-to-heart talk and then decide whether you want to carry on or move in a different direction. You may even have a conflict between choosing a spiritual path and earthly passion.

Whatever your choice or decision you are being offered a chance to get back on the right path, and you are likely to find the answer you want by listening to your intuition, rather than from outside sources. There might be unavoidable situations, or predicaments as a result of another, but you will come to the right conclusion when you have made your choice. Follow your heart.

On a brighter note, there may be happiness and harmony in your love life, and life in general. Perhaps it is the beginning of a romantic partnership, and there are bonds of mutual affection, attraction, desire and love. Maybe you have a new lover in your life, or a current love is growing stronger and stronger by the

day, or a love that had gone off the boil has suddenly become fired with passion. In business, joint ventures and partnerships will be profitable. You will receive financial backing and any investments will be protected. Whatever the situation, changes in relationships inevitably mean choices have to be made.

### **Negative**

There may be unfortunate changes in your career or an upset in the family circle, due to your own restlessness or a lack of intelligent planning. Within a relationship there maybe one partner is who controlling the other emotionally or physically. Perhaps your love life has become boring or even non-existent. Maybe you have discovered that your partner is having an affair. It could be that you are separated from a lover and cannot put it out of your mind. Perhaps there is trouble through slander or malicious gossip concerning your relationship.

### **People**

Those who are in love. Those who have to make a choice of the direction they want to take with a situation or a relationship. A romantic partner. Those who bring people together to recover or introduce a relationship, such as, a marriage counsellor, a mediator, a dating agent and a singles club agent, or it could be someone who has the qualities you lack. Those in jobs connected with travel, communication, the spreading of ideas and recording of facts.

## 7 The Chariot



**Astrological Influence:** Cancer

**Key words and phrases:** Assistance in times of need. Protection. Foresight. Conviction. Belief. Clear purpose. Determination. Being able to carry on. Initiative. Self-assertion. Willpower. Control. Conquest. Success. Inner peace. Progress. Ambition. Mastery. Courage. Skill. Energy to fight for a goal. Great effort. Achievement. The drive for success. Self-control.

Sense of purpose. A journey. News. Winning. Victory resulting from personal effort. Honours. Recognition. Control over conflicting forces. Inner struggle. Self-discipline. Conflict of interests. Ability to stay on top. Steering a middle course. Balancing conflicting emotions. Triumph over obstacles. Charging ahead through struggle and conflict. Coming out on top. Strength of will. Going with the flow. Transportation. Communications. Vehicles. A new car.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

The Chariot is a symbol of motion. In the Waite deck it is generally portrayed as a princely man wearing armour, and driving a canopied chariot that is being pulled in opposite directions by two different coloured sphinxes, one black and one white. He carries a sceptre or staff in his right hand and wears a crown on his head with an eight-pointed star attached to it. The crescent moon shapes on his shoulders are possibly the Urim and Thurrim of the Hebrew faith. The chariot is decorated with the winged sun disc representing absolute power and control, that is only achieved when we overcome our difficulties and control any conflict that is within us.

The **armour** is a symbol of courage, protection, honour and strength. It signifies chivalry and the need to protect or be protected from something that

is putting pressure on us. It can also mean that we are being inflexible with some issue, which is stopping us from moving forward.

The **canopy** symbolises that we may have a need to draw attention to our higher ideology and goals. It is associated with royal power and is a symbol of heavenly protection, and also suggests shelter and love.

The **chariot** was a dynamic symbol of rulership in ancient iconography. It is also a symbol of spiritual authority, and in moral allegory it is an image of the triumphant journey of the spirit. Hindu mysticism associates the **chariot** as a symbol of the Self.

The Greek sun god Helios rode his sun **chariot** across the sky from east to west each day. The Greek Achilles killed Hector and violated his body by dragging it round the city walls behind his **chariot**. Agni the Hindu god of fire is said to have rode a **chariot** drawn by red horses. Surya, a Hindu sun god is depicted as copper-bodied, three-eyed and four-armed, and riding a **one-wheeled chariot** drawn by four or seven red or white horses.

The **black and white sphinxes** are a symbol of opposites and duality. They signify that we need to have the ability to pull together the positive and negative elements of our lives and bring them into unison to enable us to steer a direct and positive path. **Sphinxes** symbolise vigilance, power, wisdom and dignity.

In some areas of the Arab world **black** animals are regarded as unlucky. However, in ancient Egypt, **black** was the colour of resurrection and eternal life, and was an emblem of power and authority of the Muslim rulers (Caliphate), in the 1<sup>st</sup> century AD. Therefore, the **black sphinx** suggests materialisation, pessimism, and judgement. Whereas **white** is the colour of light and is considered lucky, therefore, the **white sphinx** symbolises spiritual purity, innocence and wisdom.

The **sceptre** or **staff** symbolises royal power, authority and rulership. Therefore it suggests that we can go ahead and use our abilities and qualities with authority.

The **crown** is a symbol acknowledging our success, and opportunities that will expand our knowledge and awareness. It suggests that we may be about to receive an honour of some kind, and represents victory and dedication to duty. The **crown** is identified with power, glory and devotion, and related to the circle and ring representing perfection and continuity.

The **eight-pointed star** is usually referred to as the Morning and Evening Star. It denotes hope, aspiration and ideal, and symbolises new beginnings and rebirth.

**Urim and Thurrim** are the figures that were usually on the breastplate of a Hebrew high priest, and a divine oracle in their faith that symbolised fire and truth or light and perfection.

The **winged sun disc** goes way back to the pharaohs. In ancient Egypt the king or pharaoh was believed to be a living manifestation of divinity, and was associated with Horos, the falcon-headed sky god, and Re, who was sometimes represented as a **winged sun disc**. This god-like status gave the pharaoh absolute power, having control over the army, the priesthood and all civil appointments. Therefore, the **winged sun disc** symbolises that we have the power to control our own appointments in life. It is about triumph on all planes, such as the trials of the mind and the attempts at initiating the journey towards a goal.

On the whole, the sphinxes on the Chariot card are being pulled in different directions. It is the role of the charioteer to hold the sphinxes together and steer a straight course, as they signify the contradictions and conflicts of our psyches. According to the Greek philosopher Plato, a black horse on a chariot



symbolised our basic instincts, and a white horse symbolised our better nature.

In the same that way we use our will and the strength of our personality in difficult situations, the Chariot is asking us to take the reins and understand what is driving us.

This card is associated with the number seven, which is the number of movement, progress, and victory. It is a symbol of completeness and personal wholeness. It can also signal that it is time for a change, and is a number of thought and reflection. Seven is the number of the heavenly virtues, deadly sins, colours of the rainbow, chakras in the human body, the days of the week, and “the seven year itch.” It is also a sacred, mystical and magical number, and a symbol of universal and spiritual order and perfection. This number focuses on identifying our problems by asking searching questions of ourselves while realising the lessons we have learned from our past mistakes.

The astrological influence of the Chariot is Cancer, and is the sign of imagination and intuition. When this is harnessed to logical and rational thought, positive decisions are made. Cancerians will never give up, are emotional and relate to past events, feelings and memories to protect themselves from future doubts. This sign focuses on our ability to draw upon the vast experience that we have gained in the past, and the extent to which we have digested that experience and absorbed it into our subconscious mind so that it may provide mental and emotional food for thought in our present. It has a link with our parental heredity and may denote events in the parents’ life. Cancer brings opportunities for gaining advancement, honours and recognition, improving domestic conditions, opening up fresh avenues of experience, and undertaking additional responsibilities. It can also indicate changes in our career and our home, and engagement or marriage for the male Cancerian.

The Chariot reminds us that conflict can be a creative force for change in our lives, and signifies the ability to see both sides of an issue.

### **Interpretation**

When the Chariot appears in a spread it represents success or victory through focused effort, and reward as a result of hard work. Your self-discipline may have been a struggle, but victory is in sight and your determination, wit and enthusiasm will succeed over all opposition. If you can harness all of your abilities or talents to attain the desired goal, then eventually you will be successful. Move in a positive direction by focusing on identifying any problems, searching for the answers to questions and learning the lessons of past mistakes, then take control of the direction of your life and make the changes that you want to make.

You may have a passionate ambition to achieve a particular goal, but it may be playing on your mind because it could mean a move, a journey, or a change. You will need to gather all of your strength and energy to overcome this conflict within your mind, and once you have resolved this dilemma you can then move forward. Even if there is a struggle, use your gifts, be prepared to work hard and keep striving for those goals you have in sight.

A situation is coming where you have to go forward with commitment and determination, and someone may inspire and encourage you not to give in. The Chariot indicates that you will be able to cope and have the ability, self-assertion and skill needed to be successful, and you will successfully overcome difficulties and emerge victorious. There could also be travel opportunities, dealings for a car, or the need of a holiday.

In money matters, you may have to approach someone who owes you money but you will be fortunate because it will be paid back to you. Financial transactions will go well but any investments you make now will need time to grow before you see any profit. In love, you might be thinking of a possible

union with someone you know and like, however, it may not be the right time for a relationship at the moment. Maybe the right person has not come along as yet, but your love life will improve. In work matters, maybe you are wondering if you should engage in a plan or continue on a project, just make sure that you have all the skills, knowledge or experience needed to push forward, as you may be in competition with others and will need your wits about you.

### **Negative**

It relates to some kind of damage to your prestige, upsets in your career or domestic life. Maybe unfavourable changes are about to happen, which could lead to ill health due to apathy, depression or emotional upsets. You are rushing into things too quickly which is making you waste your resources and burn up your energy. Perhaps you feel that your abilities are failing you and have got yourself in a rut and do not know which way to turn. It feels as if you have too many things to contend with and burying your head in the sand in the hope that it will all disappear, but you will need to face up to reality. Maybe you are having problems with your car and travel plans are not working out as planned.

### **People**

Those who are determined to work hard and go forward with courage and willpower to reach their aim. Those who have the skills and resources needed to put them on the path to success. Those who have to go on a journey, or move premises or take a different direction in career, relationship, or whatever is paramount at the moment. Those in the catering and hotel trade. Those connected with nurturing or growth, such as nurses, gardeners and farmers.

## 8 Strength



**Astrological Influence:** Leo

**Key words and phrases:** Self-confidence; inner strength; action; the power of conviction; patience; wisdom; assertiveness; gentle force; ability to overcome problems through willpower; a strong position; self-discipline; faith in your own abilities; heroism; protection; non-violence; courage; energy; strength; virility; vitality; healing; good health; recovery after illness; potency; empowerment; self-reliance; gentleness; endurance; taming the beast within; harnessing instinctive desires; proper channelling of libido; reconciliation; diplomacy; tact.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

Strength and Justice exchange positions in various packs of the Tarot cards. There is no reason for an explanation into this, and it holds no significance to us. Therefore, I use Tarot decks where the Strength card is numbered eight and the Justice card numbered eleven. The Strength card in most decks is depicted as a man or a woman who is getting to grips with a lion. In the Waite deck it depicts a woman with the figure-eight symbol of eternity over her head and wearing a white robe. She has a wreath of red flowers in her hair and a garland of the same round her waist, and seems to be closing the jaws of a lion and successfully gained control over it.

The **figure-eight symbol of eternity** or **infinity** comes from the Latin *infinitas* or “unboundedness.” **Eternity** or **infinity** has no boundaries and discontinuity therefore, it is perpetual. It is also an ancient Egyptian symbol of eternal life.

The **white seamless robe** suggests innocence, holiness and spiritual purity.

The **wreath** represents a bond that cannot be broken or a sacrifice that must be accepted. It is a symbol of truce, victory, purification and divination, and also spiritual or temporal authority, perfection and continuity.

The **red flowers** symbolise warmth, love and passion, but also danger. They represent the culmination of a growth cycle and crowning achievement, and are related to the power of the passive, feminine principle, displaying literal, physical, spiritual and symbolical beauty.

The **garland** can represent honour, recognition and approval from our peers for work or a task that has been completed.

The **lion** symbolises dignity, strength and courage, but also represents our ego and the feeling associated with it. The **lion** is a solar symbol and a sign of power and leadership. It is an animal with divine qualities and a symbol of victory, bravery, vigilance and fortitude. It is also a symbol of the harmful and negative urges that lurk deep within our psyche. However, if we find ourselves struggling, the **lion** signifies that we have the power and ability to overcome our difficulties and turn them into successful developments.

In Greek myth, Heracles was given twelve Labours by King Eurystheus, and his first Labour was to kill the Nemean lion. Heracles strangled the lion with his bare hands then wore the skin as armour, as it was believed that it could withstand all weapons, and he wore the head of the lion as a helmet.

In Roman mythology, Androcles was a runaway slave who removed a thorn from a lion's foot. Later he was recaptured and thrown into a cage of lions. However, the lion that Androcles helped was there and protected him from the other lions. Because of this, the authorities gave Androcles his freedom.

On the whole, this card symbolises the mastery over any suggestion of the animal nature in our conscious mind, and channelling this passionate energy

into positive and creative activities. The woman in this card is showing us that we have power over our negative urges, and our higher spiritual nature can overcome our earthly desires. The Strength card demonstrates the triumph of our spiritual intuition, and shows that our willpower and determination can work better than brute strength. This card gives us the opportunity to resolve the destructive aspects of our lives. Strength is where we learn to master and develop self-control over our instincts and impulses.

It is associated with the number eight, which indicates mastery over the physical world, an acceptance of responsibility, and the ability to rule by divine standards. The number eight is a symbol of universal balance and renewal, as well as positive changes. Whatever effort we put into our lives to produce success it is suggesting that we direct our effort in a positive and responsible way.

Strength's astrological influence is Leo, which is a sign of great creativity, and enthusiasm for life. Leo represents ambition, organisation and control. In a positive aspect, Leo represents the triumph of controlled strength, courage and truth over violence, cowardice and tyranny. It focuses on the power of our individuality and our desire for self-expression, and the ability to take advantage of our innate talent and add new skills to our inherited abilities. Leo brings opportunities for making friends, engaging in love affairs, speculating successfully, realising our ideals, having power as a result of rising to a higher position, and achieving success in sport or entertainment. This leads to work where we can give a free rein to our creative talents, or the kind of work that will attract attention to ourselves, such as performing for the public. Leo may also denote the birth of a child, and significant events in the life of a son or daughter.

### **Interpretation**

When the Strength card appears in a reading, you are about to tap into your potential. Overcome past fears and gather all your resources and energy to

get through any obstacles that stand in your way, so that you can go into the next phase of your life. You can do what needs to be done to take charge of any given situation. A sudden release of creative energy will have an inspired effect on you, and you will get what you want and reach your aim. If you rely on your inner strength and patience then long-standing problems will be resolved. Focus on overcoming any obstacles or opposition, stand firm even if it causes pain and use persuasion if you want to. Stick to your principles, and do what you believe is right in an unbiased way. If you have any conflict or disputes from others you will be able to resolve them.

After you have done the necessary preparation you can expect a good outcome, and feel as if you have a new lease of life with increased health and energy, which will strengthen your feelings of self-worth.

### **Negative**

In a negative aspect, it suggests disharmony resulting from an abuse of power, causing hostility and antagonism from others. There may be quarrels with friends, broken love affairs, misfortune involving friends, setbacks with speculation, disappointment with sport, entertainment and holidays. Maybe you have lost sight of your spiritual side and are unable to handle things effectively. Perhaps your dealings with others lack love and understanding, and you are portraying someone who is cold and uninterested. It could also be that you are unhappy with your situation, or maybe you are overtired and overworked. You need to summon up your inner strength and carry on despite genuine difficulties.

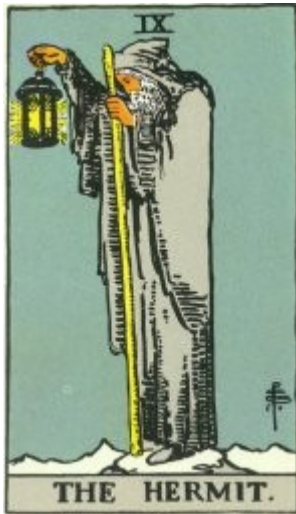
### **People**

Those who exert power as a result of being promoted to a higher position. Those who attract attention to themselves through artistic enterprise. Writers. Inventors. Those who have an organising ability, such as a manager, or the head of some business concern. Those whose work is connected with speculation, such as stockbrokers, bookmakers or financial speculators.

Those who are courageous while possessing a tranquil inner strength. Those who have a purposeful temperament, good self-control, and can master any situation in which they find themselves.



## 9 The Hermit



**Astrological Influence:** Virgo

**Key words and phrases:** Contemplation; meditation; quiet study; self-discovery; withdrawing from society; keeping to yourself; patience; discretion; prudent reflection; time spent alone; thoughtful planning; seeking sensible advice; deliberation; attention to details; inner guidance; counselling; self-examination; reassessment; discovery; wisdom; forethought; old age; sanctuary; the process of searching for deeper

truths; inner understanding; pondering life's mysteries; withdrawal from daily routine; the search for mystical enlightenment; the need for solitude and introspection; a quiet spell; patient waiting; being attuned to the spiritual dimensions of the universe. The wish to bring knowledge to light; attending to your mental health; atonement; the answer lies within; patience is a virtue.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

The Hermit depicts an old man carrying a staff and a lantern. In the Waite deck a bearded old man wears what looks like a grey hooded habit. In his left hand he holds a long staff, and holds up a lantern with his right hand that contains a shining six-pointed star, while standing alone on the top of a mountain.

The **bearded old man** represents the profound but practical wisdom that is inherent in the depths of our psyche which must be listened to. According to Jung the Hermit is the Wise Old Man and is one of his “manna personalities,” which are regarded as important influences in our lives. So whenever a “manna figure” appears it will be extremely important and will open up new perspectives in our lives.

**Hoods** are a symbol of invisibility and suggest that part of our persona is being concealed and needs to be revealed so that we may be able to fully operate.

The **cloak** that is attached to the Hermit's **habit** is also a symbol of invisibility and concealment, but also suggests intrigue, secrecy and protection.

The **grey** colour of the **hooded habit** is associated with the colour of mist, old age and time, and may suggest that we have a blurred state of mind, making it difficult for us to see where we are going, or we are losing our sense of direction. **Grey** indicates that we may be feeling depressed or drained and need to look for something positive to brighten up our lives. However, the colour **grey** is also associated with Cronos, the Greco-Roman Lord of Time, and wisdom was one of his attributes. This colour is also linked with wisdom on the Kabbalistic Tree of Life. Therefore **grey** can also symbolise wisdom, dedication and service.

His **staff** signifies the support we need through life, and symbolises a journey we need to take, perhaps of the mind, but we will receive help in some way and do not have to do it on our own.

His **lantern** signifies guidance and wisdom signalling a time of clarity and honesty, and reveals that events will become much clearer. It can also symbolise spiritual insight and a sudden burst of inspiration and understanding.

The **six-pointed star** denotes hope, inspiration and ideal, and is a symbol of balance and harmony. It signifies that our physical and spiritual qualities are united and in harmony, creating wisdom.

The **mountain** signifies that we have a clear view and a better perspective on life. It denotes achievement through hard work, and can also signify spiritual

advancement. A **mountain** is a symbol of transcendence, eternity, purity and spiritual ascent, and is associated with immortals, heroes, sanctified prophets, and gods. The Hermit has a similarity to the Hindu god Vishnu.

According to Hindu belief, Vishnu, also called the Preserver, is the agent of light that maintains the harmony of the universe. He rides upon the eagle Garuda who symbolises the wisdom attained by having an open mind. His four main symbols are the conch shell used to dispel demons, the club to represent power, the discus used against evil forces, and the lotus symbolising reincarnation.

The Hermit does not depend on anyone else and seems to stand alone, but in fact he is really guiding us up the mountain to spiritual union and suggesting that we can be where he is. He is the Jungian archetype of the wise old man, and reflects our spiritual journey when we are in search of our inner truths and knowledge. This process cannot be hurried, we must be patient and follow in the Hermit's footsteps. He symbolises the need to withdraw from the rat race to seek enlightenment, and he purposely does this to attain a connection with his spiritual powers. Through time the Hermit has gained wisdom and patience by being on his own, but he is not lonely. This card signifies a period of solitude or isolation to reflect through meditation and contemplation, in order to grow spiritually and mentally. By doing this we can discover deeper truths about ourselves. Spending time alone gives us a chance to discover, through our intuition, which path to follow or the action needed to steer us in the right direction. Whether we take time out on purpose or whether it is forced upon us, it can offer many insights and enables us to grow and develop by taking stock of our lives. This card can also indicate a wise teacher or counsellor who can help us to connect with our inner self.

The Hermit is associated with the number nine, which represents the end of a cycle or phase of life, and the preparation needed for entering a new phase. It shows that a certain point in our life has been reached, and there are now

higher levels to achieve. In mysticism, the number nine represents the triple merging of mind, body and spirit. It is a Hebrew symbol of truth and a Christian symbol of order within order. Nine represents success over our challenges, and signifies completion and may represent personal wholeness.

The astrological influence of the Hermit is the zodiacal sign of Virgo, which relates to the search for an individual identity that sets us apart from others, and to become a person in our own right through our uniqueness. This can be attained through the application of Virgo's own qualities of sensibility, intelligence, practicality, and completion of tasks to the best of our ability. Virgo focuses on our power to organise and utilise the resources in our immediate environment to achieve perfection through learning, studying, skill and experience, whether physical or spiritual. It brings opportunities for gain through a sound sense of perspective, the right use of opportunities for service, through an improved knowledge of the techniques involved in our day to day work, the helpful cooperation of those who work with us, and through promotion to a position of authority.

### **Interpretation**

When the Hermit appears in a spread, it can mean that you have gone through a difficult time and you do not know what to do to solve it. Perhaps you have a serious decision to make and need solitude and isolation to think about your current situation then make plans. You need to focus on the problems around you and wait rather than act. Peace and quiet is important to you now and will give you time to picture your ideas and plans, and to discover your next course of action. Open your heart and mind and be patient, and try to recognise the value of slowing down and taking stock of your life. Perhaps your work has become dull and boring or even difficult and you need a change of job, or maybe you are feeling lonely and on your own and need someone to share your life with.

We all benefit from being on our own from time to time, therefore you need to look at things as they are with a clear mind while you are in this position, and trust the wisdom of your own inner guidance through contemplation, reflection and even meditation. Listen to your inner voice and follow your own path or spiritual journey, and do not let other people deter you from your own direction.

Someone or something may appear that will have an influence on your life and bring change. If it is a person, it will be someone of either sex, who will guide you to new possibilities, growth and heightened awareness. This is someone with experience and compassion and will give you good advice, so listen to what they have to say. If it is not a person, then it could be something you see, such as an advertisement for some job you have always fancied doing that takes you in a different direction, or it maybe even a pet of some kind to keep you company. There are always new things to learn, and it could be a good time to seriously study a new subject.

You will soon become aware of what you want to do or what to accomplish, the light is at the end of the tunnel and you will overcome your obstacles and eventually reach your goal.

### **Negative**

There may be delayed progress due to neglecting to take proper advantage of promising opportunities, through the obstructing influence of unfortunate circumstances, or through the constant striving for the unattainable.

Difficulties with trying to adjust to your life may be even further tested and you may feel that you want to give up your position or go into hiding. There may be difficulties as a result of the lack of cooperation of work colleagues, or setbacks in your own personal work. Perhaps you are ignoring good sound advice that is given to you, and struggling on rather than accepting the help or support that is on offer. Maybe your heart and mind is closed and you are detaching yourself from those close to you. It could be that you have lost your

faith and you need to examine your life and preoccupations. Perhaps you have a fear of change and lack the confidence to cope with it. At worst, it may be that you are bereaved, feeling lost and lonely, and finding it hard to adjust to a different life alone.

### **People**

Those who are thoughtful about the direction they need to take in their life. Those who are able to give good advice. Those who have acquired wisdom or some specific knowledge. Those who live a solitary or isolated life. Those in the commercial world whose occupations demand technical skill. Those trying to reach perfection.

# The Wheel of Fortune



**Astrological Influence:** Jupiter

**Key words and phrases:** Good luck; advancement; opportunity; important developments; improvements; rapid change; fate; destiny; progress; new doors open; the ups-and-downs of fortune; a fortunate turn of events; a lucky break; the end of one phase and the start of a new one; improving circumstances; gambling; games of chance; lady luck; a new vehicle or new wheels; karma; everything changes.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Wheel of Fortune in the Waite deck depicts a sphinx sitting on top of the wheel with four other figures, an angel, a lion, a bull and an eagle, surrounding it. On the wheel are the letters T, O, R, and A, and the Hebrew letters ה, ד, ה, and י interspersed between them. There are also glyphs or symbols on four of the spokes within the wheel, and from left to right and on the top three spokes, are the alchemical symbols for salt, mercury and sulphur, and on the bottom spoke is the astrological symbol for Aquarius. The figure coming up from the bottom of the right-hand side of the wheel is Anubis the Egyptian god, and going down on the left-hand side is a snake.

The **wheel** represents the course of our lives from birth to death, the changes of life and the unfolding of our destiny. It is associated with chance and fortune, whether lucky or not, either way it is a turning point in our lives. The **wheel** is associated with Fortuna, the Roman goddess of fate.

She represents luck or ill fortune with the turn of her wheel, which either brings happiness and success or ruin and misery. Fate is morally blind therefore she is often depicted as being blindfolded. Her wheel teaches us

that what goes up must come down, and vice versa. Success and failure follow each other just as life and death does.

The **sphinx** controls the wheel and knows the secret of time, and represents the need for a balance to be contained in its constant motion. It is a symbol of vigilance, power, wisdom, dignity and protection.

The **angel** symbolises guidance, advice and help, and suggests that a higher power is available to us, and help will come if we need it. It also represents our desire to connect with the spiritual side of our nature. **Angels** bring loving guidance, protection and divine messages to us.

The **lion** signifies dignity, strength and courage, and also represents our ego and the feelings associated with it. It is a symbol of success, victory and leadership, and suggests that our inner power and authority is in tune, and great power is attainable if we allow ourselves to tap into it.

The **bull** symbolises sexual passion, creative power, masculinity and assertiveness, but also has a negative side, such as destructiveness, fear or anger. It suggests to stop fantasising and take a good honest look at ourselves and reality, and build on our lives by using our stronger qualities.

The **eagle** is a clear and universal symbol of power, speed and perception. With the Christians it symbolises the absolute and all-knowing power of God. Along with the **eagle's** strength and clear vision, it also symbolises freedom, authority and leadership. It signifies that we are now able to see where we are going with our life and not allowing ourselves to be hampered by unimportant elements, our willpower and perception is strong and we are gaining in confidence. The **eagle** can also represent a connection with our spiritual side, and is a reminder to broaden our horizons.



Matthew, Mark, Luke and John are known as the four Evangelists and wrote the first four books of the New Testament. The visions of the Old Testament prophets Daniel and Ezekiel, and the apocalyptic visions in the Book of Revelation, associate Matthew with an angel, Mark with a lion, Luke with an ox, and John with an eagle. In the zodiacal signs, the Angel represents Aquarius, the lion represents Leo, the bull represents Taurus, and the eagle represents Scorpio. These signs also relate to the cycles of nature, especially the seasons, where we start by sowing the seeds, then comes fruition, next is the harvest, and then the period to repair and retire until the beginning of the next season when we start the cycle all over again. During these four seasons and zodiacal signs there are four pagan festivals, Imbolc or Candlemas on the 2<sup>nd</sup> February, Beltane or May Day on the 1<sup>st</sup> May, Lughnasad or Lammas on the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> August, and Halloween on the 31<sup>st</sup> October and 1<sup>st</sup> November. The four elements and the four psychological functions are also connected, thus, the Angel = Air = Intellect and Mental Aptitude; the Lion = Fire = Intuition; the Bull = Earth = Feelings and Physical Senses; the Scorpio Eagle = Water = Emotion. They are also linked with the four points of the compass, the four directions of the four elements, and the Archangels, Raphael, Michael, Gabriel and Uriel.

The Wheel has the letters **TORA** written on it. The first five books of the Hebrew bible are known as the Pentateuch, or Torah, which is believed to contain all of God's teachings, and was given to Moses on Mount Sanai. The Torah is believed to be the medium through which to gain access to the higher spiritual domain. It is one of the most sacred symbols of Judaism. In between each letter of **TORA** are the Hebrew letters ך, ה, ך, ה, which are known as the tetragrammaton that comprises the four letters Y, H, W, H, and spells the name of God in Hebrew. When the vowels are added, the letters spell the name of Yahweh, which Christians translate as Jehovah. According to tradition God's name was revealed to Moses, but was so sacred that it could never be spoken aloud.

**Salt** can be used as a symbol of the earth and also for its life-preserving qualities. It is vital to life and relates to the refined qualities we bring to our lives and the things we do to enrich our lifestyle.

**Mercury** and **sulphur** relate to the beginning of the practice of alchemy. Alchemy is a philosophy and practice that extends across both science and mysticism, and influenced modern chemistry and psychology. It presumes that we are in a state of chaos and discord since we lost our connection with “Eden,” or our original condition of contentment. Alchemists see direct relationships between matter and spirit and between organic and inorganic nature. The aim of alchemy is to transform a basic substance into a higher substance, or transforming the most basic of human awareness and experience into deep insight. The main goal is to unite opposites for example male and female, to achieve perfect harmony. This state of perfect harmony is symbolised by uniting the correct mix of **sulphur** (masculine) to **mercury** (feminine) in the fire of love. In other words, bringing together the masculine and feminine aspects of our nature in order to become whole, as we were before humanity fell into the world of opposites. The end result of the alchemist’s dedication became known as the “philosophers stone.” They believed that **sulphur** and **mercury** were the principal materials of all metals.

**Aquarius** focuses on our ability to express our individuality and directs the projection of our creative abilities upon the world. The glyph or symbol represents water and communication and is linked with humanitarian ideals, freedom, uniqueness and original thinking.

**Anubis** was the Egyptian jackal-headed god of embalming. It is said that he weighed the hearts of the dead in the Hall of Judgement.

The **snake** symbolises healing, rejuvenation and new life, and embodies the cycle of death and resurrection through its ability to shed its own skin and

grow another one. It can also indicate wisdom, temptation, cunning and betrayal.

On the whole, the Wheel of Fortune signifies the completion of one cycle and the beginning of another. It is the eternal motion of the universe and the flow and continuous change of human life. Perpetual motion constantly reminds us that nothing stays the same forever, and that we do not have total control of the external factors of our lives. It symbolises that we are all subjected to the laws of nature as we move through life, and we are not certain whether these changes are going to be positive or negative. It suggests that some of life's events are beyond our control and can disrupt the patterns of our lives. This card symbolises the forces of fate and destiny. Unexpected changes do happen, and because they come without warning it feels like fate has taken a hand in it and we have no control. We can't control the way the wheel turns, but we can control the way we respond to it. However, being human we usually blame fate rather than taking responsibility for our lives. If we learn to understand how we sometimes manage to get ourselves into certain situations and circumstances, we would be less likely to feel at the mercy of fate and more able to direct the course of our own lives. Whatever life brings us we all have choices.

The Wheel of Fortune is associated with the number ten, which refers to a transition point from one cycle to another. It is a number of completion and final ending, and the start of a new journey. It signifies a new beginning, transformation and the reinforcing of matters before a new cycle can begin. Number ten suggests things are changing and shifting in our lives, and represents the involvement of fate, destiny and karma. Ten can be reduced to the number one ( $1 + 0 = 1$ ), which signifies the beginning of something and relates to the Self. One ascribes to the conscious, rational and reasoning mind.

The astrological influence of the Wheel of Fortune is the planet Jupiter, the Luck Bringer. It is the planet of potential, happiness, enthusiasm, wellbeing, and our optimistic and ecstatic relationship with the outer world. It can govern how we express our joy in life and how we relate to and enjoy the material world. It is the planet that influences our lifestyle. It stimulates growth, increase and expansion on all levels, and that ability to increase possessions, social contacts and wisdom. Jupiter brings opportunities as a result of sound judgement and well-controlled actions, or through the friendly and helpful interest of those in influential positions, or the wise advice of older friends. It also brings increasing good fortune (often as a result of our own extensive and lively attitude), gain in popularity and respect, broadening our education through travel (especially abroad to foreign countries), through study, or through circulating ideas (especially through publishing). Jupiter may also denote events that bring an increase of happy emotional experiences, such as an engagement, marriage, the birth of children or the marriage of our children, gain through legal action, redecoration or refurbishing of the home.

### **Interpretation**

When the Wheel of Fortune appears in a spread it suggests that you have reached the end of one cycle in your life and a new phase is beginning. This new chapter is really up to you whether the outcome is going to be positive or negative. These rapid changes will offer you opportunities to improve your life. The laws of destiny favour you at this time, and the key to this is adaptability as good fortune and opportunity is returning to your life. It may feel either exciting or unnerving but the choices and action you take now will be beneficial for the future, and if things are already going well it will continue. You are approaching a period in your life where fate has taken a hand in your affairs and you may feel as if you have no control over it. It might be difficult to live through but you will find yourself with new opportunities and a change of fortune, as fate will redirect your path. This could be related to your relationships at work and at home, it can be disruptive, however, a new romance could come into your life, a relationship you are already in will

probably get better, and your finances could improve. Unexpected changes and fortune are going to happen, and this card is good for money speculation, whether through investments or enterprise.

However, the future is never fixed so you should accept a decline. With the Wheel of Fortune it is either a situation that is evolving for the better or becoming complicated, and if it is the latter it could be as a result of your past actions. In this situation this card is suggesting that you let go of the past and move forward, but usually they are good changes with the Wheel, and the surrounding cards will clarify this and guide you in the right direction. It could be that you have an important decision to make, and it is suggesting that you must be aware of how much of your responsibility was involved in the circumstances you are faced with now. Be careful when you are making plans because they might have to be altered or postponed, so it may be wise to let things run their natural course until the time is right for you to take action or intervene. Things are definitely going to change around you, but maybe not in the way you expected.

The Wheel of Fortune also depicts changes around a vehicle such as a new car, but it can also be a warning that you need to put your car in good working order. This card is often a stroke of good luck and unexpected good fortune, so things will eventually work out but as yet you probably don't know how. As I have mentioned before, the position of the other cards will provide an indication of the areas and the sort of success that you can expect.

### **Negative**

It threatens decreased respect as a result of faulty judgement, carelessness, or the unreliable advice of others. There could be financial losses due to extravagance or over-confidence. Perhaps there is trouble through legal, religious, educational or publishing affairs. Maybe failure of projects either through a lack of wisdom or the inability to attract the support of influential people. This is a bad time to initiate any fresh projects, or gamble on things

going in your favour. Unexpected delays will appear out of nowhere. Take comfort in the fact that change is usually positive in the end. This could imply that things are going to go against you for a while, or that other people and outside circumstances are ruling your life for the time being. Just battle through because it may all change and be positive in the end.

### **People**

Those who speculate with money. Those who take a gamble. Those who are lucky in life. Those who are making changes to their lives or home. Those who prosper as a result of sound judgement and well controlled actions.

# 11 Justice



**Astrological Influence:** Libra

**Key words and phrases:** Legal affairs, equilibrium; harmony; restoration of balance; fairness; arbitration; neutrality; impartiality; maintaining a proper balance; order restored; prudent money management; strategy; accountability; integrity; examination of conscience; carefully considered choices; clear vision; a sense of proportion; the power of intellect; rationality; a just outcome; the right decision; clear-cut perspective;

intervention of the law; decisions needed to maintain justice, law and order; a trial; a court case; dealings with the law; litigation; contracts; binding agreements; settlements; an apology; a marriage contract; a divorce agreement; powers that enforce justice; justice will prevail.

## **Symbolic Meaning**

In the Waite deck the Justice card depicts a female figure sitting on a throne between two pillars. She wears a crown with an inlaid square jewel, a green cape and a red robe, but does not wear a blindfold as she is depicted in today's courts of law and justice. She holds the scales of justice in her left hand and in her right hand holds an upright sword.

The **throne** symbolises a seat of power and authority in both the worldly and spiritual realms. It is acknowledging our right to take authority, and can represent our ability to belong to groups, or to society.

The **two pillars** are associated with balance and equality, and are symbols of worldly and spiritual authority, aspiration and power. **Two pillars** appear outside Masonic temples, representing force and form.

The **crown** symbolises status, power and recognition. It represents acknowledgement and praise for our accomplishments, and may suggest that we are about to receive an honour of some kind. The **crown** also signifies opportunities that will broaden our knowledge and awareness.

**Jewels** are a symbol of purity, refinement and superiority. They indicate that we value what is precious in our lives, and signify good fortune. In Eastern traditions they embody spiritual knowledge. The **square** shape of the **jewels** symbolises Earth, material existence and the created universe. The **square** suggests structure, order and stability, but also limitations. The related cube symbolises stability, truth, wisdom and perfection.

The **cape** and the **robe** are originally symbols of sovereignty, but today the **robes** decorated with white ermine symbolise moral purity and justice, and is used on the robes of state, judicial, ecclesiastical and academic dignitaries. They can also signify physical, emotional or spiritual protection.

The **green** colour of the **cape** signifies new beginnings and growth. **Green** is the colour of equilibrium and compatibility, and indicates personal growth and some new development in our personality. It also suggests that we are opening up to new methods of self-expression.

The **red** colour of the **robe** is associated with life, warmth, love and fertility, but also danger, anger and aggression. **Red** signifies that we may be repressing our passionate feelings, or indicates our drive for achievement and success.

The **scales** are a common representation of justice, truth, balance and prudence, and the weighing up of decisions and actions. In Egyptian myth, **scales** were used to weigh the souls of the dead. They signify a need for balance and self-control.



The **sword** is an important and ancient symbol of authority, justice, intellect and light. It can be used constructively or destructively, which means that if we are to accept our sense of authority and power, then we have to accept the responsibility that comes with it. A **sword** signifies the ability to cut to the heart of the matter, and can also indicate the desire to cut certain elements out of our lives that no longer benefit our growth, especially those of the past.

Justice indicates that we use our mental ability to show good insight and make unbiased evaluations. This card demands balance, adjustment and total impartiality, and suggests spiritual, moral or legal justice.

In Egyptian mythology the goddess Maat was said to have weighed the souls of the dead against her Feather of Truth. Her name means truth and justice, and other cultures saw her as the embodiment of Fate who presided over the laws of karma, and allotted suitable reward or punishment.

On the whole, Justice is based on fairness and reason, even though it may seem to us more of an ideal these days than a reality, but we still have to endeavour to uphold its principle. The Justice card asks if we are able to be honest and truthful with ourselves and capable of taking the responsibility for the situations and circumstances we find ourselves in. It is advising us not to be influenced by emotion or bias and to weigh our decisions carefully before coming to a conclusion.

The number of the Justice card is eleven, which reduces to the number two ( $1 + 1 = 2$ ), meaning it has strong links with the High Priestess. It is a period of gestation, waiting and anticipation for future success. Two represents a drive for harmony and balance, and it is passive, intuitive, receptive and emotional.

This card is also associated with the astrological sign of Libra, which signifies the harmony and balance, especially of our mental faculties, and the fair distribution of justice, rights, duties and possessions for all. Libra focuses on

all those things, which help us to complete our experience, and smooth out our relationship to the world, partners in private and business life, and those we thought would be partners but for some reason have become our adversaries. Libra brings opportunities for exercising personal initiative and enterprise, either in matters of personal expression or making adjustments to our partners needs, such as marriage, amicable business cooperation, bringing quarrels to a peaceful end, or engaging in political activities.

### **Interpretation**

When Justice is in a spread it indicates that in your business and home life justice will win over any problems. If you are involved in any legal action, perhaps concerning money or property it will be resolved in your favour, and if you have a difficult decision to make just weigh it up carefully before reaching a conclusion. Be decisive and fight for what you believe in, and don't settle for second best and feel that you have no right to fair treatment. Maintain the courage of your convictions and your integrity, then justice will be done and the outcome will be a fair one.

A choice or a decision may be needed to questions concerning a legal problem, a court case, legal documents, negotiations, or just a matter of principle. Whatever the situation, whether it has been forced upon you by yourself or others, you need to find a balance. The only way to attain this balance is through being honest and disciplined, and by taking responsibility for your situation, which will put you in a strong position. Expect a good outcome if you have done the necessary preparation, and if you deserve it. Legal, moral or official matters will turn out well and you will receive what is due to you. Someone might assist you in bringing a fair outcome to a situation, such as a lawyer, arbitrator or judge. Let go of matters that can't be resolved, and don't make unreasonable demands or become greedy in the settling of an issue or you might not get what you had hoped for.

Justice can also indicate that you might work in this type of career, or that you have the type of mind that is very good at logical negotiation. In personal relationships a fair arrangement may be necessary, honesty and consideration is called for, and you might need to assess whether you are being fair with your partner both emotionally and sexually. Try to achieve a balance in all areas of your life, and problems will be resolved one by one. All ends well but you might have some difficulties to contend with.

### **Negative**

It threatens danger of lawsuits, open breaches and marriage troubles. Act cautiously and avoid making any hasty decisions, question the values and beliefs that you hold. Justice may not be the outcome, and a legal battle could go against you. It is not a good time to trust or confide in others, because they may use any information you have given them against you. If you are getting divorced, there may be an unfair judgement against you in court. If you are buying a house, be prepared for complicated negotiations. You may separate from your partner. You may not get the job or promotion you have been waiting for. The Justice card represents legal complications, bigotry, bias and excessive severity. If you have been dishonest or underhanded it may result in repercussions.

### **People**

Those who fight against injustice, such as arbitrators, lawyers, judges, barristers, witnesses, legal authorities and the court. Those who make a decision. Those who win a legal battle. Those who are in highly individual work of an active nature, and have the scope for self-assertion and pioneering. Those who have a desire to achieve harmony and balance in relationships.

## 12 The Hanged Man



**Astrological Influence:** Neptune

**Key words and phrases:** Reversal; slowed action; limbo; taking your time; a testing period; a lesson to be learned; cosmic consciousness; enlightenment; a unique viewpoint; a new angle; spiritual attunement; selfishness; sacrifice; commitment; dedication; flexibility; adaptability; daring to be different; breaking with the past; readjustment; voluntary sacrifice to obtain a higher good; inactivity; stagnation; calm; in

slow motion; an apparent standstill; at a crossroads; reflection; serenity; higher wisdom; mysticism; devotion; unexpected domestic or career changes.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

The Hanged Man is usually depicted as a young man whose head is surrounded by a nimbus and suspending upside down by one foot on a T-shaped wooden cross. His left leg is crossed behind his right leg forming a fylfot cross. He is wearing a blue shirt and red tights, and there are leaves sprouting from the crossbar of the cross indicating that it is alive.

A **nimbus** is a bright halo usually associated with saints and deities. It is a symbol of divinity or sanctity, and originally based on the **nimbus** that surrounds the sun.

The **nimbus** or halo is used in Christian art, and is thought to have been first used on pagan sun gods, such as Mithras. They also appear in Buddhist spiritual traditions. Mithras was originally a Persian sun god, and achieved cult status with the Roman army. He was usually depicted slaying a bull, which symbolises victory over our animal nature, and was worshipped in the temples

devoted to the ritual sacrifice of bulls, and his new followers were initiated into the sect by being baptised with the animal's blood.

The **T-cross** is an ancient symbol of the sun god. It is also called the cross of St Anthony, which was named after a hermit in Egypt who apparently chased away demons with a cross of this kind. It forms the basis of the Egyptian ankh cross, which is a symbol of immortality.

A **fylfot** cross takes the shape of a swastika cross, which is an ancient sign found in Sumaria about five thousand years ago. It is usually associated with the sun and power and was one of the symbols of Buddah. It was meant to represent the cyclic regeneration of life, and even stretched to signify the Supreme Being. Unfortunately, the **fylfot** or swastika was adopted by Hitler and used as the sign for the Nazi party in the 1930s, and was reduced to a political emblem of violence and regression.

A **cross** originally symbolised the union of mind, body, spirit and matter. It can represent pain and suffering but leading to transformation or the triumph of mind and spirit over adversity. It may suggest that something in our life has come to an end, or needs to end, or it could signify sacrifice or martyrdom. Therefore, the **cross** signifies that something in our life may need to be sacrificed, maybe in the name of principle, or some bodily or earthly desires may need to be restrained in order to enable us to reach our full potential and stature as a human being.

His **blue** shirt signifies that we may need to get in touch with our animus, or the masculine side of our psyche. It is also a healing colour and suggests relaxation, sleep and tranquillity, and symbolises the sense of connection with our spiritual self. **Blue** is the colour of the Virgin Mary therefore is a symbol of peace and purity. It is also the colour connected with dreamlike states, contemplation, introspection and yearning.

His **red** tights are the colour of vitality, strength, dynamism, life, sensuality and power, but also powerful feelings of danger and anger, or love and affection. **Red** can mean that we may be suppressing passionate feelings, or indicates ardent emotions and a drive to survive and achieve our goals. This colour can also mean that we are reaching deeper into our spiritual side.

The **living wood** on the cross may symbolise the power of growth. It may suggest that we are fulfilling our destiny by listening to the guidance that comes from our subconscious mind, and helps us to grow so that we may become whole.

The **crossbar** represents that we may need to look at the different aspects of our life.

Even though the young man is hanging he has a calm and peaceful expression on his face and seems like he is in a deep trance, therefore not suffering. As a whole the Hanged Man symbolises life in suspension rather than death. It represents a turning point in our psychological development by surrendering to a higher wisdom in order to gain the inner knowledge of our subconscious mind. The concept of this card is to give up something in order to gain something else more important, or to follow a spiritual path. This needs to be done willingly knowing that something will be lost, but also knowing that something of greater value will be gained and will finally improve our conscious mind and our circumstances. As a result of this, the Hanged Man has adopted a new perspective to discover a deeper set of values within him. This card suggests that we need to go beyond our present mind-set to expand our conscious mind so that we may experience spiritual transformation and knowledge.

Odin, the leader of the Norse gods, hung himself like this from the World Tree Yggdrasil for nine days and nights, while pierced with a spear. He hung there as a sacrifice and at the end of this time bent down and lifted up the magical

runes that he discovered, which brought secret knowledge to humankind. This experience of Odin's was similar to the visionary experiences of death and resurrection endured by shamans to achieve prophecy. Yogis believe they can activate the brain's nerve centres and improve their mental awareness by standing on their heads in the pose known as the Sirsasna.

The Hanged Man is the number twelve, and in Christian symbolism it is the number of universal fulfilment, and is the number of Christ's disciples and the Tribes of Israel. There are twelve gates to the City of Jerusalem, and there was twelve fruits on the "Tree of Life." Twelve also relates to the zodiac and the twelve months of the year, and represents a complete cycle.

Twelve also reduces to three ( $1 + 2 = 3$ ), which expresses all aspects of creation, such as birth, life and death; past, present and future; and mind, body and soul. In Pythagorean theory, three represents perfect harmony, the union of unity (one) and diversity (two). The number three can signify the introduction into our lives of another element that we may have to contend with, such as the birth of a child, which we may find daunting at first, but will lead to personal fulfilment and completeness. Three's can also indicate a period of suspended activity before any future success can be achieved.

The astrological influence of The Hanged Man is the planet Neptune, the planet of dreams, artistic inspiration, mysticism and sacrifice. Neptune rules inspiration, the superior yearnings of the mind, the power of perception manifested through the conscious or subconscious and the co-ordination and control of the five senses. Neptune's particular qualities reveal that there is, inside each of us, an acute awareness of the people and things around us, which we can exploit in order to effect an inner change while all around us is changing and evolving, too. Neptune stimulates selfless and charitable instincts, artistic feelings, an idealistic and visionary nature, our ability to adjust to life as a whole, and to find our proper position in the world. This planet indicates all kinds of strange experiences that add to extend our

horizons. Our psychic and intuitive abilities may bring us into contact with some spiritual or mystical experience which has a profound effect as to understanding our own part in the Divine Plan, and may denote making sacrifices for some ideal. Neptune also influences our ability to speculate, raise values and indulge in financial trickery.

The Hanged Man suggests that we surrender outworn concepts and fear in order to gain knowledge. This card can also signify a state of limbo between different events or paths in which we have difficulty with deciding as to the direction we should take in our lives.

### **Interpretation**

The Hanged Man often appears in a spread when you are in a rut. It may indicate that you are about to start or soon begin a journey of spiritual growth, and walk away from your materialistic and worldly concerns. There may be something that needs to be given up, such as a relationship or job, in order to move on and gain something else. Maybe you have been offered a job that is more satisfying but the salary is lower than you have been earning. This sacrifice needs to be voluntarily while knowing that something will be lost, but you also know that something will be gained to improve your circumstances.

Perhaps this sacrifice has been forced upon you and you have lost someone or something special, and your meaning of life is no longer there. You feel like you are in limbo and it seems like time has frozen, unable to move forward or back and unable to make changes because your hands are tied. The situation you are in needs to be looked at from a different angle in order to gain a new perspective. Have faith that things will turn out for the better, even though it will hurt knowing that something has gone from your life.

You may be in a situation where you have to wait, but waiting for something to happen will influence everything around you. Be patient and reflect on your position until you see it is the right time for you to make the necessary



improvements to your situation, and eventually you will come out of this difficult period. The Hanged Man is also about acceptance and your ability to remain open to new ideas. Accept that time is suspended and waiting is inevitable just now, and reflect on what is happening at this moment in time. It is not the right time to make any important decisions, and the time spent in contemplation, rest and reflection will be beneficial. The way you deal with it now will bring success in the future, just think of ways to make compromises to avoid failure. Perhaps you need to reassess your attitudes and priorities.

Give up what is holding you back even if it involves a sacrifice or a loss. You may experience spiritual transformation as your conscious mind expands, which in turn may awaken your intuitive powers. Do not sacrifice yourself for any unworthy causes or give too many chances to unreliable people. Concentrate on what is important to you now. It might also be a good for you to spend some time socially with others.

### **Negative**

This card threatens bitter disappointment and frustration arising from a futile effort to attain perfection, or to grasp the intangible. Your plans may fail through the lack of complete integrity, practical ability, refusal to face up to your responsibilities, or a distorted viewpoint, which gives a false perspective. Events may run away with you unless you stop and think. Do not squander your energies on useless projects. Perhaps you are indulging in drink or drugs to escape from the negative situation you are in at the moment, and you feel powerless to change or improve your situation or circumstances. You may fail to grasp an opportunity because you will not let go of what is holding you back. Maybe you are playing the martyr because you are enjoying the sympathy and attention you are getting. Stop what you are doing and consider your actions, self-pitying will get you nowhere.

**People**

Those who are spiritual. Those who are in a rut. Those who take time out to meditate. Those who are waiting for something to happen. Those who take a different viewpoint. Those who have fulfilled a long-cherished desire. Those who have made a sacrifice in order to move on in life.

# 13 Death



**Astrological Influence:** Scorpio

**Key words and phrases:** Necessary and profound change; liberation; the dawning of a new era; leaving the past behind; the end of a cycle and the start of a new one; entering a new way of life; death of the old self; empowerment; rebirth; renewal; sudden inevitable change; transition; cleansing; purging; revitalisation; stripping away the worthless matter; liberation through purgation; grieving the loss of a

former lifestyle; inevitable endings; change of status; marriage; divorce; starting or leaving a job; leaving home; relocation; the end of a relationship; loss of virginity; spiritual regeneration; the shedding of outmoded attitudes; reincarnation.

## **Symbolic Meaning**

To most people the Death card is probably the most frightening card in the deck, and they fear it assuming that it literally means physical death. In the Waite deck the mysterious horseman is a skeleton who rides a white horse and moves very slowly, and does not seem to be carrying a weapon. He wears a suit of armour and holds a black banner emblazoned with a white rose. A slain king lies on the ground, and a child and a maiden fall to their knees in front of the dark figure. The maiden holds her head to one side in a submissive gesture while the child tries to offer this frightening being a bouquet of flowers. A bishop with clasped hands stands at her side awaiting his fate, as the sun rises between two pillars on the horizon.

The **skeleton** is not a symbol of death, but a symbol of transformation and the death of old ways and situations. It suggests that part of us has died and we need to be aware and look at the framework we have built our lives upon.

Maybe we have an idea or concept that needs breaking down to the “bare bones.”

Usually Death is depicted riding a black horse, but in this card he is on a **white horse**, which is a symbol of light, life, spiritual illumination and purity of will. It describes the state of our spiritual awareness and suggests that the **white horse** is strong enough to break down the doors of the obstacles and burdens that are suppressing certain aspects of our personality, or collective Shadow.

The **armour** is a symbol of protection and courage, and signifies that there may be a need to protect ourselves from something we feel is intimidating and making us feel anxious.

A **black banner** represents sadness and grief. It suggests a need to consolidate our thoughts and actions, and perhaps agree on a particular course of action.

**Black** signifies materialisation, pessimism and judgement. To most of us, the colour **black** is associated with death, mourning, gloom, depression, secrecy, conformity and obscurity, therefore it means that some part of us is being repressed, and possibly, because of neglect we have let these associations take control of our lives.

It was said that the first **rose** was created by Chloris, the Greek goddess of flowers, from the body of a beautiful nymph. According to the mystic Sufi sect of Islam, the **rose** is associated with pleasure but also linked with pain because of its thorns. A **white rose** is associated with purity and spirituality, and is one of the symbols of the Virgin Mary. **Roses** represent love, beauty and perfection, and also suggest virginity and fertility. However, they can signify that we may be concerned that the affection we are receiving may not be genuine. A **thorny rose** symbolises betrayal, and **multiple layered petals**

can symbolise the opening up of the spiritual and emotional aspects of ourselves.

A **child** signifies that we may be subconsciously aware of some difficulty with our **child**, and our subconscious is trying to bring this to our attention. It can also mean that we have some sort of guilt feeling about the mistakes we made as a parent, and are now trying to make amends. It could be that we are trying to get in touch with the **child** within us to recapture the freedom we once had, or we are feeling vulnerable or insecure. A **child** may also represent a new beginning, a new development in our attitude to life, a new set of values, a new balance or understanding of previously conflicting forces.

**Flowers** signify harmony, love and friendship. Over 100,000 years ago the Neanderthals made flower offerings to their dead. **Flowers** are a symbol of a wide range of experiences, but with this card they signify that we need to make a transition from the situation we are in now.

The **maiden** signifies that we may be going through changes that make us feel uncertain, insecure and lack confidence, and expecting criticism, ridicule or even fear of not being taken seriously. The **maiden** suggests that we need to get in touch with our inner self to find the answers or guidance we need to push us forward, and she is making us aware of how we feel about the changes, and what our fears are. She can also signify a desire to escape from responsibility.

The **bishop** can represent stern authority and moral judgement. He signifies moral and correct behaviour or a certain type of authority that we may find daunting. A **bishop** can also signify a spiritual guide, a mentor, or our inner self that is focused on the aspects of our life that we need to pay attention to.

The **sun** symbolises the awakening of our spiritual awareness, and signifies the creative use of our intellect. It is linked with creative energy, health and

vitality, and influences our physical and psychological development. The **sun** can also be associated with an authority figure, such as a father, who may be quietly judging us, or telling us what we should do or what we should not do.

**Pillars** are symbols of earthly and spiritual power and aspiration. They suggest that we are able to create stability and support, and can stand firm through difficulty.

There are many images of death in our society, such as skeletons, graveyards, vaults, crows, hell, the Grim Reaper, and so on, and many of us enjoy being frightened by these images. Actually this card has nothing to do with physical death and means that our life may be repressed in some way, but transformation will follow. As a whole, the Death card is a symbol of great transformation. It signifies that there are some major changes coming into our lives, and perhaps it is necessary to rid ourselves of old outdated ways that do not serve our growth any more, and start to move into the unknown. It may indicate a challenge that needs to be confronted, or an adjustment to the way we approach life.

Death is suggesting that we need to leave our old self behind, stop carrying the burdens of the past upon our shoulders, and open up to what is now being offered. It is asking us to get rid of our old habits, attachments, values, ambitions and goals, and become more in tune with our real selves. This card symbolises that something has run its course and a new order is about to begin. It signifies that we have reached the end of one phase and starting on another. Beginnings and endings are a part of life, and how we react to them will depend on how prepared we are to let go of the past and welcome future opportunities. In most cases it relates to the death or the passing of a difficult phase, caused through circumstances like divorce, separation or redundancy. Sometimes difficulties are brought about because of bereavement, and as we come to terms with this, a period of mourning is necessary. If we hang on to a situation that is of no use to us it will hinder our growth and prevent us from

moving on. Rebirth always follows an ending, which means that positive transformations are on the way.

In Hindu mythology it is believed that in the future, when the tenth supreme god Kalki reigns, he will appear on a white winged horse and bring about the final destruction of the world and the beginning of a new golden age.

The Death card is the number thirteen, which many people believe is unlucky and symbolises evil and misfortune. Perhaps this superstition derives from the thirteen people at the Last Supper, Christ and his twelve disciples, or because it is the number of witches in a coven and the number of lunar months in a year. Actually number thirteen suggests that we need a period of adjustment. However, this number can also be reduced to the number four ( $1 + 3 = 4$ ), which is the number of solidity, stability, security, organisation, power, intellect, justice and supremacy, and influences us to realise our goals, giving us an added assurance. The number four is suggesting that we need to find a balance between our physical and spiritual faculties in order to become whole and complete within ourselves.

The astrological influence with the Death card is the zodiacal sign of Scorpio. It is an emotional and intuitive sign and is in the house of sex, death, birth and transformation. Scorpio is also associated with regeneration, which implies some sort of death and destruction in order to renew and grow. Anyone born in this sign can also be very secretive and will intently search for the truth if they have reason to do so. Scorpio focuses on our ability to develop and reinforce our resources as a result of the influence the world as a whole has on us. It also focuses on the resources of other people and the role they are likely to play in our lives, and on our power to transform our resources through regeneration.

## **Interpretation**

When the Death card appears in a spread it signifies that a major change is about to take place. Something is coming to an end that may turn out to be beneficial and favourable for you, but this ending is necessary and inevitable. This card appears when you are facing a significant turn of events such as, a job change, the loss of a job, marriage, the end of a relationship, loss of a friendship, parenthood, leaving home, or a complete change to your way of life. However, a new life is promised once you are rid of the old one, because a complete transformation is being offered to you. In order to move forward you have to let go of the past and put it behind you, and you might have to get rid of any attitudes or situations that you have outgrown, in order to take advantage of the new opportunities that are coming up. You may find it difficult to come to terms with but do not despair, because you could find yourself in new relationships, in new surroundings and facing new challenges.

Whatever the change, you need to bravely accept that you can no longer hold on to the past. You must have a new outlook on life and look forward to fresh horizons. It is the end of an era and a new beginning, and a turning point in your life or situation in which you will emerge stronger. Each phase serves its purpose and then we move on to the next. It could be you that ends a situation or relationship that is making you miserable or seems to be going nowhere, or you may feel that you have to abandon a relationship because you feel trapped by your partner's jealousy or possessiveness.

The Death card is about the necessary and inevitable endings to make new beginnings possible. If you think of it in terms of life itself it is renewal and rebirth, and can also mean the death of someone you know. Obviously this can be very upsetting, however remember it rarely means physical death, just the death of something that is no longer of use to you.



**Negative**

There may be a danger of financial losses, or illness through neglecting or foolishly exhausting your physical resources. Lethargy and inertia may be having a harmful influence on you. You probably feel that life is very boring, and you cannot be bothered to do anything about it. Don't cling on to a partner or a situation if it is not working out. You may lack motivation at this time but sooner or later you will begin a new cycle. The Death card is not much different when reversed.

**People**

Those who are undergoing major changes in life. Those who can help to change your life. Those making a fresh start. Those who cling on to the past because they don't like change or are frightened to go forward. Those who improve their financial position to enable them to add to their possessions. Those building an enterprise. Those increasing their mental ability by analysing and exploring the physical laws of the world. Those increasing their spiritual ability. Those achieving regeneration. Those in study and research that requires intense application.

# 14 Temperance



**Astrological Influence:** Sagittarius

**Key words and phrases:** Modulation; moderation; prudence; tolerance; a middle course; a balanced viewpoint; a sense of proper timing; fairness; absence of prejudice. Not taking an extreme position; compromise; descent of spirit into matter; discretion; intermingling; fruitful combination; the right mixture; artistic creation; compatibility; calm capability; merging of diverse forces; equilibrium; composure; tranquillity;

peace; morality; harmonious balance; coordination; patience; forgiveness; accommodation; adaptation; wise management; frugality; mercy; a balanced expression of sexuality; reasonableness; compassion; friendship; cooperation; reconciliation; gentleness; purification or cleansing of the soul; a mixed marriage; interracial harmony; everything in moderation.

## **Symbolic Meaning**

The most common image of Temperance is a winged angel with a halo around his head, the sign of the sun upon his forehead and the square and the triangle of the septenary on his chest. The angel is standing astride a river or stream and pouring water from one chalice to another. There is a path to the left of him that leads to a range of mountains on the horizon, and above this mountain range is a great light forming the shape of a crown.

**Angels** are always messengers, protectors and guardians. They are universal, being a part of all religions. **Angels** operate as emissaries between God and man, and there are many references to them in all holy scriptures, including Christianity, Judaism, and Islamic doctrine.

They symbolise guidance, advice or help, and suggest that a higher force is available to us and help will be provided if we need it. **Angels** represent the desire to connect with our spiritual side, and are a symbol of something in our subconscious psyche that can remove obstacles and push our progress towards fulfilment and happiness.

A **halo** is a symbol of divinity or sanctity, and is often depicted as a bright nimbus around the head of a saint or deity, which is based on the nimbus that surrounds the sun. It signifies our inner wisdom, power and our true and whole self. The **halo** is used in Christian art and also appears in Buddhist spiritual traditions.

The **sign of the sun** is an ancient ideogram for the sun and is used around the world on such subjects as astronomy and astrology. It is associated with the principle of authority, the father being the first example, and is linked with creative energy, health and vitality, influencing both physical and psychological development, and striving for psychic integration or enlightenment. The **sign of the sun** signifies the awakening of our spiritual awareness and the creative use of our intellect. It suggests that there may be a new life or a new phase in our personal development, and is a sign of future good health, good fortune, and sound friendships and relationships.

The **square** symbolises the earth element, or land and ground, and signifies the manifestation of the spirit into the physical. It is associated with the number four and represents structure, order, stability, solidity, organisation, power, intellect, justice and supremacy.

The **triangle** is associated with aspirations, goals, new possibilities and spiritual pursuit. It is also associated with the number three, which is a symbol of power, success, prosperity and safety.

Both of these shapes put together become a **septenary** shape, a figure with seven facets, and associated with the number seven, which is a sacred, mystical and magical number, and is a symbol of completeness, wholeness and perfection.

The **river** or **stream** symbolises healing or reinvigoration and a relaxed free flow of energy.

**Water** often represents the source of life. We cannot live without **water**, and we use it every day. We drink it, cook with it, wash ourselves, our clothes, and our pots and pans with it, swim in it, fish in it, have fun in it, travel on it, and grow plants and produce with the help of it. It is a symbol of fertility, growth, creative potential, new life and healing, and also represents our emotions or psychic energy. As a psychological symbol, **water** is linked with the subconscious, the soul, feelings and the flow of life. It represents cleansing, being able to wash away the things that affect us, such as habits, beliefs and concepts that we may have inherited from family. **Water** can also represent our potential and our ability to create a new life. Pouring the **water** from one chalice to the other symbolises the flow of life and the vital connection between the conscious and the subconscious mind. It reminds us that if it stops flowing our emotions will become spiritless.

The water element is associated with the **chalice** or the **cup**, which symbolises intuition and the emotions, and with healing in such matters as love, sex, relationships and children. **Chalices** or **cups** signify that we are receptive to intuitive information, and represents our feminine side, therefore suggesting that if we are intuitively open to our feminine side, we are then more able to both give and receive help and assistance with love and sensitivity. In Christianity, the **chalice** is a vessel of plenty and immortality.

The **path** indicates how we feel about our own “path in life,” and our hopes, dreams and fears, and the obstacles or challenges we have to overcome. It

may signify the direction we need to take concerning our relationships, career, etc. A **path** can also symbolise our spiritual progress and development.

**Mountains** can be viewed as obstacles that are either frightening or daunting, or exciting and challenging. Therefore may symbolise rising above the common pursuits of our everyday life, or going in search of our true self.

**Mountains** are about the challenges, obstacles and goals in our lives, and the way we approach them.

A **crown** is obviously a symbol of royalty, and brings with it authority, power, wealth, status and responsibility. Therefore it is suggesting that we recognise that we have opportunities that will increase our knowledge and awareness to attain the success we are striving for. **Crowns** can represent victory and dedication to duty, or can imply that we are about to receive an honour of some kind. It can also represent status and recognition. A **crown** could be a signal to our subconscious to remind us to look at the achievements in our lives and acknowledge them as successes to build upon. The great light forming the shape of a **crown** represents that part of the secret of life can be found here.

The whole image reflects the process of mixing and blending due to a desire to unite opposites in order to find the right balance, and create a feeling of harmony. Compromise, cooperation and negotiation are frequently needed, as are the sharing of feelings in difficult relationships. It indicates the need for balanced emotions and the development of happy relationships. If we are to find a physical, mental or emotional balance then our feelings need to be allowed to flow. Conflicts need to be resolved in a calm and peaceful way, and finding a middle path is the best strategy. The Temperance card symbolises moderation, discipline and frugality, meaning that we might need to be patient and bring a little moderation into our lives. The Latin *temperare* means to moderate, mix, blend and bring into harmony, and the Latin word *tempore* means “in the time of,” like the word tempo does in music. Therefore, this card

symbolises that if we learn to moderate certain aspects of our lives then, in time, our lives will run smoother.

The number fourteen is associated with this card, which suggests the need for control if harmony is to be achieved. The moon is positioned midway between the new and full moon on the fourteenth day of its cycle. This number can be reduced to five ( $1 + 4 = 5$ ), which suggests that lessons need to be learned and problems need to be solved, it is a time of ups and downs and a time for changes. Five is associated with love, health, sensuality, meditation, analysis, criticism and the heart. It signifies spiritual power, inner wisdom and mental inspiration, and also the ability to combine information. The number five influences activity, seeks constant change and variety, and also uses experience to put things into action, and is a number that needs social contact, education, ideas and communication with others. Anyone with a strong influence of the number five will hate to be tied down and will need the freedom to move and express themselves.

In Greek mythology there were five goddesses of peace, Concordia, Pallas, Peace, Venus and Vesta, and rode on horseback bringing peace and harmony.

This card is also about the blending of the male and female elements. In Chinese philosophy are the principles of Yin and Yang. Yin is the negative, dark, moist, cold, female principle representing earth and passivity. Yang is the positive, light, dry, hot, male principle representing creation, dominance and heaven. These opposing but complementary forces are said to uphold the entire universe and can be represented as good and evil, life and death, male and female, lightness and darkness, and so on, and are together symbolised by the circular T'ai Chi.

In Greek mythology, Hermaphroditus the son of Hermes and Aphrodite, spurned the advances of the nymph Salmakis. She prayed to be united with

him, and when they were bathing in a spring one day she embraced him and their bodies merged into one. It was said that if any man bathed in that spring would be turned into Hermaphrodites. This story indicates the mixing and blending of opposites to the extreme.

The astrological influence of this card is the zodiacal sign of Sagittarius. This sign likes to physically bond with nature and enjoys competition, adventure and exploration. Sagittarians need to experience a change of scenery, to express their emotions, and to be at one with their environment and enjoy it to the full. They like to focus on the world outside their immediate surroundings and the means by which they make contact with it either physically, mentally or spiritually, through travel, exploration or education, and through the law, philosophy or religion.

The Temperance card tells us that we need to adapt to the changes of our circumstances while maintaining our sense of self.

### **Interpretation**

When the Temperance card appears in a spread it usually represents a transaction or a negotiation that is happening now or about to begin. It suggests that you have what you want but there is something that you are unhappy or unsure about, and there is still an underlying measure of doubt or worry. This card is asking you to go with the flow to see how things develop. Temperance represents balance, coordination, and the ability to live and work in harmony with others. You need to adopt a balance and moderate your approach in relation to yourself and others, and retain a sense of security and stability. The way forward is through compromise and cooperation, which will bring happiness into your relationships with others.

It also indicates the necessity to live economically and to manage your affairs carefully, and be willing to change and create a more balanced and happier way of life. True harmony and integrity is only possible when we learn to

balance the material and spiritual aspects of our lives. This card is about obtaining security through economical and thrifty management, so you need to be patient as you build for the future. Try to moderate in everything, curb any extravagant tendencies that you may have and adopt a more cautious and sensible attitude, especially where your finances and health are concerned.

If you are involved in a dispute or disagreement in your personal or working life don't react hastily or jump into the middle of a situation without thinking, take time to explore your feelings. By being patient and compassionate you will be able to transform the tension and conflict within you to bring about a creative and constructive result. You will be able to see and understand both sides of the argument, which will enable you to resolve matters and get on with the relationship. The Temperance card is excellent if you are involved in creative work or looking for new ways to approach a project, you must grab any new possibilities and opportunities that come your way.

With time everything will be sorted out, there is renewal in your life and your business and personal affairs will be stable and balanced. There is hope and light at the end of the tunnel, and you will feel secure and happy with your life. Avoid trying to keep the peace with continual hostile groups at the expense of your inner harmony. You need to take all things in moderation and also one day at a time.

### **Negative**

There may be mishaps with travel or interruptions with your education. Things are out of balance. There is an atmosphere of competitiveness around you that has either been forced upon you or other people are competing against you. Pay attention to your health, you may be wasting your energy or trying to do too much. There may be conflict and arguments in your relationship and you or your partner cannot come to a compromise. You are being inconsiderate or over-indulgent and others are annoyed by your selfish



behaviour. Try to be more considerate, and make your life more balanced and less one-sided.

### **People**

Those in a mixed marriage. Those who successfully spread information. Those who are capable of writing and publishing books and articles. Those who have a sense of measure. Talkative people. Those who are gentle, understanding and well-balanced. Those who are trying to improve their education. Those who gain honours. Those who have opportunities for travel. Managers. Mediators. Spiritualists.

## 15 The Devil



**Astrological Influence:** Capricorn

**Key words and phrases:** Bondage; the power of negative thinking; finding it hard to let go; pessimism; refusal to leave a bad situation; excessive dependency; unnecessary guilt; heavy commitments; confronting your personal demons; darkness; the need to see things clearly; excessive attachment to material goods; vanity; selfishness; unhealthy attachments; greed; lust; powerful sexual urges;

inhibitions; fears; hang-ups; self-doubts; hopelessness; oppression; ties that bind; unhappy choices; feeling stuck in a confined situation or relationship; co-dependency; enslavement; imprisonment; indulgence; addiction; caught in a vice of your own making; obsession with power, sex or money; sadism; cruelty; a conflict between money and spiritual well-being; primitive urges; uncontrolled passions; addictions; perversions; sexual instincts; repressed fears; one's Achilles' heel; Jung's concept of the Shadow.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

In the Waite deck the Devil is standing on a pedestal in the form of a horned goat with the wings of a bat and the claws of an eagle. On his forehead is a reversed pentagram, and in the pit of his stomach is the sign of Mercury. His right hand is raised with his fingers extended, and in his left hand there is a large inverted inflamed torch pointing towards the earth. There is a ring on the front of the pedestal where two chains are attached to a male and female who have horns growing from their heads.

The **devil** is usually depicted as a demon with bat wings, claws, horns and tails because of the Judaeo-Christian attitude of superiority over animals and

nature. Christianity chose to follow the Judaic idea of demons as being angels who fell from heaven when Satan rebelled against God.

The name Satan comes from the Hebrew “adversary” or “opposition.” As Christian imagery evolved the **devil** became portrayed as a new terrifying image of a monster, and probably because during the early Middle Ages he was seen as wicked but not frightening. If we try to understand that the **devil** is just a symbol of an aspect of our Shadow side that needs to be confronted, then the **devil** will lose its potency. It basically signifies that we are in a negative situation and our judgement is clouded, and we should take time to look carefully at the dilemma and maybe ask for advice.

The **horned goat** is an ambiguous symbol that signifies virility, lust, cunning and destructiveness in the male, and fecundity and nourishment in the female. In Roman myth the cornucopia derives from the horn of the goat, Amaltheia, the revered wet-nurse of the baby Zeus.

In its negative aspect, the **horned goat** signifies the darker side of human nature, immortality and open sexuality. In its positive aspect signifies creative energy and masculine vitality. As a strong climber, the **goat** signifies that our ambitions and determination are strong and we will eventually reach our aims.

The **goat's** symbolism changed through the centuries. In early Europe the male **goat** was a symbol of procreative power, the libido, fertility and the life force, and was sacred to the Greek gods Dionysus and Pan. Then in the Old Testament book of Leviticus, the **goat** became a “scapegoat” for the sins of humanity, and came to symbolise sexual excess and associated with evil, and by the Middle Ages the **goat's** characteristics became attributed to the devil.

The **reversed pentagram** has two upper points, therefore is associated with the horns of the devil, evil and witchcraft. It is a symbol of terror, disharmony and evil thought. An upright **pentagram** is used as a defence against witches

and demons, and in the Arthurian stories, Gawain had this symbol emblazoned on his shield.

With the Devil card being a negative card, the **sign of Mercury** signifies that we need to be aware of changes in our career, home, or upsets in the family, probably through our own restlessness or lack of intelligent planning. It also signifies trouble through slander or malicious gossip, domestic squabbling and altercations, mistakes in matters involving detail, and accidents through carelessness or lack of awareness on our part or those around us.

In Christian iconography, a hand represents God's blessing and intervention, however the devil's gesture with **extended fingers** reverses the blessing. Hands are two of the most expressive parts of the body and signify power and creativity. The open hand represents justice and may suggest that we are inwardly crying out for help, or we should give a great deal of thought and care to our situation.

The **inverted torch** is a symbol of illumination and signifies the need to carry the light in our hearts and minds. It suggests that we may need to light up the passage of our journey because we may need guidance to see our way forward.

The **chains** symbolise the bondage, enslavement and liability of our material life. They are a symbol of attachment and connection, and the relationship between two things. **Chains** suggest that we need to free ourselves from suppressing attitudes. They can suggest that a desire of ours has been repressed because of guilt-feelings attached to it, or some part of us needs to be given more freedom of action.

The **horns** are symbolic of the male sexuality, virility and aggression, and the power of growth within the mind. **Horns** also represent the idea of the animal nature within us, or aspects of our psyche that we normally repress, but will

have to be resolved otherwise we will remain prisoners to our egotistical materialism. This is the side of our nature that can cause problems in our lives, and can even be transmitted to others.

On the whole, the Devil card shows a similarity to the sixth card, the Lovers, but after their fall from grace.

In Hebrew mythology, Satan is depicted as being similar with horns, bat-like wings, a tail and cloven hooves. He is a fertility god and a demon of sorcery, and one of the Grand Dignitaries in black magic.

The Devil card symbolises our own ignorance and our blind pursuit of pleasure without the consideration of anything else. It suggests that we need to recognise and balance the good and bad aspects of our nature. This card is about the seven deadly sins, lust, pride, anger, covetousness, gluttony, envy and sloth. Jung termed these characteristics as “the Shadow” or our dark side. In Aramaic mythology they believed that temptation came through Mammon, a demon of avarice or temptation.

The Greek Dionysus was credited with the invention of wine and became its patron god. During his life on earth he was accompanied by a band of satyrs, and a group of wild and frenzied women called the Maenads. The satyrs were gods of the woodlands and were part man and part goat with long tails, it is said they were the sons of Hermes and brothers of the nymphs. Dionysus drove mad the three daughters of Minyas, the King of Thessaly, when they refused his invitation to join his drunken revelry.

Pan, the Greek god of flocks, shepherds and woods was also part man and part goat. It was said that he seduced a number of nymphs and goddesses, including Echo, who was a nymph of Mount Helicon and could only repeat the spoken words of other people, Eupheme, another nymph and the nurse to the Muses, and Selene, a moon goddess and goddess of magicians. We can see

the connection here with the overindulgent characteristics of the Devil. Some also say that Capricorn was Pan.

The Devil is numbered fifteen which can be reduced to the number six ( $1 + 5 = 6$ ), which is the number for balance but can show weakness when it comes to making decisions. The number six is also about adaptability and the need to make changes in times of difficulty. It is a symbol of union and equilibrium, and the number of celestial power and longevity. As a hexagon it signifies harmony and balance, and in Pythagorean theory signifies justice. Six is also associated with sin in the New Testament book of Revelation, as 666, it becomes the number of the beast of the Apocalypse.

The astrological influence of the Devil is the zodiacal sign of Capricorn, which is a sign of ambition, intelligence and strong willpower channelled towards a single goal. Capricorn focuses on the way we project our collective, absorbed and digested experiences upon the world, our conscious striving to attain a chosen goal, our position in the world and the way we earn our living. Capricorns have a sensuous streak and enjoy wealth, comfort and pleasure. They always keep their cool and are logical, rational and level headed. This sometimes makes them seem distant, insensitive and closed to the ideas of others.

### **Interpretation**

When the Devil appears in a spread there is a need for you to review your ties to destructive relationships, material possessions, uninhibited passions and money. This card also sometimes appears when you stay in a relationship for reasons other than love. It means that you may be overly concerned with material and physical things, and are clinging to limited beliefs and values that are holding you back.

You might feel that you are trapped in a relationship or some other oppressive situation, and feel angry or frustrated by the uncomfortable circumstances that

you find yourself in. Perhaps some other appetite or addiction is controlling your life, such as lust, greed, alcohol or drugs. However, you should try to avoid any temptation that may hurt you or others. Maybe your relationship is not love, but based on physical attraction, there are probably tears but you stay because you can't physically bear to be parted, even though the arguments and yelling have become the everyday norm.

It could also be that someone has a hold over with money by trying to buy your friendship and love, and you stay for financial reasons. In these conditions you are tying yourself to limiting habits that keep you trapped in unpleasant circumstances, and choosing this negative approach that will cause unhappy results. Perhaps you are finding it hard to express your negative feelings, or you have not yet found the solution to pull you out of this negative situation, you need to recognise these emotions and have the courage to break free. Maybe you are tired of not having enough money and you have the urge to push yourself to reach your aims and improve your financial and material wellbeing. It could also be that you are harbouring guilt feelings from the past or habits you are embarrassed or ashamed of.

The Devil card is a sexual symbol and can mean that with women there may be a fear of sexual relations, and with men they may have a guilt-ridden attitude towards their own sexuality.

Once you realise the root cause of your difficulty, reflect a while on your situation or even ask others for advice. Eventually you will be able to take the responsibility for your actions and be able to break free. You may even start to save or collect items, which is fine as long as it doesn't become obsessive. Don't become a victim of your vanity and pride. Beware of your dark side.

### **Negative**

There is a danger of damage to your prestige, and maybe upsets in your career or domestic life. Perhaps you are blind to your own faults or those of

others, or blind to the unrestrainable urges and desires that are destructive or self-destructive. Money and power may have taken over any other considerations. This card is a warning against any abuse of power, money and sex. Is there emotional blackmail happening within your relationship that is making it hard for you to break free, even though you are unhappy? You may have fantasies about some sexual activities that you want to act out. It can also mean that you are involved in negative or underhanded activities or people. Maybe you are overindulging or addicted to alcohol or drugs. Don't let obsession and the past get in the way of progress.

### **People**

Those who are passionate, creative, productive or destructive and ready to use any means possible to reach their aims. Those who feel tied and enslaved to a situation or relationship. Those who are trying to improve their domestic conditions. Those who are opening up to fresh avenues of experience.



## 16 The Tower



**Astrological Influence:** Mars

**Key words and phrases:** Collapse of an old way of life; modification; disruption; shock; havoc; awakening; instability; a jolting insight; a shocking revelation; a traumatic experience; major transformation; a crisis point; a surprise; unavoidable change; release from bondage; structural flaws; liberation; breaking free; rapid change; disturbing news; eliminating what is worthless; release from self-imposed captivity;

disappointment; collapse of plans; breaking down outmoded forms; demolition of useless structure; confronting shame and guilt; casting off false values; a moment of truth; destruction of something corrupt; freedom; enlightenment; social conventions that bind you; a new job; a change of residence; a disturbing incident; separation; a divorce; an accident; problems with property; bankruptcy; loss of security.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

A lightning bolt strikes the top of the Tower causing it to crumble. The crown is blown off the top of the Tower and two figures fall to the rocks below, and there is an aggressive fire burning out of control from the top to the bottom of the Tower.

The **lightening bolt** symbolises wrath and destruction, but also fertility and inspiration. It is an important message that is forcing us to conduct a reality check, a flash of insight to free ourselves of conflict. The **lightening bolt** denotes unexpected changes possibly through a sudden flash of insight or awareness of the way we are living our lives, which may be destructive but also brings a positive change.

In Hinduism and Buddhism, it is believed that when a diamond-shaped **thunderbolt** strikes (vajra), it signifies that the destructive and creative powers are destroying illusions and wrongdoings so that clarity and good prevail.

In African mythology, Gbade, a young thunder god in Dahomey is said to use **lightening** as a weapon, with which he kills wrongdoers. The possessions of a man killed this way are scattered by the roadside and anyone who touches them will be killed in the same way.

The dislodged **crow** signifies that we have lost our power, authority, status and recognition. It suggests that we need to look carefully into the causes of our collapse, and to look at our achievements in life to see if we can build on them again.

The **two figures** are male and female, a symbol of duality, and represent conflicting thought and actions that will inevitably lead to eruption, loss of control, falling from power or grace, loss, reduction, getting into trouble, falling out of favour, and nothing can be done except hope for the best.

The **aggressive fire** symbolises how much control do we really have over a volatile situation or relationship. However, this **fire** is out of control, which suggests a lack of constraint, or fears about a fraught situation in our life, and it is becoming overwhelming or having devastating consequences, indicating changes are long overdue. A **fire** can indicate a radical way of thinking as we realise that we can no longer go on in the same way and anything that has outlived its purpose must be eliminated.

The Tower is the first reference to a material building. It is about sudden change, unexpected events or devastating conditions, which could be in the form of business or financial problems, separations or divorce, conflicts, loss of faith in our self or the world, in which drastic measures have to be taken. It

represents the circumstances and situations that restrict and inhibit our development. This card symbolises what could become our worst nightmare, and is a wake up call telling us to get our house in order. It is a warning against vanity, pride and arrogance, and even though the signs were there, we either refused to admit the problems or were just too blind to see them, and continued to sit in our “Ivory Tower.” The Tower is man-made and represents man’s attempt to reach the heavens.

It is derived from the Tower of Babel, which was built with the intention to reach heaven. When this tower was built Babel planned to invade God’s domain to avenge his ancestors who were drowned in the Flood that Noah survived. Babel’s tower was said to have contained all the knowledge in the world that was situated in a library within the tower. God destroyed the tower to show that knowledge alone did not make a person great, and that a person needs humility and wisdom in order to make sense and good use of knowledge.

The Tower card can make us feel liberated and alarmed by the experience, but it gives us a chance to clear out the old and build on new foundations that support our beliefs and values. The structure that we have built in our lives need to be torn down because it no longer supports the truth of who we are. The collapse will be a blessing, especially when we realise it was imprisoning us and no longer supporting us.

The Tower is number sixteen, and in ancient myth was associated with “the falling tower”, signifying a sudden collapse of something we have worked hard to achieve. Sixteen can be reduced to the number seven ( $1 + 6 = 7$ ), and is the number for control and taking charge, and for introspection and asking questions to ourselves.

The Ancient Egyptians believed there were seven gods of light and seven of darkness. There are seven days in a week, seven colours of the rainbow, and

seven main chakras in the human body. However it can also mean change as in “the seven year itch.”

The number seven is a meditative number and suggests the need to take time out to reflect on things, or an inward journey to practical and spiritual enlightenment.

The astrological influence of the Tower is the planet Mars, which stimulates our energy, drive, initiative and competitive instincts, it has a passionate nature, which drives us to action and self-assertion. However, when this ability to act is upset, and assertiveness is either inhibited or prevented then problems may be created through carelessness, followed by bouts of violence and revolt. We may feel that we have got ourselves under reasonable control, but the universe reminds us that we are not in control of everything.

### **Interpretation**

When the Tower appears in a spread you are in, or will soon be in, a necessary and inevitable change that will possibly alter the way you live your life. This change is about to turn your life upside-down and will bring with it an unexpected alteration to your circumstances. The structure of your life is beginning to crumble and these changes will come as a shock as disruptions and setbacks begin to occur, everything you have taken for granted is about to be challenged.

The feeling for your partner may have gone sour and you are finding the relationship difficult at the moment. It could be the end of a relationship, the loss of a job, in fact any situation that threatens your security. You may suddenly hand in your notice, find yourself redundant or your current plans and projects don't get off the ground. How you respond will determine the outcome, you may have to change your old outworn beliefs, values or behaviour, adopt a new set of attitudes and focus on getting your house and your life in order. This can be done by overcoming vain and selfish ambition,

getting out of old restrictive situations that are disruptive, that are imposed by others or by your own past actions, or any situation that no longer helps your growth. You must deal with the collapse of your old way of life and identify with what you truly value. This upheaval is giving you the chance to climb out of the rut you have been in.

The Tower card is offering you the opportunity to reassess your relationships and lifestyle, and make a brand new start to restructure your life in order to live in more accordance with your true self. There is nothing you can do to stop this destruction except see what can be salvaged from it. Besides, nothing new will happen in your life without this total change. You will feel liberated, free and relieved once the storm has gone, and it will turn out to be very positive in the end. Learn from your past mistakes.

### **Negative**

There may be difficulties resulting from recklessness, undue haste, or lack of energy and initiative. Hostility or domestic strife could arise from your own aggressiveness, assertiveness or ill-regulated passions. Perhaps you are being dominated by someone or by a situation. You could find yourself with no money and unemployed through no fault of your own. Relationships may suddenly break up leaving you feeling deceived, betrayed and abandoned by your partner. You want to know why, but cannot get any answers. A court case may be imminent concerning bills or bankruptcy. Perhaps you have become so depressed with your situation that you cannot be bothered to make any effort to get out of it. Eventually, in some way, you will overcome your problems and have a fresh start.

### **People**

Those who cause upheaval and disruption. Those who bring about drastic changes in their lives. Those who feel abandoned deceived and betrayed. Those who are trying to clear away old attitudes and possessions as a start to

future accomplishment. Those whose resources have been exhausted as a result of over-stimulation of passions, overexertion, or fits of temper.

# 17 The Star



**Astrological Influence:** Aquarius

**Key words and phrases:** Hope; inspiration; luck; tranquillity; optimism; trust; enjoyment; faith in the future; confidence; comfort; relief; renewal; happiness; promise; help; protection; restoration; spiritual love; selflessness; illumination; reflection; a special talent; harmony; enthusiasm; creativity; fertility; charisma; grace; beauty; peace; refreshment; balance; poise; emotional and spiritual riches; inner guidance; a sense

of direction; expanded horizons; inner healing; renewed health; guiding light; higher knowledge; occult understanding; ability to plan for the future; meditation; learning astrology; spiritual growth; faith; contemplation; aid from many sources; help from above; education.

## **Symbolic Meaning**

This card depicts a great eight-pointed radiant star that is surrounded by seven smaller stars in a blue sky, with a naked young female pouring water from two jugs. Behind the female and to her right is a mountain, and to her left is a tree or a shrub where a bird is perched.

A **star** signifies light, inspiration, rebirth, renewal, good health, hope, aspiration, ideal and guidance.

The **eight-pointed star** is associated with the Morning Star. The Star of Ishtar, or Morning Star, was used as a guide throughout the East for many centuries before the birth of Christ.

In Babylonian and Assyrian mythology, Ishtar is the powerful goddess of love, peace and hope, and is associated with Venus, the goddess of love. Ishtar is

said to have descended to the underworld in search of her lover then returned to life just as the Evening Star disappeared from view, before appearing again as the Morning Star.

The other **seven stars** relate to the Pleiades, or the Seven Sisters, a constellation of stars representing the mother goddess, Net, in Ancient Egypt.

The **blue sky** symbolises inspiration, creativity and aspiration, reminding us that we have a bright and positive outlook in our lives.

The female is entirely **naked** symbolising innocence and the desire to be open and honest. She is at ease and has nothing to hide or fear. We are all born **naked** therefore this card represents rebirth, or the need for a new start.

The **jug** in her right hand symbolises our consciousness and means that we should be aware of pouring away or wasting our energies, the **jug** in her left hand symbolises our subconscious, meaning that we must face the emotions that are affecting us and not bury them deep within us.

The **mountain** represents the obstacles that we need to overcome, and is a symbol of transcendence, eternity, purity, and spiritual ascent.

The **bird** represents aspiration and illumination, and is symbolic of flying above the restrictions we have found ourselves in. It is believed that this **bird** is an Ibis, which according to the Ancient Egyptians is a sacred symbol of wisdom and related to the incarnation of Thoth. Thoth was the god of art, law, magic, the moon, science, time, writing and wisdom, who became the scribe and keeper of records, and was credited with the invention of hieroglyphics.

The Star card is a sign that we are being guided through our difficulties, so as long as we are open and receptive we will reach our chosen goal. This card is telling us to rid ourselves of doubt, and trust the outcome before the light



fades and leaves our lives dull and boring. Once we have a sense of purpose, we are able to direct our hopes and wishes in a more positive way, which leads to fulfilment. Even if life is challenging as long as we have hope and faith then anything is possible. This card encourages us to develop our innate potential to open new doors.

The number of the Star is seventeen and believed to be a lucky number. Those born on the seventeenth are supposed to be intuitive and destined to be wealthy. It is the number of immortality, beauty, self-expression and hope. The number seventeen reduces to the number eight ( $1 + 7 = 8$ ), which symbolises infinity or eternity, and indicates a positive change of mind or status and is the number of cosmic balance.

In African belief the number eight is associated with water and semen, both are needed for growth, it is also a lucky number in China.

The astrological influence of the Star is the zodiacal sign of Aquarius. It relates to the blending of intuition (water) and reason (the sign's air element). Aquarius focuses on our ability to express our individuality through friendships, ideals, creative abilities and participation in enterprise. Aquarius is the sign associated with humanitarian ideals, inventiveness, progressive thinking and originality. This is a sign of serenity, good-tempered feelings and inner harmony. Inner balance is based on dynamism, the ability to make decisions and to adapt.

### **Interpretation**

When the Star appears in a spread it means that you have probably been going through difficulties and are now entering a period of renewal in which you will gain fresh vitality. You will soon be able to see the light at the end of the tunnel and your thoughts, ideas, plans and hopes start to take shape. Your imagination is in control and everything is beginning to turn positive. If you have been struggling help is on the way and your guardian angel is

looking after you. You will receive love and spiritual guidance even through these difficult times. New life will be shown to you, new horizons are opening up, your life will be filled with purpose and you will feel rejuvenated.

New opportunities and chances are being presented to you and you will soon experience joy and an uplifting feeling. You will gain fresh insight into old problems, and whatever position you are in, you can make your dreams come true and part of reality again. New successful prospects fulfil your hopes and plans. It could be the ideal career opportunity where you find yourself in an organisation that aims to help others, such as care work, human rights, nursing or 'green' issues. Maybe you will meet the perfect partner that will develop into a happy and balanced relationship, and possibly even a birth.

It is also a good time to awaken your creative talents because recognition in the arts, music or theatre is a possibility when the Star appears. Don't spend your life dreaming and not doing, be strong and confident and have faith in yourself. Your vitality will outshine everyone else and you can expect a happy outcome.

### **Negative**

There may be temporary setbacks, such as delays in your work projects or difficulties in studies. Perhaps there is a lack of trust with relationships at home or work. Maybe past experiences make it hard for you to believe in joy and happiness, or you find it hard to express your emotions. You may feel depressed and pessimistic about the future, or doubt your own abilities. You may be frightened to grab opportunities for yourself, and instead are following other people's influences, ideas and thoughts. It could be that a conman has taken advantage of you, or you have been a victim of theft.

### **People**

Those who hope to achieve. Those who try to make their ideas, thoughts, plans or beliefs a reality. Those who assist others. Doctors. Nurses. Healers.

Carers. A guardian angel. Pessimists. Those who are good at making friends.  
Those who are realising their ideals.

# 18 The Moon



**Astrological Influence:** Pisces

**Key words and phrases:** Self-deception; past conditioning affects present behaviour; a time to be passive and receptive; intuition; strong emotions; secret truths; psychic awareness; mediumship; the uncanny; dreams; imagination; fantasy; the netherworld; the mother; the female archetype; change; mystery; bewilderment; the creative potential of the unconscious mind; fiction; creative writing;

acting; work involving illusion; the entertainment industry; travel; escapism; confusion; deception; trickery; insincerity; slander; lies; betrayal; muddled thinking; infidelity; fear; craftiness; deceit; uncertainty; insecurity; fluctuation; illusion; doubt; indecision; bad dreams; apprehension; negative moods; depression; overwhelming emotion; neuroticism.

## **Symbolic Meaning**

In the Waite deck the Moon card depicts two canines that seem to be howling at the waxing moon as a shellfish tries to climb out of a pool in front of them, and a path winds its way between two columns and over the hills into the unknown.

The **moon** is connected to the pull on our emotions associated with feeling, irrationality and the subconscious or hidden. It symbolises the waxing and waning of the rhythms of life, the unending cycles of change, and its symbolism is predominantly associated with the feminine cycles as the **waxing moon** is a symbol of fertility. The **moon** is linked to the imagination, intuition, psychic powers and dreaming, and the **new moon** is connected to our receptivity, instinct, the subconscious mind, emotional life and our ability to react, it is also a symbol of the mother or women in general. The **moon's**

phases have significant influence, a **waxing moon** suggests that it is a good time for us to make plans, a **full moon** signifies success and fruition, and a **waning moon** urges us to take care of our energy levels.

The **two canines** are a **dog** and a **wolf** symbolising the fears of the mind, they are uncomfortable in this environment because their only guide out of there is reflected light, which leads to the unknown.

It was a common belief that **howling canines** was a warning of a coming death. In Celtic and Christian belief a **dog** is loyal, protective and vigilant, but in ancient thought they were associated with the underworld, where they acted like a guide and guardian. In Japan and China they are guardian symbols, but they also have demonic links in China.

A **hostile dog** suggests that someone around us does not have your interests at heart, and a **barking dog** is a “wake up” call to alert us to danger or to new possibilities. **Dogs** are usually sociable therefore it could signify that we might need to make more of an effort to connect with others.

At times the **wolf** is associated with courage and victory, but at other times with cruelty, cunning and greed, and thought of as tricksters and a figure of deceit. The **wolf** symbolises wisdom, knowledge, and the ability to keep the family together. Family is very important to a **wolf** and therefore signifies a powerful connection with others. It can also suggest that we may need to tap into our own instinctive nature. However, because the **wolf** can also be cunning, it may indicate that we are being threatened by others, or could mean sexual “animal” lust as the word “**wolf**” is often applied to men whose sex life is purely “animal.”

The **columns** are a symbol of temporal and spiritual authority, aspiration and power. They represent the polarities of male and female, positive and negative, life and death, creation and destruction, and so on.

Solomon's Temple had installed one black **column** and one white **column**. The **black column** Jachin symbolised the moon, decay, the waning year and cursing, its meaning was "it will stand." The **white column** Boaz means "in strength," the sun, the waxing year and blessing. These two **columns** are illustrated on the High Priestess card. The **columns** suggest that we are able to create stability and support, and urges us to stand firm when the going gets tough.

The **shellfish** on the card is trying to make an appearance but it will generally fall back into the sea because its movement is governed by lunar tides, it hunts when the tide comes in and seeks refuge when the tide goes out. The **crab** or **crayfish** represents the earliest stages of our development. When we crawl out into the world we become more aware of what is going on around us, which is usually more than we realised.

The **path** represents how we feel about our "**path in life**", and may signify the **path** of our relationships, career, etc. The twists and turns on the **path** symbolise confusion and setbacks, but we must be strong and travel through the gateway and down the **path** to enlightenment.

In Greek mythology, Hecate the Lunar goddess was a three-headed or three-bodied goddess of darkness, fertility, the Moon, streets, the underworld and witchcraft. She helped Demeter to search for Persephone in the underworld. White pillars called Hecatea were erected at crossroads where offerings were made for her.

In Britain it was believed that the Queen of Elphame was a witch who was regarded as an incarnation of Hecate, she is said to have seduced the thirteenth century poet Thomas the Rhymer and then gave him supernatural insight.

The Moon card focuses on our inner fears and uncertainties, feelings of dread, confusing circumstances, or whatever area of our life is most important at the moment. When this card appears our feelings are usually confused and clouded because it represents our imagination and our dreams. Our psyches hold hidden parts of our nature that may need to be looked into, once our dark side has been brought to light we will be able to understand ourselves better and as a result become stronger and more confident. Sometimes we are prone to deception or delusion, which results to muddled thinking, excessive worry and a timid character. Therefore, we need to go beyond the physical and material and try to see things as they really are instead of groping in the dark. We must rely on our dreams and intuition for insight into our situation because using our logic or trying to analyse the situation will not solve our problems at this time. This card is advising us to question everything and to try to understand that things are not always what they seem. We may be distracted by shadows or lose our way in the moonlight, but we can also be inspired by our dreams when the moon comes out. We must learn to be able to tell the difference.

The Moon card is number eighteen and reduces to the number nine ( $1 + 8 = 9$ ), which means that although there have been difficulties help is around the corner, and our situations and events are nearing completion or have just been completed and another level of achievement is in waiting. This number relates to the symbolism of the triple power of three, the three-month periods of pregnancy (the three trimesters), or the three triads of the nine orders of angels.

The astrological influence of the Moon is the zodiacal sign of Pisces, which is the sign of dreams, imagination, visions, intuition, creativity and unconditional love. Pisces focuses on our adjustment to life as a whole, and our efforts to perfect our relationship with the world at large. Piscean sensitivity borders on the inhibited, they can be inspired and highly intuitive, but can also become

clouded by mood swings from elation to depression. Kindness and strong spiritual faith are common traits with this sign.

### **Interpretation**

When the Moon appears in a spread you are entering a period where you are more receptive to your intuition and you should listen to your inner voice at this time. This card represents deception, errors, danger, hidden enemies and darkness, meaning that you should be alert to the changes that are happening in your life at the moment. Nothing is what it seems and you will feel like you are groping in the dark. You may be more prone to self-deception, illusion, and fantasy, but don't be deceived by appearances.

There may be an underlying element of deceit that makes it difficult and confusing for you to deal with other people, so at the moment be wary of the people you meet and the circumstances that you find yourself in. Maybe you are the victim of someone else's deception, which could be related to your family, relationships, a friend, a lover or even your attachment to the past, and you have become disillusioned and confused and finding it hard to sort out your feelings. You may be misleading yourself, and your fears have nothing to do with your situation, so take notice of the hidden aspects in your dreams and intuitive insights.

Everything you do is influenced by the circumstances around you therefore your difficulties in life may have been caused by your own mistakes and weaknesses. Be careful who you put your trust in because they may be lying, and learn to trust your intuition and hunches to help you to detect other people's intentions. Look more deeply into the situation and ask more questions. Perhaps you feel like you have been betrayed and finding it hard to separate fact from fiction, making you lose direction and feeling depressed and inconsolable.



You will need to be careful of your health if this is the case, because in extreme cases this card speaks of self-injury or harm, even suicide. Therefore, you must confront your demons, detach yourself from the past, head into the unknown and allow your emotions to guide you. However, the Moon card does carry some good news, it is a good sign for psychic and spiritual development, and imaginative projects, and as a result this can be a very creative time. This is a good card for anyone who has creative talents such as writing, art, drama, acting, psychology, psychotherapy, and so on. It is also a good sign for fertility matters, babies, children and possible travel over water.

In the end, trust your own gut feelings and the power of your intuition because they will be more reliable than logical analysis at this time. Be wary and open to any threats and dangers, and try to live in the real world if you are going to make things happen. After this period of devastation and despair you will become a stronger person, achieve success and things will end happily.

### **Negative**

There may be difficulties arising from an inability to adjust to life as a whole. There is some doubt in your ability to cope. You, or someone in your life, find it hard to distinguish between fantasy and reality. Maybe you are dealing with insincere people, try to keep to yourself because they might be trying to work against you. If you are a woman, you may have menstrual or gynaecological problems. A difficult situation may be affecting your health. Maybe you are having bad dreams or bouts of moodiness. You may have to deal with alcoholism, drug abuse, depression, or people in prison or hospital.

### **People**

Those who are very receptive and endowed with undeniable mental qualities and powers. Those faced with a difficult or confused situation. Those in touch with their intuition and unconscious mind. Mothers. Women. Those who are devious and deceptive. Those who are emotionally or mentally troubled.

Tricksters or conmen. Those who gain benefit through a sound sense of perspective, or through an improved knowledge of the techniques involved in their everyday work.

# 19 The Sun



## Astrological Influence: Sun

**Key words and phrases:** Success; fulfilment; vitality; pleasure; ambition; confidence; optimism; achievement; affirmation; empowerment; a time to take charge; a prosperous development; illumination; truth; logic; clear thinking; warmth; friendship; the power of positive thinking; pure rational thought; joy; satisfaction; creative self-expression; hope; enrichment; self-control; blessings; spiritual victory;

acclaim; display; attainment; opportunity; energy; spontaneity; creative inspiration; public recognition; celebration; good health virility; happiness; prosperity; rationality; academic honours; scientific achievement; invention; marriage; children; emotional well-being; the dawning of a new day.

## Symbolic Meaning

In the Waite deck the Sun card is portrayed as a naked child with a feather in his/her hair carrying a red banner, while riding a white horse outside a walled garden of sunflowers as the sun shines overhead.

The **sun** is a source of heat and light and is crucial to life on earth and one of the most important symbols in all of our world cultures. It is associated with power and active and creative energy, it is a male principle and symbolises vitality, passion, courage, intuitive knowledge, universal intellect, new understanding and eternally renewed youth. The **sun** illuminates our conscious mind and balances the subconscious mind that was bestowed upon us by the darkness of the moon. It signifies our capacity to see things clearly so we are able to move forward with confidence.

A **rising sun** is a symbol of hope and new beginnings, and a **sun with rays** symbolises illumination. It is often associated with the principle of authority or the father figure, and is linked with individuality, will, ego and personality. At its highest level the **sun** is striving for psychic integration or enlightenment, and at its lower level it is indulging in egomania, excessive pride and authoritarianism. The **rising sun** is also linked with creative energy, health and vitality, and with influencing both physical and psychological development.

The **naked child** represents simplicity and innocence, and the path to liberation and spiritual illumination. It illustrates freedom, innocence, spontaneity and open-heartedness, and symbolises the **external child**, much like Peter Pan, the **childlike** imagination that lives in all of us. In Christian doctrine, Jesus said, unless adults become more like **children** they will not enter the kingdom of Heaven. The **child** stands for new beginnings and the ability to access our own **inner child**, and the **nudity** means we have the freedom to let down our guard and allow our true nature to come forward, it is about communication without fear.

The **white horse** is a symbol of light, life, spiritual illumination and purity, it is an ancient symbol linked to the sun and sky gods, **white horses** drew the sun chariot in classical myths. They represent the state of our spiritual awareness, and the vitality and mobility we have or need, so that we can move in a new direction to complete any actions or tasks to reach our goals and fulfil our desires.

The **banner** signifies positive action and is an emblem of rulership and identity, and a **flapping banner** suggests new beginnings. As it is a **red banner** it also signifies life and warmth and is linked with love and fertility.

The Anglo-Saxons believed the colour **red** protected them from evil. It stands for some kind of ideal and the need to consolidate our thoughts and actions, and perhaps to agree to a particular course of action.

The **wall** represents making a change from our known world into the unknown world beyond, they are barriers that cut us off from the rest of the world or give us a sense of security and permanence. **Walls** are also a symbol of a repression of nature through human strength and rigidity, so everything the sun energy has to offer us will never be ours if we are closed to it. The **wall** suggests a breakthrough, no matter how bad things have been there will always be an opportunity to break down the walls of whatever is imprisoning us.

**Flowers** represent the opportunity to link to the feelings of pleasure and beauty, it means that we are aware of something new, maybe a feeling or an ability of something that is beginning to develop into being, and a freshness about what we are doing.

**Sunflowers** always face the sun and are linked with immortality and longevity therefore suggests that we should reach further and extend to greater lengths to meet or face the truth with clarity and spiritual illumination.

The **feather** in the child's hair suggests that we take a more gentle approach to our situation.

According to Greek mythology, Apollo was one of the Olympians and the god of light and the sun, and also the god of music and poetry. His music helped him when he and Poseidon built the walls of Troy, as he was able to charm the stones into position by merely playing his lyre. At the siege of Troy he helped the Trojans against the Greeks and, it is said, guided the arrow that killed Achilles. Apollo was credited with the invention of the lute and cithera

and was given the lyre by Hermes. He symbolises the power of the intellect and the masculine function of being able to rationalise our experience.

On the whole the Sun card represents a source of energy and strength, and gives us a feeling of purpose in our lives after a long period of confusion and grief. Its focus is on benefits, achievements, accomplishment, exoneration, marriage, unions and mergers. It is a card of unclouded perception, understanding and clarity of mind and activity. This card suggests that it is time for us to grab the opportunities that we have been dreaming about, develop our unique potential and feel confident of what the future holds.

The number of the Sun card is nineteen and reduces to ten ( $1 + 9 = 10$ ), which is a number of change, perfection, creation, perfect balance and divine power. In biblical belief it is the number of God's commandments, and to the Native Americans is the number of the intellect. This number can also be reduced to the number one ( $1 + 0 = 1$ ), the number for new beginnings and change, and refers to our own importance as an individual. This number is a male principle, a symbol of creation and the spark of life for the human species. Jung referred to it as a unifying symbol.

The astrological influence of the Sun card is obviously the Sun, our heavenly body, which provides light and life. The Sun reveals the instinctive and subconscious part of our character. It brings a kind of renewal into our lives, and combines and balances all of our qualities and all of the components of our personality, therefore, giving us the chance of self-fulfilment. The Sun stimulates our creative ability, our will to achieve, our leadership qualities, and our sense of independence and enterprise.

### **Interpretation**

When the Sun card appears in a spread it announces a period of creativity, prosperity and happiness in your relationships. If you have been struggling, don't worry because all areas of your life will soon be improving, and

happiness, vitality and success will enter your life. Things will get easier now and problems will be successfully resolved. You will experience a growing sense that much more is possible because you can think better and see solutions. It is time to move forward to develop your potential, or achieve your dreams. There will be every opportunity to accomplish your ambition and make long-term plans, your efforts will come to fruition and you have everything to play for. This could come through a new career, promotion at work, or your business grows from strength to strength, bringing with it financial improvement and greater status or recognition.

Enjoy the rewards of your effort but be careful not to overwork and lose sight of loved ones, or what you are working for. It could also be a marriage or union of some kind that develops into a particularly happy relationship and contentment in love. You have the energy and enthusiasm to fulfil your goals and you feel optimistic about the future, so it is time to explore your creativity and positive ideas. This card is also good for sporting and leisure activities. The Sun is a good card regarding children and can suggest the birth of a child you have longed for, a natural talent that your child has or develops, tests and examinations that your child has will turn out favourably, and also the recovery of an illness or difficulty.

Socially you are invited to all kinds of events, you begin to feel more confident and energetic, life is good, live it to the full and enjoy yourself. Hot countries are signified and are fortunate for meeting special and interesting people, this could be through taking a holiday, having a day at the beach or going on a business trip. In the end be yourself, everything will work out much better than you thought, success is certain and you will have nothing to worry about. However unlikely it seems things are going to work out, so enjoy every moment of happiness.

**Negative**

There may be loss of prestige due to misfortune, false pride, or because of failing fortunes within the family or with superiors. There may be some sort of delay, difficulty or disappointment that needs to be sorted out because doubts surrounding your future plans are setting in. Perhaps there are cracks opening up in your relationship and you feel as if you are being taken for granted, or not getting enough attention. There may be similar difficulties in a business partnership. Both partners may be at loggerheads because one feels they are doing more of the work. There may be worries concerning children, such as hyperactive babies or problems at school. Maybe your expectations are too unrealistic. There will still be success but it will be delayed.

**People**

Those who experience pure joy, happiness and fulfilment. Those who have a zest for life. Cheerful people. Children and babies. Leaders. Those who advance through merit, ambition, determination, or help from superiors. Those who are gaining spiritual illumination.



## 20 Judgement



**Astrological Influence:** Pluto

**Key words and phrases:** Rebirth; a developmental milestone; a momentous choice; the ending of a phase of life and the assessment of its worth; judging or being judged; growing up; a change of position; the end of an era; the end of a situation; a rite of passage; a career change; a promotion; resurrection; the need to evaluate or be evaluated; rejuvenation; the Phoenix rising from the ashes; a ponderous decision; a call to

action; renewal; an identity crisis; a time for evaluation; a new direction; readjustment; transition; awakening; metamorphosis; breaking with convention; major changes; a mandatory choice that will change life for the better; cleansing; purification; regeneration; a new life; new opportunities; self-appraisal; self-improvement; final reckoning; transformation; healing; breaking free of old habits; revitalisation; a favourable legal decision; balancing accounts; a clean slate; a final examination; commencement; graduation.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

Judgement is a familiar Christian image and in the Waite deck is depicted as a great angel encircled by clouds raising the souls of the dead from their tombs through the call of his trumpet. The angel's trumpet has a banner attached to it emblazoned with a red coloured cross.

An **angel** is an intermediary between God and humans acting as a guide to the soul by helping it to grow and evolve. It is believed by many to be the **Archangel Michael** depicted on this card. He is an agent of the creative will of God and brings to us loving guidance, protection and divine messages. He is a symbol of divine will and represents pure being and freedom from sin.

The **trumpet** is a symbol of a portent, a sign of something to come, which could be momentous news or action, and is suggesting that we need to maximise our potential.

The **cross** was used as a Christian symbol to represent the union of Heaven and Earth, and now because of its various spiritual and esoteric associations it has become connected with healing and miraculous powers, therefore can also mean changing spirit into substance.

All the **figures rising from their tombs** or coffins are in wonder, adoration and ecstasy. This symbolises redemption, resurrection and salvation. Following destruction comes rebirth, new creation or resurrection, therefore presenting the accomplishment of transformation.

On the whole this card represents spiritual awakening and renewal, and indicates that we come to terms with the past in order to move on. The Judgement card also symbolises the rewards and penalties of our actions, so we can either acquire the benefits of our past efforts or learn some hard lessons. We are not in total control of our destiny and have to be accountable for our actions. Our lives are shaped by the decisions we make, so we have to be aware in case we do harm to ourselves or others.

In Greek mythology, Paris a prince of Troy was attending the wedding of Peleus and Thetis. There were many gods present at the wedding but Eris was not invited. Eris threw a golden apple with the inscription "To the fairest" into the wedding congregation, then a dispute erupted as to which goddess should claim the prize and title. They asked Paris to decide which of the three goddesses between Aphrodite, Athena and Hera was the most beautiful. Paris gave the prize to Aphrodite because she promised him the most beautiful girl in the world, Helen of Troy. Unfortunately this minor decision set the scene for the Trojan War. This story is called "The Judgement of Paris."

This card suggests death and rebirth and is a representation of eternal life.

Pluto, (Hades in Greek mythology), Lord of the Underworld, spotted the beautiful maiden Persephone picking poppies and kidnapped her to be his queen in the realm of the dead. Her mother Demeter, the Earth goddess, was so overcome by grief that she neglected the land while she searched for her daughter. Crops withered and died and the earth became barren, and a perpetual winter developed. Zeus intervened and sent Hermes to bring Persephone back, but unfortunately she had eaten the food of the dead, in the form of six pomegranate seeds, making her bound to Pluto (Hades). She was able to go to her mother for only part of the year, and her arrival is marked by the rebirth of spring, but at the end of summer she had to return, whereas the earth becomes barren again.

The number of the Judgement card is twenty and can be reduced to the number two ( $2 + 0 = 2$ ), but the zero also has significance to this card. Zero suggests that we are on the cusp of something, it represents the blank space of infinity, the void from which life arises and to which it returns. Zero is a symbol of complete potentiality. Two is the number that represents pairs or duality, such as man and woman, light and dark, spirit and matter, and so on. This number is passive, intuitive, receptive and emotional, and symbolises the drive, harmony and balance that are needed in our lives.

The astrological influence for Judgement is the planet Pluto, which is in the eighth house. It is the home of birth and death or beginnings and endings, and refers to gained possessions, all financial matters, sexual nature and deep relationships. It tells us about our ability to achieve or create something new. Therefore, influences us to build, produce or make, or, conversely, destroy, consume or undo. Pluto allows us to evaluate and to understand how we are inclined to exploit the potential for creativity, in ourselves and in our life. It reflects the need to re-evaluate ourselves, and accomplishments in an open and honest way. In other words we need to carefully look at our faults. We are

being given another chance and a new lease of life. In the end we are all responsible for our lives, so the more aware we are of our choices, the more responsible we will be for our own individual fate.

### **Interpretation**

When the Judgement card appears in a spread you are going through a period of renewal in your life, good things are about to happen and you will be able to see things more clearly. Your behaviour is changing so it may mean leaving old habits and thoughts behind. It is a positive new beginning and you will be able to wipe the slate clean. New life is opening up for you and your outlook on life is much wider than it was before. Whatever has been holding you back is ending and you can now go forward with clarity and vision, and a more positive attitude. However, it is important that you deal with previous matters that you have put to one side, and accept any mistakes or failures that have occurred in the past, so that you can move forward to new successes.

You are being given the opportunity to take a good honest look at your life, but don't judge yourself too severely. It is time to celebrate the rewards of your past efforts, perhaps a promotion or some kind of recognition within your line of work, or maybe greater success with your own business. If you are thinking about a career change this is a great time to do it. The Judgement card is also good for new relationships and new homes, so maybe a new partnership or new relationship is about to be formed. If you have been ill or depressed you will enjoy better health and feel reinvigorated. It is also a card symbolising spiritual development, creativity and renewal, therefore you may find that your creativity and spirituality is surfacing, or you find a deep sense of spiritual fulfilment. If there are any legal matters that need sorting out decisions will go in your favour.

This is a chance to acknowledge your untapped potential and resources that have remained inactive and to evaluate how true to yourself you have been.

Whatever lies ahead you have reached the end of a cycle and situations are getting better and developing. Before you start something new think about what happened in the past, and accept that you may have made some mistakes too, then carry on when you are satisfied that you did your best. Past failure or suffering will begin to disappear and you will experience a much improved mind or spiritual nature that brings with it new ideas, new areas of discovery and new beginnings.

### **Negative**

There may be a danger of being compelled to undertake certain work in order to comply with the needs of a group, such as a gang or mob, which may lead to organised antagonism and resulting in ruthless behaviour. You may be frustrated with confusing problems and finding it hard to obtain the answers you need to solve them. Legal matters may go against you. Perhaps you have to face the consequences of your actions and a severe judgement is about to be made. You want to break away from the past and have a fresh start but don't know whether to spend time and money in a new relationship or work project. Decisions that need to be made are being put off and stopping you from moving on. You need to stop hesitating and make your mind up otherwise you could lose out on opportunities.

### **People**

Those who are sincere and show themselves as they are. Those going through a period of renewal. Those who change their behaviour and are showing their true personality. The Court. Judges. Those who are learning the lessons of their past mistakes. Those who are entering new phases of experience.

## 21 The World



**Astrological Influence:** Saturn

**Key words and phrases:** Reaching a natural conclusion; the end; fulfilment; attainment; culmination; harmony; well-being; the end of a phase and starting something new; unity; elation; a journey's end; ecstasy; reaching your goal; receiving a prize; completeness; wholeness; oneness; a job well done; admiration; beauty; completion of a cycle; success; triumph; freedom; liberation; peace; the joy of life; an

ideal state of being; expanded horizons; the end of the rainbow; a pleasant surprise; enlightenment; physical and emotional health; spiritual well-being; the best possible outcome; travel; a journey; change of job or residence; readiness to start again; commencement; graduation.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

The World card depicts a naked figure clad in a long flowing scarf, and holding two wands while dancing inside an oval wreath, as an angel, a lion, a bull and an eagle watch attentively.

The **figure** may be androgynous (hermaphrodite), but we are not too sure because the flowing scarf is covering the **figure's** genitals. A hermaphrodite is said to be the perfect being, the perfect blending of the male and female qualities, and symbolises the achievement of intuitive insight.

The **long flowing scarf** may represent the Olympian stole that was given to a winning person who has been newly initiated as a member of the Olympians. It is a symbol of triumphant achievement.

Many **sacred dances** follow spiral or circle patterns. Spiral patterns represent death and rebirth or endings and beginnings, and is a way of acknowledging and celebrating life's pattern of change and evolution, and **circle dances** symbolise life's pattern of change and flow. The Zuni Indians chant and dance **spiral dances** to celebrate the arrival of the New Year.

In Hindu mythology Nataraja is a name for Shiva as the Lord of the Dance, and in this form he is depicted with his left leg raised and **dancing** inside a ring of flames. Shiva is a creator god, a moon god, god of destruction, fertility, medicine and strengthener of men. He developed a third eye in his forehead that could emit his radiance with so much power that it could destroy demons. His first wife Sati killed herself as a sacrifice because Shiva was not invited to the feast of the gods, so he became Nataraja, **Lord of the Dance**, and performed a **funeral dance** in her honour. He then spent many days in meditation and brought Sati back to life in the form of Uma.

The **wreath** is an ancient symbol of wholeness, knowledge and wisdom. In the Greco-Roman world the **laurel wreath** was a symbol of status, victory, truce, peace, purification and divination. The **wreath** depicted on the World card is oval shaped and has a connection with the Cosmic Egg, which is the universal symbol for creation, probably the thing that life came from. It symbolises birth, resurrection, luck, health and wealth. It is also associated with the season of spring and is a symbol of potential and opportunities to come, and suggests an ending but also continuation in a different way.

The figure is holding a **wand** in each hand, which symbolises the power within is "magical." According to ancient belief a **vertical wand** represents the ability to provide the link between the higher and lower worlds and welcome divine spirit. It is associated with the male principle and describes the movement from the lowest point in our fortune (nadir), to the highest point in our fortune (zenith), from deep despair to great prosperity, from above to below, from

Heaven to Earth and vice versa. The **wand** symbolises destiny and fate, and represents the authority of the Self and is related to the number one.

There are another four figures illustrated on this card, an angel, an eagle, a bull and a lion and they represent the balance between the four elements, air, water, earth and fire, but there are also individual symbolic meanings for these figures.

**Angels** are heavenly messengers and guardians of the light that shines down from the heavens that touches the lives of humans. **Archangels** spread the creative will of God, bring loving guidance, protection and divine messages to humankind. They help us to steer a positive and pure path in life.

**Eagles**, according to the Native Americans, are thought to have a very similar spirit to humans. They embody great vision and observation, and have tremendous power to overcome all enemies and to strike with perfect intent. The **eagle** signifies vigilance, speed, power, keenness, perception, awareness and objectivity. In the Christian faith the **eagle** symbolises omnipotence (absolute power) and omniscience (all knowing), and signifies authority, control and superiority.

**Bulls** represent creative power, masculinity and assertiveness, and in ancient folklore slaying a **bull** marked the initiation into the world of the mature adult who succeeded in mastering his instincts. The **bull** is an enormously symbolic animal representing the sun, the moon, earth, sky, heat, rain, male ardour, virility, feminine procreation, matriarch and patriarch, death and regeneration. In cave art the **bull** was a symbol of vital energy.

**Lions** were thought of as solar animals endowed with divine qualities. They were a symbol and the embodiment of earthly power and superiority, vigilance, bravery, fortitude and victory. In the ancient world, **lions** were thought to be guardians of the underworld and a symbol of divine protection.



Buddah and Christ associated the **lion** as a symbol of spiritual zeal and enlightenment. Today the **lion** is a symbol of strength, power, leadership, dignity and courage.

On the whole, the World card symbolises the successful completion of an important cycle in the Fool's journey. All of his lessons and experiences have been integrated and absorbed, and completion has been achieved. He is now at the top of his journey and is free to start a positive new phase of growth. When we have reached this position we can take life a little bit easier because our experience will intuitively guide us to what we know is right. We have learned to accept the ups and downs, and even if it still frustrates us we will have a better idea of how to deal with it. We understand what makes us tick, and we are in harmony with our true nature and just being ourselves. This card suggests that we are free, more self-aware and have more spiritual understanding. However, there are many cycles in our lives and within each cycle are many phases. Therefore, before we can begin a new cycle we will need to end the old one first, and we will need to make sure that we have tied up all the loose ends of the phases within that cycle.

The number of the World card is twenty-one, which reduces to the number three ( $2 + 1 = 3$ ). This number expresses all aspects of creation, including birth, life and death; past, present and future; mind, body and soul. In China it is a perfect number expressing wholeness and fulfilment through the joining of Heaven, Earth and humanity. In Pythagorean theory the number three represents perfect harmony, union of unity (one) and diversity (two). In Islam it symbolises the soul.

The astrological Influence of the World card is the planet Saturn. It is an ambitious planet with high hopes and the ability to take responsibility. Saturn influences us to progress through hard work and overcome any difficulties. It is a planet of structure, boundaries, self-discipline and the limitations of matter. It suggests that we must come to terms with the limitations of the

physical world if spiritual progress is to be made. Without Saturn nothing will ever be achieved or brought into material reality. Some of the attributes of Saturn are the qualities of patience, perseverance, tenacity, self-control, wisdom, lucidity, endurance, resignation and even fatalism. However, these days we are always in a hurry and eager to create our own reality without taking the time to understand and reflect on what is going on around us. We must be receptive and attentive to the world as it is, and not how we would like it to be. Saturn's influence makes us stable, careful, far-sighted, determined, patient and tenacious. This is the end of the cycle and we have learned all of our lessons and have achieved integration, balance, and spiritual awareness.

### **Interpretation**

When the World card appears in a spread it means that you have reached the end of a cycle in your life or something has been successfully completed. This is a card of triumph, happiness and success and it is a time for celebration. Your dream has come true and you are now free to move forward with confidence.

It may be that it is the beginning of a new phase in your partnership, perhaps you and your partner were going through a difficult time and now it is over, or maybe you are starting a family. It could be that your children are leaving home and you are going to enjoy the personal freedom this will bring. Whatever the situation with your relationships you are feeling happy and secure.

There may also be fortunate changes in your business and finances, and you will receive what is rightfully yours. Your efforts are appreciated and those in power trust you and will probably help you to improve your status, maybe through a promotion or some kind of recognition. Perhaps you will have the opportunity to advance your profession by expanding your business interests.

Whatever the situation with your career you will be delighted with the outcome.

Through life's misfortunes you have gained a growing sense of self-knowledge and spiritual understanding and should be complemented on what you have achieved physically and spiritually. This card also suggests travel and relocation, so if you are moving to a new home it will be a change for the better. Maybe you are literally exploring new horizons, you may move overseas for a period of time or even emigrate, but whatever the situation there is a possibility of advantageous travel abroad and a chance to see more of the world.

Anything is possible, and you could even receive money from more than one source, perhaps a tax refund or interest on an account. However, you will soon be starting a new cycle that will bring more challenges and opportunities with it, but make sure that you go in the direction that *you* want to go in and who *you* want to go with, and not in the direction just to please others. There are many opportunities open to you, everything is achievable, all is well and you will be successful.

### **Negative**

You may find you have lost respect through a lack of self-discipline or responsibility. There may be setbacks as a result of your failure to seize opportunities, or through neglecting to make adequate preparations. If you don't take advantage of the opportunities that are available to you then you could live to regret it in the future. Perhaps restrictive influences are stopping you from reaching your goals, maybe you are unemployed and have got yourself in a rut or certain circumstances are being delayed by others, such as people breaking appointments, and so on. It could be that you are upset by a loved one's irrational behaviour and you don't know how to deal with it. Perhaps you are blocking a potential partner because you are tied to the past

in some way. Eventually you will overcome your obstacles or limitations and come out on top.

### **People**

Those who are happy, fulfilled, and have everything they could wish for.

Those who are generous and gentle. Those who have great potential, inner resources or powers. Those who have reached their goals. Those who travel overseas either to work or explore the world. Those who advance because of their integrity, dependability, and practical common sense.

# The Minor Arcana Interpretations

## Wands

**Element:** Fire.

**Astrological signs:** Aries, Leo, Sagittarius.

**Season:** Spring, (March – April – May)

**Key words and phrases:** Career. Business opportunities. Travel. Creativity. New projects. Enterprise. Growth. Ambition. Development. Enthusiasm. Negotiation. New ventures.

The suit of Wands are similar to the Clubs in an ordinary deck of cards. Wands relate to the fire element and are associated with optimism, growth, creativity, energy, movement, work and enterprise. They also represent travel and can indicate pleasure and business trips, or inner journeys of the mind. Wands signify career matters, property matters, deals, negotiations, social events and gatherings. It is a masculine suit and associated with the zodiacal signs of Aries, Leo and Sagittarius.

# Ace of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** New things starting. Beginning of an enterprise or family. New growth. Creation. Start of a journey. Initiation. Power. Inspiration.

## **Symbolic Meaning**

In the Waite deck the Ace of Wands is depicted as a hand emerging from a grey cloud holding on to a wand that is sprouting new leaves, and a castle stands on a hill in the background.

In Christian iconography, God is sometimes represented as a hand emerging from a cloud. The **hand** indicates an opportunity, an offer, a proposal or partnership. It also signifies that something may be “close at hand.”

The **cloud** is a symbol of fecundity and revelation, and can also signify potential. As a rainmaker it is connected with fertility and nature’s abundance.

The **grey** colour of the **cloud** suggests that we need to take a current situation seriously. **Grey** also means dedication and service.

The **new leaves** indicate new beginnings, new ideas, new growth and new developments.

The **castle** symbolises power, authority, protection and security.

The **hill** signifies success is assured and we have reached a goal. We are “on top of the hill.”

On the whole, the Ace of Wands relates to career opportunities and new directions in our working life. This could come in the shape of a brilliant idea, a challenging new project or job. It is our creative force coupled with enthusiasm and the innovative ideas that have the potential to succeed. It suggests that with optimism and self-confidence success is possible, however we must put in the necessary energy to make it happen. We will have the opportunity to use our imagination and skills. Fresh ideas, new challenges and new experiences will empower us to reach our goals.

This card is related with the number one in numerology and the fire element in astrology therefore, the sections on Tarot and Numerology and Tarot and Astrology will supply more information associated with the Ace of Wands.

### **Interpretation**

When the Ace of Wands appears in a spread it indicates that there are career opportunities coming up and it might be a good time to send out your curriculum vitae and references. The action you take now will be the start of something new, and could lead to a new career, new relationships, or a major change in your lifestyle. You have all the energy you need to fulfil your ambitions, so it is okay to go ahead and show strength and determination in your actions.

Something may happen to improve your career, which could turn out to be the beginning of a remarkable creative phase. You will be filled with excitement and inspiration as you start to lay the foundations for a stable and long-lasting venture. It may mean hard work to bring all of your efforts to success, but whatever kind of work you do, or are about to engage in, is about to be revitalised. This may come through a clever idea that urges you to create a new goal, start on a new project, or in the form of a new job. Enjoy the journey.

**Negative**

When the Ace of Wands is in a negative position it may feel like all the effort you have put in has all been in vain, and you feel impatient and frustrated. Perhaps you have been too demanding, or your selfish behaviour has led to the difficult position you now find yourself in. Maybe you were too overconfident with your plans and they have failed to live up to your hopes and dreams.

**People**

Those who know what they want and take their time to do it. Those who are sure of the facts before they take action. Those who are persevering, tenacious, courageous and hardworking. Those who keep their feet on the ground. Those who stay within their field of knowledge and keep contact with physical and material reality.



## Two of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** A waiting period. A time of transition. Creative potential. Improvements through hard work. Ambition. Planning. Negotiation. Partnerships. Imminent success. Decision. Going in the right direction. Working with a partner. Obstacles.

### Symbolic Meaning

A man looks from the battlements of a tower over the seashore below. He holds a globe of the world in his right hand and a staff in his left hand, which rests on the battlements. Another staff is fixed to the tower, and a tapestry of the rose, the cross and the lily is attached to the battlements on his left.

Viewing the landscape from a **tower** signifies increased self-confidence, or may warn us of what is going on around us.

A tranquil **sea** signifies that our emotional life is becoming calmer and smoother.

The **globe of the world** is a symbol for the natural support and nurturing we all need, and can also signify the networks we have established, and probably taken for granted. It is asking, do we feel that our planet nourishes us and do we feel that we are in control of it? Is it our mother or our servant?

The held **staff** signifies the support we may need to help us through life. It can also mean a journey that we need to begin, possibly of the mind. The fixed **staff** suggests that we are able to create stability and support, and have the ability to stand firm when we are faced with difficulty.

In Christianity the **red rose** symbolises the blood of martyrs and life after death. The Rosicrucian Brotherhood, a sect founded in Europe in the 15<sup>th</sup> century, combined the symbol of the rose with the cross to form the emblem of their society.

We usually relate the **rose** with love and perhaps a wedding. It is a symbol of the heart, perfection, and sacred, romantic and sensual love. The **rose** has a connection with the centre of the Wheel of Life, the never-ending cycle of life and death. The centre or hub is the point of liberation, pointing to the spiritual journey as a movement from the edge to the centre, from activity to stillness, much like the purpose of meditation.

The **cross** was used as a Christian symbol to represent the union of Heaven and earth, however because of its various spiritual and esoteric associations it has become connected with healing and miraculous powers. It stands for the transforming of spirit into substance. The **cross** is closely linked to the symbolism of four, a number signifying wholeness, perfection, harmony, order, stability and solidity.

In alchemy, **lillies** are a symbol of purity, and also linked with courage and perseverance. They are identified with Christian devotion, purity and innocence, but also repentance. In older traditions **lillies** are associated with fertility and erotic love, and are a symbol of fecundity in ancient Greece and Egypt.

On the whole, the Two of Wands is a symbol of achievement in business and planning, and suggests that we have become established and independent. We are now in a position to make decisions, and are aware of the possibilities before we begin to push forward. We have done our homework and the fears of the past no longer affect us. It is important to be clear of our desires and motivations before choosing the path we wish to follow, and our efforts will be rewarded as long as we can overcome the obstacles that are ahead of us.

This card is related to the number two in numerology therefore, if any more information is required please refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Two of Wands appears new opportunities are being offered possibly because of your achievement in business, and you are ready to make a decision as to what to do next. Perhaps you have achieved success by running your own business and have become well respected in your field of enterprise. Maybe you are thinking of bringing in a new business partner or deciding whether to turn it into a joint venture. You will need to act on your intuition to put things into perspective. Give yourself time to think things over, or watch and wait to see if your plans produce any results. It is time to take charge, demonstrate your perseverance and do not let anything stand in your way. Perhaps you are involved with buying and selling property, or moving house or business premises. Whatever the situation, contracts will have to be signed, however you have considerable ability and foresight to take the initiative, therefore any deals will work out in your favour.

### **Negative**

When the Two of Wands is in a negative position, business, creative or financial partnerships are not working out. There may be delays in property transactions. Things are not working out as you had planned. An established partnership may not be working because of a clash of personalities or disagreement of some kind. You decide to take on a new challenge.

### **People**

Those who enter into a business or personal partnership. Those involved with negotiations or deals. Those who feel that they must join forces to build, produce, create and achieve together something strong and permanent.

## Three of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** New job or project. News about work. Work-related travel. Teamwork. Negotiations. New ideas. Our ship is coming in. Nurturing the early stages of a project. Trade and negotiation. Practical knowledge. Visualising possibilities.

### Symbolic Meaning

A figure is standing on the edge of a cliff looking out to sea at three sailing ships. There are three staves planted in the ground and the figure holds on to one of them for support.

The **cliff** symbolises achievement, and going beyond our present or former self towards a new and productive position in life. It may also signify the need to decide how to deal with a situation, which may involve a risk of some kind.

The **sea** signifies our natural and creative potential, and the existence of our hidden potential that lies in the depths of our psyche that can be developed to create our true and total self.

**Ships** symbolise a transition, moving from one phase to another, making a new start, or breaking away from the past. They symbolise the ups and downs through life from the death of something to transformation. **Ships** are a symbol of salvation and regeneration, and can mean a voyage of discovery or our “ship is coming in.” In ancient Egypt, sails symbolised wind and breath, representing the fickle “winds of fate” that can blow us off course.

The **stave** that the figure is holding on to signifies that we may need help and support through our journey in life and it is there if we need it.

On the whole, the Three of Wands represents the initial completion of a project, but there is still much work to do. Past efforts are starting to pay off and we have reached an important stage in our lives, but there are new possibilities and opportunities that need to be developed. Strength, determination and focus is now needed, and if we think that we have gone as far as we can by ourselves then someone will be willing to give their assistance. It is time to promote ourselves and show our talents.

This card relates to the number three in numerology therefore, any other information associated with the Three of Wands can be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Three of Wands is in a spread new opportunities are coming your way and a new job is possible. You are filled with enthusiasm and inspiration as your business becomes active. You are ready to begin the next phase of something you have already been involved with, and you are able to build it up now or develop your skills and ideas further. A successful outcome is indicated but a lot of hard work and a solid basis will be required for it to prosper. The Three of Wands signifies partnerships and cooperation in business, which suggests that someone may enter your life who can offer advice and assistance, or maybe a job or other opportunity. It is a good time to promote yourself and your talents, so make good use of your skills and build your enterprise on firm foundations. This card also signifies travel, and a short journey or an enquiry that you make now has every chance of being successful. Your material and social situation is under way.

### **Negative**

When the Three of Wands is in a negative position, opportunities may be lost due to obstinacy and arrogance. You may be wasting your talents, skills and efforts. Be careful of any help that is offered to you, as it may involve betrayal and disappointment. Things may not be developing the way you had hoped

for. A lack of confidence is making you careless, which is damaging your reputation.

### **People**

Those who take the initiative to progress in their professional life and social situation. Those who are exploring new horizons. Those who have the foresight to plan ahead and anticipate any obstacles they may need to overcome. Those who are able to assume a responsible position and demonstrate leadership.

## Four of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** A happy and secure home. Putting down roots. Buying a house. Time for a well-deserved rest. Success. Time to celebrate your achievements with work. Holidays. Relaxation. Marriage or a committed relationship. Completion. Celebration. Harmony.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

In the foreground four staves are planted in the ground. A garland is suspended from the staves, and two female figures are seen waving bunches of flowers above their heads. There is also a bridge over the moat to the old manor house.

The **garland** can represent respect and recognition, or some kind of acknowledgement for work done or a task that has been completed, maybe an approval from our peers. As a decoration a **garland** may represent a time for celebration and fun.

Fresh **flowers** signify harmony, love and friendship, or the blossoming of our inner self. **Flowers** bring feelings of pleasure and beauty, and indicate freshness with what we are doing. Opening petals indicate new opportunities and new horizons that will lead to fulfilment.

The **bridge** signifies the transition between one stage of our life and another, and is a symbol of the connection between the ordinary and spiritual self. A **bridge** also signifies the emotional connection between ourselves and others, or various parts of our lives.

The **manor house** may indicate the need to expand our horizons or capabilities to establish ourselves more firmly, or to make a bolder statement about ourselves, such as an increase in prosperity.

On the whole, the Four of Wands is a time for celebration and positive interaction. It signifies harmony, peace and satisfaction, and the sense of achievement we feel after successfully completing a project or a period of work. There is every reason to celebrate as this card represents the settling of a conflict, prosperity, new opportunities, social events, or long-awaited rest and relaxation. Celebrations could come in the form of a successful legal settlement, the birth of a child, an engagement, a marriage, a committed relationship, moving to a bigger and better home, sharing our good fortune with others, or a well-earned holiday or break after all our hard work. However, sorry to spoil the party, but we must realise that when the fun is over we have to return to work in order to strengthen the foundations we are building for the future.

This card is related to the number four in numerology therefore, any other information associated with the Four of wands can be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

The Four of Wands usually appears when you have been going through a period of hard and stressful work, probably trying to reach a deadline. Now you can enjoy a period of peace and quiet, maybe by taking a holiday or a break of some kind. It is a time to recoup your strength and energy after a prolonged effort. The hard work has been completed and you have done a good job. Perhaps you are recovering from hardship and now find yourself in a more stable and reassuring situation because you are reaping the benefits and feel content with your well-earned success. You are free to enjoy the results of your hard work and it looks like it is going to last for a while longer.



There is a powerful sense of security and wellbeing in your life, your relationships are stable and marriage could be on the cards.

Creative achievements are also highlighted, so maybe you are thinking of refurbishing or renovating your home, or even moving to a new house. However, you need to be prepared to work harder to reach your goals, but I think you already know that. You are in a situation where you know you can show self-control, realism and constancy, and you are prepared to keep up the hard work. Just make sure that you have regained enough strength before going on to the next stage.

### **Negative**

It is not much different when negative, except that you may have an obstacle to overcome possibly a problem with property, such as delays to completion. You will still be heading towards achieving what you want, but there may not be the same amount of peace, prosperity and success. There may be unnecessary anxiety causing problems and difficulties. Be patient for a little longer and do not lose heart.

### **People**

Those who have their feet firmly planted on the ground. Those who are not afraid of hard work. Those who never go beyond their limitations. Those who are realistic. Those who do not like taking risks or venturing into the unknown. Those who only act when they have all the facts.

# Five of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** Unexpected problems. Competition. Conflict. Reckless actions. Collaboration. Self doubt. Strife. Irritation. Debate. Rivalry. Delays. Proving your abilities through adversity.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Five of Wands in the Waite deck depicts what seems to either look like a battle, competition, conflict or struggle between five young male opponents challenging each other with staves.

The **battle** signifies that we may be dealing with some sort of conflict or struggling to make a decision. It represents the personal **battles** and struggles that we all go through in our everyday lives. Perhaps we need to look at the people in our lives that we communicate with, maybe they are being aggressive towards us or domineering. The Five of Wands can also mean that we have a conflict between our head and heart.

Perhaps they are in **competition** with each other and trying to prove who has the best skill, talent or intellectual ability. **Competition** tests our confidence or assertiveness and gives us a feeling of self-worth. However, **competition** within a relationship can be damaging if we feel that we have to keep on verbally scoring points off our loved ones or the people we come into contact with everyday.

The **opponents** within this card may represent real people in our lives, or an element of ourselves that we are not happy with. Usually though, **opponents** will represent the people that we are having conflict with or some sort of power struggle with.

**Conflict** can come at us from all sorts of origin, such as work, love, sex, money, children, and so on, and often has no easy solution.

We may **struggle** to survive, make ends meet, or **struggle** to solve other problems. It could possibly be a conflict between two aspects of our mind, for example, between our conscious ego and some subconscious drive.

On the whole, the Five of Wands represents a period of uncertainty and the struggles, challenges and minor annoyances that we come up against within our everyday lives. It can also symbolise healthy competition or hidden rivals. This card represents one of those times when everything seems to be going against us and we justifiably feel the need to rise to the challenge. However, in order to resolve any conflict we must be willing to put away our ego and take the time to listen to the other person's point of view. Unfortunately, human nature has a habit of not backing down, and will usually strongly confront others in an effort to resolve the situation.

There is always some kind of conflict in our lives, it is inevitable and sometimes unavoidable, but it is not a call to arms. A disagreement is a disagreement and does not mean that we have to defend ourselves because we are under attack. We need to be willing to cooperate and be open to the ideas of others. Our egos can cause more trouble than its worth and never brings about a worthwhile solution. Although this card might suggest unavoidable trouble it also indicates that our energy will help us to effectively deal with it. It suggests that we must not let these irritations get the better of us and we should take time out to reflect on what really matters.

This card relates to the number five in numerology therefore, refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology to find other information associated with the Five of Wands.

## **Interpretation**

The Five of Wands usually appears when you are going through one of those times where nothing seems to run smoothly and you are facing a barrage of obstacles or delays. Perhaps this is due to a change in your life or a situation, and the future does not look very reassuring at this moment in time, which is making you feel somewhat insecure. Maybe you are in a situation of conflict or rivalry and have to compete to get what you want. Even so, you should not become a victim, stand up for yourself and be firm even though the pressure is on. If you are trying to voice your ideas, views or proposals on a certain subject and come up against conflicting views, you cannot deny others to put their own ideas forward even though it is frustrating.

There is always going to be power struggles or opposition in our lives, and we need to meet the challenge of competition because it is a good way of reassessing our attitudes, testing our skills, and overcoming the obstacles in order to achieve our goals or ambitions. Perhaps you are engaged in a quarrel or dispute with someone and you want to try to resolve the conflict and clear the air. Obviously you will have to exercise your personal integrity in a way that does not cause conflict, and usually trying to discuss the situation can be beneficial and can create harmony between you both.

The Five of Wands can also signify travel delays, legal action, and taking care when signing contracts or agreements. If you find yourself being challenged, suffering from irritations or setbacks, quarrelling, arguing and bickering, you need to draw on your inner reserves of strength, be courageous and patient, and retain your clarity when dealing with difficult situations. However, you need to be alert and aware of the obstacles and difficulties, leave nothing to chance, and be careful with whom you give your trust.

## **Negative**

When the five of Wands appears it indicates that disputes are likely to be resolved in court or through legal negotiations. You may have confused

thoughts and find it hard to make a decision. You are allowing failure to deter you and may feel that you have hit a dead end, which is causing you to have sudden bursts of anger. Perhaps you are being misinformed or being led astray.

### **People**

Those who have a strong temperament. Those who concern themselves with order and organisation. Those in control of a situation. Those who are aware of their responsibilities and their duty. Those who are open to compromise. Those who rise to the challenge. Those who become embroiled in a debate. Those having minor setbacks.

# Six of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** Victory. Triumph. Good news. Accomplishment. Promotion. Recognition. Success. Progress. Reward. Honours.

## Symbolic Meaning

In the Waite deck the Six of Wands depicts a man of authority proudly riding a white horse alongside his foot soldiers. He wears a laurel crown on his head and carries a staff that also has a laurel wreath hanging from it.

The **white horse** signifies increased strength, stamina and virility, and indicates that it is time to “take hold of the reins” and assume control. A **white horse** is a symbol of light, life and spiritual awareness and because of its speed can signify that we are moving swiftly towards our goal. The **horse** became a symbol of power and wealth for the native tribes of America after the Europeans introduced the **horse** to North America in the 16<sup>th</sup> century.

**Laurel leaves** were the crowning emblem of warriors and poets in the Greco-Roman world and also associated with Apollo. A **laurel crown** was a symbol of truce, victory, peace, divination and purification, and was a mark of honour given to people with outstanding strategic, intellectual or creative achievement.

The **staff** is a symbol of authority and rulership and implies royal and divine power. Through the centuries the **staff** has been used for imperial or kingly position.

The **foot soldiers** represent the need of a cause or crusade in order to give us a sense of identity. They could mean that we are looking for leadership or

that we are aware of being influenced by other people. **Soldiers** can also suggest that we must recognise our need to take the initiative or to identify what drives us.

On the whole, the Six of Wands represents the well-deserved successes we have achieved so far. Our past efforts have now been worthwhile and we can rest on our laurels for a short time. Everything we have worked for is now being recognised, which boosts our self-confidence and self-esteem.

However, we will have to watch that we do not party for too long because we still have quite a lot more to do. This is just the end of one cycle and another one is about to begin. We have every right to enjoy our victory or achievements so far, but we need to keep focused on our future goals. For the moment however, we can hold our heads up high because we have earned the applause for what we have achieved.

This card is related to the number six in numerology therefore, for more information associated with the Six of Wands please refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Six of Wands appears in a spread your past efforts are about to be rewarded. Your prospects look positive and you may receive some kind of recognition for your work, maybe in the form of a promotion or an increase in salary, or perhaps by achieving honours through study. It is a good card if you are coming out of a period of struggle, and suggests that you can relax a little bit more. You will overcome the obstacles that seemed to block your progress and you will feel extremely pleased with yourself. Keep on going because you will get there in the end. Perhaps you have a good potential for leadership and may be about to be promoted into such a position. However, remember and acknowledge the people who have supported you along the way. Good news and positive changes are coming, negotiations will go well, agreements will be

reached, and your problems will be solved. For the moment you can celebrate, but just focus on your goals and victory will be assured.

### **Negative**

Usually when the Six of Wands is in a negative position, it suggests that most of your difficulties may be caused by other people. Other people may be having an adverse effect on you through such things as bad workmanship or using delaying tactics. Perhaps someone may win some kind of battle against you. It is not a good time to push forward, hold back until the situation becomes better.

### **People**

Those who receive acclaim for their successes. Those who put in the effort to achieve their goals. Those who win the “battle.”



## Seven of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** Taking a stand. Courage. Bravery. Holding firm against opposition. Challenge. Success against obstacles. Determination. Having the advantage. Good results. Self-confidence. Valour. Competition. Assertion. Problems solved.

### Symbolic Meaning

In the Waite deck the Seven of Wands depicts a young man holding his staff in a defensive position while standing on top of a hill and ready to do battle with six opponents.

**Battling** can suggest that we may feel invaded by a particular person or circumstance and we have to defend our personal space or situation, or it could signify someone who is trying to bully or abuse us.

**Fighting** represents the personal **battles** and struggles of our everyday lives. **Fighting** usually indicates that we are confronting our need for independence. Is there someone or something invading our space?

Being **armed** signifies that we are ready for the fight, either feeling aggressive or being prepared, and usually means that we are in control of the situation.

Being on top of a **hill** signifies that success is assured and our goal will be reached against all obstacles and opposition. A **hill** also suggests that we are aware of our own vision of what we want to achieve and have worked hard to reach it, and we are now able to survey and assess the results of what we have done.

On the whole, the Seven of Wands signifies a period when we have to work extremely hard, and denotes a struggle where tenacity and perseverance is needed. The odds may be against us but we will stand firm and fend off the competition or obstacles that are ahead of us. The circumstances around us cannot be changed, but that does not mean that we are unable to be in full control of how we react and respond to them. Our obstacles will fall by the wayside if we can find the strength of character and courage to fight off the competition to achieve the status or position we have been aiming for. We may be challenged to fight for what we want or have, or may even have to defend what we believe, but if we go into battle with an open mind and we are able to listen to suggestions or grievances without becoming aggressive we will probably win the battle. Apart from that, healthy competition helps us to develop our talents and spurs us on to achieve our personal best. So, if we can stand firm and have faith in what we are aiming for or believe in, then with a little more effort we will be successful.

This card is related to the number seven in numerology therefore, if more information is required then turn to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

The Seven of Wands in a spread suggests that you may be challenged to defend your values, beliefs or circumstances, and need to draw on your inner strength and courage to fight against adversity. Perhaps a situation or some kind of conflict is coming to a head, maybe there is some test that you have to face, or you feel that your present position is being opposed. Do not let others take advantage of you, be prepared to defend your position and do not give up, because if you put in the energy and effort then you will be successful. Take a stand and defend your position, only by being assertive and holding firm to what you believe in will enable you to win the day. There may be competition from others but through your efforts and hard work you will be rewarded. Your personal resolve, skill, courage and determination are necessary if you are to be successful. It may not be easy, but believe you can

handle it because you have the ability to cope with the challenge, just trust your intuition and judgement.

If you are involved in a business transaction you may have to face some stiff competition, which could come in the form of a job or career move, but this card suggests that your ability to do the job will make this move successful. Creative pursuits are also favoured, so perhaps you may be entering a period of learning. The Seven of Wands can suggest problems in personal relationships, therefore there may be some specific issues that need resolving with loved ones or people you have close contact with. You are able to hold your own in an argument, so stop doubting and be decisive.

### **Negative**

In a negative position, the Seven of Wands suggests that you need to sort out the worst of the problems and avoid taking on any more responsibilities at the moment. There may be an embarrassing situation coming and it will feel like circumstances are slipping out of your control. Perhaps you are being troubled by unsatisfactory relationships, and you are becoming hostile through defending yourself from being hurt. Too many worries and anxiety may get the better of you and affect your judgement.

### **People**

Those who are courageous and sure of themselves, their qualities and their worth. Those who do not hesitate to devote themselves entirely to their work. Those who always bring their ventures to fruition. Those who are serious, reliable and can be trusted. Those who stand their ground. Those who make things happen.

## Eight of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** Movement. Activation. Full steam ahead. Speed. Flight. Travel by air. News coming in. An opportunity to prove ourselves. Passion. Acceleration in affairs. A flurry of activity. Signals. Productivity. New ideas. A holiday. Fast progress. The end of delay and stagnation. Communication.

### Symbolic Meaning

In the Waite deck, eight staves are shown flying at an angle across the sky. A river is cutting across the land below and a grand house stands on a hilltop in the background.

The **flying staves** symbolise a release from stress or pressure and liberation from our physical cares or restrictions enabling us to move on to new heights. They may represent a promotion or the urge to flaunt our accomplishments. **Flying staves** can also refer to our plans or ideas taking off and becoming successful.

The **river** signifies peace and comfort or going with the scheme of things or events. It can stand for our potential and our ability to create a new life, and suggests that we are aware of the flow of our emotions.

The **grand house** indicates that we may have a need to expand our horizons or capabilities and to establish ourselves more firmly. We just need to be sure that we do not take on more that we can handle.

The **hilltop** signifies that success is assured and no matter what obstacles or opposition we come up against our goals will be reached.

On the whole, the Eight of Wands represents motion, activity and movement towards a new goal. It is a decisive change after a period of delay, life is full of promise and anticipation and we have come into a very exciting phase. We may be starting on a new adventure, which may comprise of new activities or interests where we are able to demonstrate our skills and ideas to promote our goals and ambitions. Last minute travel bookings are also indicated with the Eight of Wands, so perhaps we may be visiting a country for the first time for a holiday or a business trip. A positive future is ahead of us and we have every opportunity to broaden our horizons no matter what direction we take. However, we need to remember that all adventures and activities come to an end sooner or later, therefore we need to be on the ball and ahead of the game to keep the success flowing. Fortunately, this is a time when we have been blessed with additional energy, so make the most of it.

This card is related to the number eight in numerology therefore, please refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology for other information associated with the Eight of Wands.

### **Interpretation**

The appearance of the Eight of Wands in a spread suggests that after a period of delay you are now entering an exciting and lively period, communications are highlighted and it is now time to get moving. You are approaching a goal and are filled with energy and enthusiasm. New ideas and any project you have been working on will start to take off, which will lead you into to a very busy time with your business affairs. There could be business travel here or abroad, and perhaps even a house move, or at the least some good news arriving from overseas. Things are starting to move and will quickly grow from strength to strength.

Friendship, love and romance is also highlighted, which could either develop as a sudden passionate love affair, or you may even fall head over heels in love. Perhaps you need to put your romantic head on and tell someone you

love them. However, it could also mean that things are up in the air and you need to decisively make your move and put your plans into action in order to attain a positive outcome. But rather than carelessly rushing in, it may be better to wait and see how things work out. Stay alert and pay attention to everything that comes your way for a while.

### **Negative**

If the Eight of wands is in a negative position there may be complications or mistakes as a result of trying to do too many things at once. Pressure may lead you to make hasty decisions. Perhaps you are keeping busy to stop you from facing some other inner pain. Maybe you feel that you are not busy enough and are not making any progress. There could be an air of jealousy with you about someone, or with someone about you. Events outside your control may disrupt your plans. You may have to rearrange trips or allow more time for them.

### **People**

Those who feel a necessary urge to change their usual occupation. Those who suddenly decide to go on a trip abroad. Those who are approaching a goal. Those who are on the go.

# Nine of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** Strength. Discipline. On guard. Fighting for your rights. Courage. Determination. Hidden enemies. Being watchful. Temporary truce. Standing up for yourself. Being prepared. Stability. Persistence. Control of events. Looking over your shoulder. Watching your back. Hidden enemies. Advantage. Standing up for yourself.

## Symbolic Meaning

In the Waite deck the Nine of Wands depicts a man with a bandage on his head standing on guard while holding a staff. Eight other staffs are planted in the ground to form a barrier behind him.

The **bandage** symbolises preservation or a protective healing process. It can signify a past unpleasant experience that we should learn from. A **bandage** represents our emotional bumps and scrapes, and perhaps there may be hurt feelings, emotional injuries or wounds that need attention.

**Standing on guard** signifies that we are being watchful and alert for information or an event, or it could be a signal to be aware of problems.

**Holding on to the staff** symbolises an inner conflict that needs sorting out. It signifies the support we need through life, and represents an inner journey of the mind that we may need to take however, it does suggest that we will receive help if we need it.

The **barrier** may symbolise that we are putting up **barriers** to protect us from becoming too intimate with others, or because we find it hard to express ourselves. A **barrier** can also represent a sense of security and ownership.

On the whole, the Nine of Wands signifies that we should not allow the challenges of life to dampen our spirit. It may indicate that we feel threatened and insecure, and the odds may look overwhelming but suggests that we need to be strong and not lose faith. We have to push through the obstacles and setbacks and put in one last effort to reach our goal. Through the trials of the past we become a stronger person, so no matter what is thrown at us we should be able to come through this period successfully. Setbacks should never stop us from pursuing our dreams, no matter what opposition we come up against the future looks positive and we will get through it. Sometimes life can be hard and puts us on the defence, it can make us feel wary but we should not allow ourselves to become bitter and resentful.

This card relates to the number nine in numerology, if any other information is required then refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology for information associated with the Nine of Wands.

### **Interpretation**

When the Nine of Wands appears in a spread it indicates that you are experiencing on-going difficulties and feel that you are losing faith in your own abilities. Stay true to what you believe in and stand your ground, however do not become stubborn and inflexible. Maybe you have been hurt in the past and now you are protecting yourself and being wary of making any future commitments, which may be due to the emotional wounds from a past relationship. You must obviously have become a stronger person due to your emotional experiences, but be aware that you do not come over as a cold and bitter person with others, especially with loved ones or those who are close to you.

Do not allow setbacks to cause you to lose incentive, stay focused on your goal. Have the courage and determination to succeed no matter what obstacles or opposition you come up against, and it is alright for you to stand your ground, but use gentle strength and do not make any demands, with



quiet resolution you will reach your goal. Obviously you do not want to allow yourself to be defeated, so by all means prepare yourself for any setbacks. As a matter of fact you know that you are equipped to face the challenges ahead and have the strength to tackle any problem, all you need to do is just put in the effort that will guarantee a successful outcome. You might be in a position where you have to bide your time, but you must stay faithful to the purpose or goal, and once you have overcome the obstacles you are home free. You just need to recognise that you are in a strong position to move forward. Even if everyone and everything seems to be against you at the moment, do not give up.

### **Negative**

In a negative position the Nine of Wands signifies that you may be suffering fatigue and are not in the mood to deal with more stressful situations. Maybe you are becoming impatient with having to wait, which is causing you constant tension and anxiety. Perhaps you feel that someone close to you is concealing something, and this distrust is making it difficult for you to relax. You may be lacking initiative, and feel unprepared and vulnerable, or you are suffering mentally due to overwork.

### **People**

Those who are determined to reach their goals. Those who are not discouraged by any difficulty or obstacle. Those who worry about their health. Those who lack resilience and energy. Those who are misusing their strength. Those who fight for their rights and reputation. Those who take extra precautions. Those who demonstrate their physical strength. Those who feel wary and guarded.

# Ten of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** Burden. Excessive activity. Oppression. Taking on more than you can handle. Stress. Accomplishment. Success. Striving to reach a goal or maintain a certain level. The price of success. Workaholic. Competence. Biting off more than you can chew. Progress and success through efforts.

## Symbolic Meaning

In the Waite deck it depicts a man awkwardly clutching ten staves and trying to carry them to the buildings beyond. He can hardly see where he is going and his posture seems eager but uncomfortable.

**Carrying** suggests that we need to look at what is being accepted as a burden or difficulty. Maybe we are carrying a load through life, which could be guilt that stems from childhood traumas. **Carrying** can also signify that someone keeps getting on our back and imposing their choices and values on you, or we may even enjoy playing the martyr.

**Buildings** can signify that we may feel trapped by responsibilities and need to escape, or we are looking for security without the responsibility. How we view **buildings** can tell us a lot about how we see ourselves, for example, a small cottage can be cosy and comfortable or cramped and unpleasant. They can represent the structure we try to give to our everyday lives, such as the attitudes and beliefs we have formed that have been built from experience and perception, as well as from our families and those around us. **Buildings** can also represent our self-image or the way we want to be seen by others or what we want from life.

The man's **posture** may signify our struggle to survive, to make ends meet, or to solve other problems. Maybe the cause is physical pain or pent-up emotion. A **bent back** signifies that we are feeling overburdened or downhearted. It can suggest that we need extra strength, support or courage in order to get through our situation. The **posture** of the man depicted on the Nine of Wands could mean that other people are not giving us enough support, and can also signify that a particular situation no longer has a place in our lives. If a situation is getting us down then we need to seriously consider physically getting out of it.

On the whole, the Nine of Wands is connected with ambition, success and power, winning is Important but unfortunately can lead to burden. It signifies that we must be careful not to be overwhelmed by our work or success. We need to look at the goals we have set for ourselves and know the limits to what we can achieve. Our work should feel rewarding, we should be able to enjoy it, and not have to struggle or take on more to secure our jobs and livelihood.

We probably think that our hard work will eventually pay off, is it worth all the suffering we may be going through? We set our goals so that we can improve our quality of life and not to neglect or destroy it. Therefore, we need to find ways to relieve our burden, otherwise our health could suffer because of burnout or fatigue.

Perhaps we should learn to delegate and take some time out now and again before other areas of our lives start to deteriorate. However, the Ten of Wands can also signify a time when we have to take on more responsibility because we are the only one who can, or we bury our heads in our work because there are other issues that we do not want to face. Nevertheless, whatever the situation we should not have to work under pressure or burden, or bite off more than we can chew.

This card relates to the number ten in numerology therefore, for other information related to the Ten of Wands please refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Ten of Wands appears in a spread suggests that you are struggling as a result of overburden and responsibility. You may be feeling under pressure and have experienced many changes in your life, which are now coming to a head. It probably seems too much at times, but surely you do not have to do everything yourself. Fatigue may be leaving you feeling drained and your life has become a struggle. It is an ideal time to trust the help and advice of the people whose opinions you value, so learn to delegate and take some time out to relax. It is important to realise your motives for overdoing it and ask yourself whether you enjoy the heavy responsibility.

Perhaps your career is that important to you that it has become obsessive behaviour and has put a strain on other aspects of your life. Your overwork may lead to health and relationship problems, it is all well and good to keep sight on your goals, but it might be a good idea to lower your expectations a little before you lose other areas of your life that are close to your heart. However, the Ten of Wands is about beginnings and endings, so a past cycle of your life may be coming to an end with new opportunities or a creative phase opening up for you. Nevertheless your determination and resolve will only pay off when you get rid of the posture or attitude that has been restraining you. You may even achieve some kind of recognition or promotion, but whatever it is do not let it consume your life, take time out to play.

### **Negative**

In a negative position the Ten of Wands suggests that your talents, abilities and skills may be being used in the wrong way. Perhaps you are making things hard for yourself and need to learn that there are no short cuts to achieve success. Maybe you are becoming overburdened to please others or

to avoid personal issues. You are not allowing yourself to relax and recover. If you are going through some kind of lawsuit there will be some loss on your side.

### **People**

Those who are burdened or overworked. Those who are extremely ambitious. Those who cause problems or burdens for others. Those who are promoted. Those who exceed in examinations. Those who have succeeded in their material or social lives. Those who are trying to do too much.

# Page of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** An opportunity coming your way. A change of career or job. Communication. Helpful information. A long-term plan. Enthusiasm. An enthusiastic young lover. A courageous and energetic young person. A faithful and loyal person. An inspirational and creative person.

## Symbolic Meaning

In the Waite deck the Page of Wands depicts a young person standing on arid ground seemingly studying a staff he/she is holding. In the distance are three mountains and even though nothing grows on the land the staff has leaves growing from it.

The **arid ground** can represent feelings of isolation or loneliness and the need for nurturing, or can symbolise a place of spiritual enlightenment. It may also signify that we are leaving our present state of mind or lifestyle behind and entering a period where anything is possible and choices have to be made. **Arid ground** can symbolise our Shadow, the components of our character and personality that our consciousness has not yet reached. Our subconscious is calling us to a new stage of development.

The staff that the Page of Wands seems to be **studying** suggests that we are going through a powerful learning process and signifies achievement and success in our chosen subjects. Maybe we are learning new skills or learning about the nature of people and relationships.

The **three mountains** symbolise that we are rising above the common pursuits of our everyday lives and going in search of our true self or the meaning of life. They represent the challenges, obstacles and goals in our lives. Our approach to the **mountains** signifies how we are approaching our

challenges, and can symbolise our current perspective on life. Being at the bottom of the **mountains** represents the challenges yet to come.

**Three** is a creative number and represents creative enterprise and growth, and signifies all that is active and fertile. The number **three** suggests material benefit from a successful harvest. It also indicates incoming news and anything to do with papers or paperwork. **Three** expresses all aspects of creation, including birth, life and death; past, present and future; and mind, body and soul.

The **leaves** on the staff symbolise a period of growth and fertility, and can also indicate time. Bright green **leaves** indicate fresh hope, new beginnings and new opportunities.

On the whole, the Page of Wands symbolises that we are at the beginning of a new creative phase and are about to revitalize our circumstances because we sense that we are ready to reveal our ideas and put them to the test. It signifies that we are passionate and goal orientated and ready to seize the challenge of any opportunities that may be ahead of us. Our whole situation is coloured with excitement and adventure in our desire to grow and learn, however we need to be able to keep up the energy and enthusiasm.

The Page of Wands can also represent someone who acts as a messenger who brings us the opportunities that stirs up our passion and inspires us to move forward with courage and creativity. This person could either be a child or an adult who is young at heart whose influence will help us to feel more independent, instil more energy into us, share our enthusiasm, and may reassure us that it is alright to take a risk now and again. Nevertheless, whatever we do, the belief and confidence we have built up in ourselves will get us through no matter what obstacles we have to overcome.

The Page of Wands is linked to the zodiacal sign of Sagittarius. For any other information related to this card refer to the section in this book on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Page of Wands appears in a spread you want things to change because you feel that life has become stagnant and you want to put more sparkle into it. You want to find a solution to your problems, and get out of this oppressed situation. You have a burning desire to try new things and maybe change your job or career. Focus on the direction you would like to take in life, let go of your fears and take a risk if you think it would benefit you in the long run. Do not sink into apathy, be a leader. You need to draw upon your creative potential, and be confident in the belief that you can tackle any challenges or obstacles in the effort to work towards your dreams.

Life is about to move at a faster pace, so engage in, or study interests that keep you working towards your goal. Good news and new opportunities that are on the way will excite you, making you more enthusiastic to push yourself towards your aims. This could be in the form of an inspirational idea that you are able to put into action, or someone may give you the help and support you need to achieve a plan that you are working on. Perhaps you are thinking of starting a course of study that will give you the opportunity to use your knowledge, skills, know-how, or talent.

The Page of Wands can signify people in your life. Maybe you are dealing with a child or teenager who is enthusiastic, energetic, takes risks and wants to be independent. You may also expect some important or happy news, which more than likely will come from a relative or a friend, perhaps a loyal friend or new friendship may turn out to be a new lover or new romance. It is a good time to start a new venture, so expect invitations, dealings with property, and short journeys. Success will need time and energy invested into it, just remember your responsibility in relationships.



## **Negative**

In a negative position the Page of Wands can signify that you may be dealing with a young child or teenager who is hyperactive and has difficulty with reading and writing. There may be financial losses due to extravagance or over-optimism. Perhaps your prestige has been damaged as a result of faulty judgement, carelessness or the unsound advice of others. Your projects may have failed due to a lack of wisdom or the inability to attract the support of significant people. Illnesses may result from overindulgence leading to excess weight and ailments associated with this, or from carelessness and lack of foresight. There may be trouble through legal, religious or educational affairs, also with publishing, such as the spreading of propaganda.

## **People**

Those who are young, energetic, passionate and determined to acquire knowledge. Those who are already knowledgeable in their own field of enterprise. Those who start an enquiry, an investigation or research. Those who are looking for the truth. Those who are creative and know how to exploit their talent. Those whose intentions may be driven by self-interest. Those with fixed ideas, lack in flexibility or the ability to adapt. Those who widen their education through travel. Those who bring exciting news. Those who are in connection with transport or communication. Those who are in connection with the spreading of ideas. Those who record facts. Those who travel and categorize foreign countries.

# Knight of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** A young man. Adventure. Energy. Journey. Travel. Excitement. Opportunity. Surprise. Willpower. Courage. Humanitarianism. Useful and beneficial changes. A change of residence. Widening horizons. Sudden changes. A proposition. Enterprise. New ideas and experiences. Challenge.

## Symbolic Meaning

In the Waite deck the Knight of Wands is depicted as a young man wearing armour and riding his horse while holding a staff with leaves growing from it. His helmet is decorated with a red plume and his garment is decorated with salamanders. This Knight is riding across barren land and in the distance are three mountains.

For a woman a **knight** can symbolise a romantic relationship or trying to find the perfect partner. For a man it can symbolise that he may be looking for the heroic part of himself, the part that has the confidence and courage to take risks. For male and female the **knight** may represent the spiritual side of our nature. Overall, the **knight** suggests that we are striving for honour and respect, and determined to be true to ourselves.

In medieval Europe, **armour** symbolised the knightly virtues of courage, protection, honour and strength. **Armour** is a symbol of chivalry, protection and the need to protect or be protected, possibly from something that is threatening us. It can signify that we are making an effort to protect ourselves against the emotions that fill us with anxiety, or we may feel a need to protect our ideas, ideals or dreams from ridicule or misunderstanding. **Armour** can also signify an inflexibility that prevents us from moving into new situations.

A **horse** symbolises life-giving but dangerous forces, as well as increased power, strength, stamina, vitality and virility. A **brown horse** represents the more rational and sensible side of our nature, and **riding a horse** indicates it is time to take control because we are moving swiftly towards our goal. A **horse** may also signify that we are going to be travelling in the near future.

The **staff** signifies the support we may need to help us through life, and suggests that we are able to create stability and support, and can stand firm in the presence of difficulty.

The **leaves** on the staff represent a period of growth and fertility, and can also indicate time. **Bright green leaves** indicate fresh hope, new beginnings and new opportunities.

The **red plume** signifies the display of our power and strength in achieving what we want. It may also be a signal of defiance, where we need to stand firm and show our colours. The colour **red** indicates intense emotions and a drive for survival, attaining goals, achievement, and passionate feelings. It is also the colour of the vital substance of life and death.

**Salamanders** shed their skin, and because of this it signifies that we are at a transition point and a major change is coming, which could be within ourselves or in our personal or professional lives. They are associated with our natural needs and drives. **Salamanders** can suggest that we may have been dealing with issues that are important to our sense of personal or professional survival. We may need to consider whether we have been ruthless or “cold-blooded” in our quest to reach our goals. They can also suggest that we may have adopted a passive stance on a situation that needed action.

The **barren land** can symbolise a place of spiritual enlightenment or indicate feelings of isolation or loneliness, and the need for nurturing. It may symbolise

our Shadow, the components of our character or personality that our consciousness has not yet reached. Our subconscious is calling us to a new stage of development. **Barren land** may signify that we are leaving our present state of mind or lifestyle behind and entering a period where everything is possible and choices have to be made.

The **three mountains** symbolise that we are rising above the common pursuits of everyday life and going in search of our true self or the meaning of life. Our approach to the **mountains** signifies how we are approaching our challenges, and our current perspective on life. Being at the bottom of a **mountain** represents the challenges yet to come.

**Three** is a creative number representing growth and creative enterprise. This number expresses all aspects of creation, such as, birth, life and death; past, present and future; and mind, body and soul. **Three** represents all that is active and fertile, and suggests material benefits as a result of a successful harvest. It indicates incoming news and anything associated with papers or paperwork.

On the whole, the Knight of Wands is full of energy and life. He signifies a busy period in our life and a drive for change. If we have been weighed down with problems and difficulties his spirit of adventure will lead us into the unknown, arming us with the confidence, zest and determination to try something new. Our hopes and ideas may develop into an exciting venture that could lead us in different directions. However, a few of this Knight's ideas may seem far-fetched, but he will always inspire us with the energy, courage and passion he puts into them. He hates being held back and has a habit of jumping in on situations without thinking about it, or planning it out. For him it is the right way to be, so perhaps we should take a leaf out of his book and do something on the spur of the moment and have some fun. The Knight of Wands also indicates travel, adventure, exploration and house moves either for business or pleasure, therefore we can expect changes coming in our lives

that require us to make some phone calls, write some letters or make a few journeys.

The Knight of Wands is linked to the fire element of the zodiacal signs of Aries, Leo and Sagittarius. For any other information regarding this card, refer to the section in this book on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Knight of Wands appears in a spread it usually signifies that you or a younger man in your life have big plans for the future and maybe even a change of environment. If this person is not you then it is someone who has the power, determination and drive to achieve what he wants, and the energy and creativity to succeed. However, if this card does represent you, then you feel that something better is just around the corner and you are ready to take a step into the unknown.

This could be the start or end of something significant, socially you will have many invitations that may lead to an improvement in your romantic relationships, and possibly the start of a sexual relationship. Perhaps you are moving house and your motive is to get away from an oppressive person or circumstance because you do not like to be held back or controlled. Change is in the air, activity and movement and the spirit of adventure is about to enter your life. Maybe you are going to travel abroad for a holiday or stay on a more permanent basis, perhaps for work. This could be a phase where you receive many potential job offers, so you can expect news confirming this through phone calls and letters. You may be starting on a creative project or be offered a job opportunity that could lead to a long-lasting achievement, or perhaps you make a journey for work that could turn out to be very productive.

However, the Knight of Wands is impetuous and often jumps in too quickly without thinking or planning when he is pursuing his goals, and often becomes bored very easily. He loves the challenge and is good at starting any project,

but has a problem when it comes to finishing it. In a woman's reading, the Knight of Wands may be a man who enters your life that you take a shine to hoping that it may be the start of a possible relationship, however, beware because he may lack commitment and not be necessarily loyal to the relationship.

Overall, what you really need to think about when this card appears is whether this Knight's confidence and passion is an asset or anguish to you. Is it an aspect of you, someone else or the mood of the situation around you? If your answer is yes, then you may need a change. If you feel that you are not blessed with this Knight's energy and passion, then try to get out of your rut and escape into his world of adventure, excitement and risk taking by trying something new or going out and having some fun.

### **Negative**

In a negative position the Knight of Wands suggests that there is uncertainty, stress and difficulty with trying to work out where you are up to and what you need to be doing. Your ideas are becoming obsessive. Maybe you are doing what has been asked of you but you are not questioning the consequences of your actions. Perhaps you are being demanding, obstinate and stubborn. You are acting without thinking and your temper is getting you into trouble, which is leading to quarrels with your friends and broken relationships. You are being too sure of yourself and your abilities, which is making you reckless and irresponsible and leading to misfortune or setbacks in speculation, investment or enterprise. You should let time take its course and stop trying to force issues or results.

### **People**

Those who are self-confident and utterly sure of their talents. Those who will boldly go where no-one has gone before. Those who make things happen. Those who rise to the occasion. Those who are passionate and feel strong loyalties. Those who are charming and seductive. Those who seek novelty,

change and excitement. Those who pursue sexual conquests. Those who boast.

Those who are presumptuous, impetuous and restless. Those who cannot put down roots or make commitments. Those who are ready to fight. Those who have a chip on their shoulder. Those who are hot-tempered.

# Queen of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** Mature woman. Independent thought. Generous. Attractive and magnetic. Strength. Exuberance. Courage. Creativity. Ambitious. Logical mind. Inspiration. Love of nature. Balances family and career interests. Love of life. Very passionate. Practical. Conviction. Stable situation. Self-control. Profitable situation. Sense of order.

## Symbolic Meaning

A queen wearing her crown, a gold or yellow robe and a grey mantle sits on her throne while holding a staff in her right hand and a sunflower in her left hand. Lions are sculpted on the arms of her throne and a black cat sits in front of her.

The **queen** symbolises female authority and readiness to take on a position of authority. She can signify growing feelings of self-empowerment and a sense of being in control of our lives. A **queen** may also represent our mother or women in authority that we may meet.

The **throne** is a seat of power and authority in both temporal and spiritual realm. Traditionally it is a symbol of sovereignty, divine authority and power. A **throne** can represent our ability to belong to groups, or to society.

The **gold or yellow robe** symbolises consciousness, awareness and intelligence, and is associated with the emotional self, reasoning and judgement. This colour can represent the spiritual, sacred and dedicated side of ourselves, and suggests that we have the ability to stretch ourselves intellectually. **Gold or yellow** promises that something good and life enhancing that will lead to success and happiness is coming to us. This colour is urging us to focus on positive feelings and warmth.



The **grey mantle** may symbolise that we need to try and bring some colour and positive feelings back into our lives, as it can indicate that we may have lost direction, our mind is unclear and we are feeling drained or depressed. It is a subconscious reminder that we need to take a serious stance on a current issue or situation. The colour **grey** is a symbol of dedication and service.

The **crown** symbolises status, power and recognition. It represents acknowledgement and praise for our accomplishments, and suggests that we may receive an honour of some kind.

The **staff** signifies the support that we may need to help us through life, and suggests that we are able to create stability and support, and can stand firm in the presence of difficulty.

**Lions** symbolise leadership abilities, dignity, strength, courage, success and victory. They signify that tremendous power is available to us if we allow ourselves to tap into it. **Lions** can also signify the ego and our feelings associated with it. In alchemy it represents sexual passion, and a **green lion** was linked with the wild forces of nature. They were also associated with the mother goddess Ishtar, and were a symbol of divine protection in the classical world. Christ and Buddha associated the **lion** as a symbol of spiritual zeal and enlightenment.

The **black cat** signifies the desire for independence and autonomy, and has a strong connection with our intuition. A **cat** is linked to our sensuous side, but usually in women. It can represent the positive, creative and fertile aspect of the feminine, and indicates the possibility of new growth in our personality. It can also suggest the refined, self-reliant, but also powerful aspect of woman. However, the **black cat** has associations of good luck and prosperity or of evil because of its associations with witchcraft. The colour **black** symbolises materialisation, pessimism and judgement, and can represent some

subconscious repressed drive or emotion that is lurking within us and waiting to break free.

On the whole, the Queen of Wands is often attractive, warm, loyal and trustworthy, and knows exactly what she wants from life. She is loving and affectionate with a warm smile that attracts a lot of friends and admirers. This queen is energetic, full of enthusiasm, a talented and intelligent businesswoman, and a wife and mother. Her life is busy and she prefers it that way, she is businesslike and cheerful about what she does, and deals with her duties with commitment and dedication. Hardly anything makes her feel unhappy, and will spend time with anyone who may need her help.

The Queen of Wands is an extrovert, loves life, is confident, self-assured, and can accomplish anything she puts her mind to. She has tremendous faith in her abilities and will make a good role model for anyone who is trying to achieve their dream. She is capable of transforming her ideas and plans into something real and workable, and can successfully do this while running a home and family. She aims to please and enjoys the attention and love that she receives in return. However, she can be temperamental, and if anyone crosses her she can fight like a lion, but that is because she is passionate about what she does and believes in.

The Queen of Wands reminds us that if we are self-fulfilled we are more likely to attract other people towards us who respect our values and decisions. This Queen can represent a man or a woman that has her qualities, or a sense of environment or mood that is cheerful, confident and enthusiastic.

The Queen of Wands is linked to the zodiacal sign of Leo. For any other information regarding this queen refer to the section in this book on the Court Cards and Astrology.

## **Interpretation**

When the Queen of Wands appears in a spread, it is suggesting that you are ready to reveal the same qualities she has, or someone you come into contact with has similar traits as this queen. This card is asking you to think and feel as she does. It suggests that you are sensible, generous and helpful and manage to achieve a balance between your family and career interests. You have a loving nature and are a good homemaker as well as a competent businesswoman. There could be a sudden surge in your business or career, and perhaps you are about to become involved in a creative project that will turn out to be materially profitable, but you will have to be on the ball because it will require a lot of hard work.

However, you are always full of ideas and use your intuition in both your professional and personal life, and usually attract what you want anyway, so you are probably anxious to get started on the project because you love to be kept busy. You are feeling positive, confident, stable, independent and strong, and have the ability to tackle whatever is ahead with courage and authority, and ready to show the world. You enjoy the limelight and love to have fun, and probably attract admirers because of your love of life, warmth and possibly sexuality, so get out there and party.

If you are a woman, it will mean that you will soon feel emotionally secure. If you are a man, you are already in touch with the feminine aspects of your personality, which can be a source of inspiration for your creativity, ideas and plans. If it is someone in your life or someone you are about to meet, then this person will usually be a woman who is independent, charismatic and has an attractive personality. She has good business sense and draws many people to confide in her. This woman may have some good advice to offer you. Whatever your situation, a successful outcome to any venture is promised.

**Negative**

When the Queen of Wands is in a negative position suggests that someone may not be keeping the promises that they made to you. You may need to be careful of a jealous and vengeful woman who is likely to stir things up against you for no apparent reason. If you are married, maybe you are being unfaithful.

**People**

Women that are able to create a powerful first impression. Women with great sex appeal. Women that tackle a task with total dedication. Women that give their utmost in any situation. Women that lead an active and busy life. Women that have an encouraging word for everyone. Women that have faith in their abilities. Women that quietly demonstrate self-confidence. Competitive women that enjoy enterprise and the limelight. Women that value their home and family.

# King of Wands



**Key words and phrases:** A mature man. Father. A man of high office. Entrepreneur. Loyal. Control of circumstances. Conscientious. Leadership. Ambition. Complete confidence. A responsible, competent man of integrity. Negotiation. Professional. Creative. Conscious self. Passionate. Encouraging. Generous.

## Symbolic Meaning

A king sits on his throne while wearing his crown, and orange, yellow and green robes. He holds a staff that is sprouting leaves while he surveys his land. The back of his throne is decorated with lions and salamanders and a salamander is taking an inquisitive interest on the ground at the left side of the king.

A **king** may symbolise our father or a father figure. It can signify that we are feeling in control of a situation. Perhaps we are striving to increase our sense of power and authority, and are focused on holding onto or gaining a position of authority. A **king** can also signify that someone may be asserting authority over us.

A **throne** is a seat of power and authority in both the temporal and spiritual realm. Traditionally, it is a symbol of kingship, divine authority and power. A **throne** is acknowledging our right to take authority and can represent our ability to belong to groups, or to society.

A **crown** symbolises status, power and recognition. It represents acknowledgement and praise for our accomplishments, and we may receive an honour of some kind. A **crown** also signifies opportunities that will widen our knowledge and awareness.

A **robe** was originally a symbol of sovereignty, but today they represent status and power. **Robes** are still used today as with the **robos** of state decorated with white ermine, and the judicial, ecclesiastical and academic dignitaries.

The cheerful and uplifting colour of the **orange robe** is associated with life, consciousness, satisfaction and autonomy. It suggests that it is the dawn of an attitude that is optimistic and ready to be more creative, outgoing and social. The colour **orange** evokes an upsurge in our energy, particularly sexual, as it symbolises fertility, and suggests that we will be feeling increasingly confident about ourselves and our ventures.

The **yellow robe** symbolises consciousness, intelligence and awareness, and is associated with the emotional self, judgement and reasoning. This colour can represent the spiritual, sacred and dedicated side of ourselves, and signifies that we may be stretching ourselves intellectually. The colour **yellow** promises that something positive and life enhancing will bring us happiness and success, and it urges us to focus on positive feelings and warmth.

The **green** part of the **robe** signifies new beginnings, personal growth, and some new development in our personality. **Green** is the colour of equilibrium and compatibility. It suggests that we are opening up to new methods of self-expression.

The **staff** signifies the support that we may need to help us through life. It suggests that we are able to create stability and support, and can stand firm in the presence of difficulty.

**Leaves** signify a period of growth and fertility, and can also indicate time. **Bright green leaves** indicate fresh hope, new opportunities and new beginnings.

**Lions** symbolise dignity, strength, courage, victory, bravery, vigilance and fortitude. They are a solar symbol, therefore a sign of power and leadership. It also represents the ego and the feeling associated with it. A **lion** suggests that if we are going through difficulty there will be a successful development or outcome.

Due to **salamanders** having the ability to shed their skin, indicates that we are at a transition point and a major change is coming, that could be within ourselves, or in our professional or personal lives. They suggest that we may have been dealing with issues that are important to our sense of professional or personal survival. **Salamanders** are associated with our instinctive needs and drives.

On the whole, the King of Wands depicts a man who has the courage of his convictions, he is a natural leader and with his devotion and enthusiasm he is able to inspire others to reach their goals. Because of his warmth and his enormous zest for life makes him socially very popular. This king is very enthusiastic with almost everything he does and often becomes excited with new subjects of interest, in which he puts in a lot of energy.

When the King of Wands has a strong effect on us, we feel positive and confident, and reminded that we all have our own unique position in this world and our own approach and vision as how to live it. We begin to start developing innovative ideas and projects, and are ready and willing to take chances or go wherever our desire and passion takes us in pursuit of our goals. We also become able to trust our intuition, and our assertive and commanding approach to life will inspire others to follow or model our lead. Education is important to this king as it enables us to grasp and understand the situation before we start jumping to conclusions, or allowing others to influence and control our perceptions. Family is also very important to him, and if he finds the right partner he will stay committed to a long-lasting relationship.

The King of Wands is linked to the zodiacal sign of Aries. For any other information about this king refer to the section in this book on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the King of Wands appears in a spread it signifies that we may come into contact with someone who embodies similar characteristics of this king, or this card is asking us to demonstrate the same qualities as him, and the kind of action he takes. Now is a good time to take the initiative and come up with a good plan of action that keeps you focused and moving forward. If you are starting a new enterprise or making exciting changes in your life, then use the positive qualities of the King of Wands to help you in your quest to reach your goals.

You will achieve a great deal if you are able to take care of your everyday business in a sensible and businesslike way. If you lead with honesty and morality others will feel that they can trust and depend on you, as well as motivate them. You may be able to negotiate and put over your point of view, however it is important that you take the time to listen to other people's views that are different from yours.

The King of Wands can also represent a man in your life whose feet are firmly on the ground, who has a strong character and makes good company with his good sense of humour. This man may have some good advice to offer you, or may offer you a business opportunity, a promotion at work, or a new career. This man can also represent your father or husband, or a generous and mature man that you can lean on and trust when you need him.

As a situation, it will be one where you need to show the courage, strength and morality to build something strong, secure and long lasting in your life, such as a marriage that involves settling a deal on a house, some financial



agreement, business negotiation, or legacy. The King of Wands has meaning for you at this time, be inspired and energized.

### **Negative**

In a negative position the King of Wands can represent you or another man in your life that has an unpleasant character. He is strict, intolerant, selfish, and has narrow views. You are spending too much time thinking about working towards his goals than actually getting on with it. Perhaps your resources are being exhausted as a result of overexertion, temper, or over-stimulation of your passions. In business he might be using you to better himself, therefore he is not to be trusted. Do not make any wedding plans because this man wants his freedom and is not ready to settle down yet. Maybe there is hostility or domestic trouble due to aggressiveness, assertiveness or badly handled emotions.

### **People**

A father or father figure. The head of the family or head of a business. A man with material and moral responsibilities. An entrepreneur with considerable vision. An enthusiastic self-starter. Someone who is original and inventive. Someone who can create an atmosphere of excitement. Someone who is a natural leader. A mature man who is committed and loyal to his family and partnership. Someone who is a good negotiator. Someone who inspires others to become creative. An adventurous man who takes charge of many projects.

# Cups

**Element:** Water

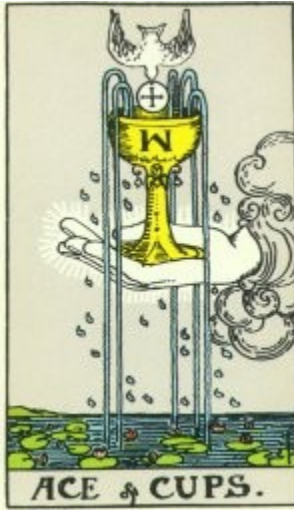
**Astrological Signs:** Cancer, Scorpio and Pisces

**Season:** Summer (June – July – August)

**Key words and phrases:** Emotions. Relationships. Partnerships. Family. Sensitivity. Creativity. Feelings. Intuition. Romance. Matters of the heart. Love.

The suit of Cups is similar to the Hearts in an ordinary pack of cards. It is related to the water element and is a suit of emotions and sensitivity. Cups are associated with relationships, feelings, love, romance and psychic insight. This suit signifies the home, family, intuition, and the development of talent or ideas. They are also associated with the zodiacal signs of Cancer, Scorpio and Pisces.

# Ace of Cups



**Key words and phrases:** New love. Pregnancy. Childbirth. Harmony. Joy. Fertility. Longing for affection. Happy events. Pleasure. Health. Spiritual experiences.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a hand emerging from a white cloud and holding a cup in its palm above a body of water on which water lilies are floating. Five fountains of water are pouring from the cup as a dove descends into it carrying a communion wafer that is marked with an equilateral cross.

In Christian iconography, God is sometimes represented as a **hand** emerging from a cloud. The **open hand** is a symbol of justice, power and creativity. The **right hand** is the power hand, and as it seems to have appeared out of the sky signifies that we have been specially chosen.

A **cloud** is a symbol of fertility, natural abundance, potential and revelation. The white colour of the **cloud** symbolises innocence, purity, peace, happiness and joy, and suggests that we have a desire for unity and wholeness and a growing connection with the spiritual side of our nature.

The **cup or chalice** represents a vessel of plenty and immortality. In Christianity the **chalice** is a ritual **cup** used at Eucharist, and in medieval Europe, this **cup** was associated with the Holy Grail. The water element is also associated with the **chalice or cup**, which symbolises intuition, the emotions and healing in such matters as love, sex, relationships and children. It suggests that we are receptive to intuitive information. The **cup or chalice** represents our feminine side, therefore suggesting that if we are intuitively

open to our feminine side we are then more able to both give and receive help and assistance with love and sensitivity.

The **body of water** is a symbol of fertility, growth, creative potential, new life, or healing. It signifies a stage of transition between the conscious and the spiritual self, and represents an element of our emotions or psychic energy. **Water** is a feminine symbol and represents our own femininity, whether we are male or female, or represents our mother. It also signifies our potential and our ability to create new life. A **body of water** can also indicate a yearning for romance in our lives, or a new romance entering our lives.

**Water lilies** may symbolise the conscious ego or the self. They can also be a sexual symbol, representing the vagina, and may symbolise creative power, or the source of new life.

In older traditions the **lily** was associated with fertility and erotic love, and in ancient Greece and Egypt it was a symbol of production, output and creation, and especially associated with offspring.

The **five fountains of water** symbolise nurturing, fulfilment and attuning to our inner self. They are a symbol of womanhood and relate to the emotions and the subconscious mind. A **fountain** also signifies refreshment and new life and may represent life-giving powers in our subconscious, or could be a sexual symbol representing the penis. **Five fountains** represent our struggle to come to terms with the particular demands and responsibilities of controlling and balancing our own lives. It is the number for those of us who have overcome the chaos and disorder that we had created in the first place, in order to progress and get out of a dead-end situation.

The **dove** is a universal symbol of peace that originated from the story of Noah when the floods started to recede. It is also a symbol of the Holy Spirit descending to Earth in the form of a **dove**, as one of the three aspects of the

nature of God, collectively known as the Trinity. It represents the anima, or the feminine side of a man's personality. A **dove** signifies peace after a troubled situation, and can symbolise a stronger connection with the spiritual side of our inner self. It also suggests happiness in love and relationships, including sexual love.

The **communion wafer** relates to the Last Supper or the church service known as the Eucharist. The Eucharist involves the sharing of bread and wine that represents the flesh and blood of Christ, to symbolise the taking within of Christ's body, or the essence of him. It is a symbol of **holy communion**, or the sharing of the power of God. It suggests that all of our power and energy can be shared.

The **equilateral cross** has spiritual and esoteric associations and is connected with healing and miraculous powers. It was said to have had the power to ward off vampires and devils, but now it is associated with medicine and nursing through the Red Cross charity. The **cross** signifies moving spirit into substance, or the unified psyche, in other words, the bringing together of the conscious and subconscious mind to become a whole. The three upper arms are said to relate to the Holy Trinity, and the lower arm to the reunion and understanding of opposites. The four arms of the **cross** suggest that we have to go through torment, conflict and sorrow before we can reach perfection.

On the whole, the Ace of Cups signifies new beginnings and the chance to start anew on anything that has meaning for us. We are entering a successful and productive period that is overflowing with possibilities. It is a time of emotional fulfilment and very favourable for close relationships, and can signify perfect harmony and love, and possibly marriage and motherhood.

The Ace of Cups can also represent the beginning of a creative desire that comes from deep inside and leads to personal satisfaction or a recognised

success. We may feel a sense of peace and gratitude for feeling blessed with the ability to emotionally or spiritually connect with ourselves and with others. However, we must first be at peace with ourselves before we can bring peace and comfort to others. If we open our hearts to happiness and love on both a personal and spiritual level it gives us a sense of connection with others, which in turn will be reflected back to us. This card represents all that is open, true, comforting and supportive in romantic, family, sexual, and business relationships. This card also signifies new friendships and support from colleagues.

The Ace of Wands is linked to the number one in numerology and the water element in astrology, therefore the sections in this book on Tarot and Numerology and Tarot and Astrology has more information associated with the Ace of Cups.

### **Interpretation**

When the Ace of Cups appears in a spread, it suggests that you have started or about to start a new period in your life related to your emotions. This could be the beginning of a new relationship with someone special and you are ready to give your heart away, or it is an extremely loving and contented phase in an existing one. There is a strong emotional quality regarding your love life and the relationship you have with your family, friends and colleagues. It is also a very productive phase for you at this time, which will put you in a positive and happy frame of mind, and makes you feel grateful for what you have managed to achieve. All things good are about to happen for you, it could mean an engagement, marriage, babies, gifts or happy events.

In career matters, you may now be able to fulfil a project or venture that could open the door for other opportunities and achievements. Perhaps you have discovered that you have some creative talent and want to develop it more, maybe through study or further education. You may also be ready to develop or enhance your growing spiritual understanding, psychic abilities or intuition,

and you are looking for ways to connect with the spiritual side of your nature. Trust what your feelings or hunches are telling you, they usually are right. This is a positive card therefore it is a good time for you to explore new avenues and experiences.

### **Negative**

When the Ace of Wands is in a negative position indicates that there is unhappiness in your emotional life. Perhaps you feel that you are being taken advantage of or being used, or feel that the relationship you are in with your partner is one-sided. Perhaps your partner is only interested in sex and not interested in a commitment. Maybe a love affair or romance is coming to an end and your emotions are all over the place. You may be feeling lonely and insecure because your love and affection is not being returned. Maybe you are being too egotistical, self-centred, or too full of yourself. You need to know when to say no if you feel that someone is messing with your feelings or things are going in the wrong direction, and go forward with determination. Accept help from others if you need it.

### **People**

Those who are sincere, loving and devoted to their loved ones. Those who are filled with goodwill and good intentions. Those who need to love and be loved. Those who can be relied upon. Those with remarkable intuition. Those who are good at forming long-lasting partnerships. Those who are good at building a home. Those who have a caring nature. Lovers. Those with psychic abilities. Those who may be artistically creative. Those who can be moody. Those who are sensitive and do not take kindly to criticism. Those who have been let down and rejected. Those who are grieving or mourning.

## Two of Cups



**Key words and phrases:** A passionate love affair. Early stages of a relationship. An emotional choice to be made. Communion. Sentimental disagreement. Satisfying love. Harmony. A union. Cooperation. Partnership. A balanced relationship. Understanding. A contract or binding agreement. Finding someone to share your life with. Getting together with someone.

### Symbolic Meaning

In the Waite deck, this card depicts a man and a woman each holding a cup in their hands. Their expression and posture indicates a pledge of love as the man reaches for the woman. Above the couple is the caduceus of Hermes, which is depicted with a lion's head between the wings.

A **pledge of love** is an indication of how we feel about our relationship and signifies a desire for a commitment to it. We are always looking for someone who can compliment us and supply the qualities that we feel is lacking in us. It is the realisation of the close connections between our bodies, emotions, mind and spirit that gives us the indication for potential growth by uniting our particular qualities, which need to come together to create a better whole.

The **caduceus** was the magic wand with wings and entwined serpents and was carried by Hermes. It was said to have transformative power to change male to female and vice versa. The **caduceus** symbolises the mediation between opposing forces, but has now been interpreted as an emblem for homeopathic medicine and healing. The whole symbolism of this depiction of the **caduceus** is that the **lion's head** between the **wings** means that the **lion**, even with all of his strength and courage, has become part spiritual and part physical, therefore it indicates that we have achieved a balance between



spiritual and physical love. The two entwining snakes on the **caduceus** reflect both the positive and negative qualities of love.

**Hermes** was the Greek herald and messenger of the gods, and depicted as wearing a winged hat and sandals and carrying the **caduceus**, his magic wand. He was also the god of art, commerce, eloquence, fertility, games, luck, roads, thieves, tricksters and wisdom. **Hermes** was credited with the invention of fire, making the lyre from the shell of a tortoise, inventing the shepherd's pipe, astronomy, musical scales and measures.

On the whole the Two of Cups usually signifies the beginning of a new close relationship. It often appears when we are thinking about our relationship with someone and wondering whether it is going to develop into a balanced, harmonious and loving partnership. The Two of Cups can signify an engagement, a marriage, or a love affair, but also issues relating to business matters with friends, a financial agreement, a new home or the signing of contracts. Whatever the situation, there will need to be some input of effort and cooperation.

If there has been any conflict we will have to put our differences aside and concentrate on what needs to be brought together, whether it is our relationships with others, our home, our business matters, or our financial arrangements. However, this card does suggest reconciliation, so we are able to forge ahead to achieve this.

This card suggests that we are going in the right direction but should not become complacent. We should keep on our toes to make sure that everything is able to run smoothly. As cups are linked with fertility, this card can also signify a pregnancy or a birth that will result in a very strong bond between the parent and child.

This card is related to the number two in numerology therefore, if any other information is required please refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Two of Cups appears in a spread indicates that you are about to enter into some kind of happy relationship. If you are about to start a new romantic attachment or establishing a business partnership with a friend, you will know that this bond can be trusted. If you are in an existing relationship it is a deeply loving phase in which you are completely supportive of each other. All of this can be interpreted as an engagement, marriage, pregnancy, a birth of a child, a mutual agreement of cooperation, or the condition of harmony and balance in which you both live.

If there has been any conflict within your relationship because of disagreements, arguments or a separation, this card is telling you that if you are both willing to put the past behind you, and settle your differences, a reconciliation is possible, and peace and harmony can be restored. You both need to respect the contributions that each of you put into the relationship. No matter what you are feeling at the moment, you will soon experience happiness, harmony, balance and love with someone, and you will have mutual support, understanding, the sharing of positive ideas and friendship.

### **Negative**

When the Two of Wands is in a negative position it suggests that there could be a separation or you are growing further apart, within either your personal or business partnership, because of difficulties, disagreements, misunderstandings or arguments. Actually, this card is telling you not to go in that direction because neither of you want it to end this way, so try to work it out by listening and trying to understand why you are both hurting.

**People**

Those about to make a connection with someone. Those who make an agreement or an alliance. Those who are about to enter into a partnership. Those who are about to make a commitment to a relationship. Those who have a desire for harmony, peace, pleasure and comfort. Those who are in love. Those who are about to become engaged or married. Those who are starting a family. Those who are about to enter a business partnership. Those who will not make any kind of compromise. Those who have emotionally broken away from others.

# Three of Cups



**Key words and phrases:** Loving and supportive friends. Invitation. A party in store. Celebration. Good luck. Good fortune. New encounter. Uniting with others. Pleasant relationships. Happiness. Love and pleasure ahead. Family gatherings. Artistic ability. Start of a new lifestyle. Marriage. Birth.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts three female figures standing in a garden of fruit and other produce while raising their cups in a toast or celebration.

A **garden** is a symbol of the feminine and indicates the potential growth that we are trying to cultivate in our lives. It suggests a need for more growth, creativity and beauty in our lives. **Gardens** are also associated with love, sensual pleasure and seduction.

**Fruit and other produce** are associated with fertility and readiness, and a concern with nourishment, abundance and fullness. They suggest that we are being offered a new life, new kinds of fulfilment or refreshment.

The **toast or celebration** depicted in this card signifies achievement and recognition, and suggests that a tribute, salutation, a drink to the health of, or a pledge is about to be made, either to ourselves or to those who are near and dear to us. It also signifies a time when we are able to relax and unwind, and where we will have a release of tension and inhibitions.

On the whole the Three of Cups represents tremendous joy and happiness. It is about celebrating our happiness, love and success, and the future commitment we are ready to make within a relationship, venture or creative

project. However, it usually signifies that the courting or nurturing stage of a relationship has now been completed and we are now ready to take it to a different level. Nevertheless, the Three of Cups also signifies that before we will be able to feel that our relationship is solid and steadfast we still have a lot more work to do.

It indicates success, fulfilment and new opportunities ahead of us, and problems will finally be resolved. The Three of Cups relates to a celebration, event or party that we are feeling happy and joyous about. This could be an engagement party, a wedding celebration, the birth of a child, or a toast to a successful business enterprise. It is a card of growth and expression, and suggests that we may also be developing spiritually or exhibiting creative expression in music or artistic projects.

This card relates to the number three in numerology therefore, for other information associated with the Three of Cups refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Three of Cups appears in a spread you are ready to create a way to share your love, abundance and happiness. You may feel like celebrating the rewards of your past efforts, or be happy and excited because you are starting on a new creative phase that you know will be emotionally fulfilling and resolve any past difficulties.

Close personal relationships may take a different direction and you might decide that the time is right to get married to your partner or, you are ready to have a baby because you feel optimistic about the future with your loved ones. You may find yourself surrounded by many loving and supportive friends, with whom you are able to have lots of social occasions, fun and laughter. The Three of Cups can also suggest that you may have a creative or artistic hobby that might be worth developing. If you have been ill this card

promises renewed health and recovery. Big improvements will be made due to your decisive actions and any past difficulties will end. Enjoy the celebrations.

### **Negative**

When in a negative position the Three of Cups suggests a separation, divorce or a romance does not work out. Maybe either one of you has been unfaithful, or perhaps the relationship has lost its sparkle. You may be feeling discontent and bored, or suffering from depression that is leading you to overindulge in food or drink due to a lack of emotional fulfilment. Dwelling on the past and self-pity is painful, destructive and wastes your time and energy. Be careful of overspending on fun, entertainment and credit it could lead to the debtors knocking on your door. Also remember that excessive sex and promiscuity can lead to sexual health problems and harm your welfare and reputation.

### **People**

Those who like to party and have fun with friends. Those who may have something to celebrate. Socialites. Those who are starting on a new creative phase. Musicians. Artists. Those who are entering into a personal or business partnership. Those who share their ideas, plans, happiness and love. Those who occupy themselves with a hobby. Those who love to entertain or work in the entertainment or leisure business.

# Four of Cups



**Key words and phrases:** Boredom. Feeling trapped. Discontented. In a rut. Depression. Life is dull. Weary. Lacking motivation. Concentrating on your own feelings. Losing interest. Ignoring help. Dissatisfied. Withdrawing from involvement. Contemplating. Making no effort. Something is missing.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a young man sitting under a tree with his arms folded and staring at three cups that are in front of him. To his right, a hand appears from a cloud to offer him another cup but from his posture and expression he is discontented and not ready to accept the offer.

The **posture** of this young man suggests that we are feeling in a rut or trapped by outside circumstances or by something or someone who is trying to have a hold on us. It may signify that we need outside help to free ourselves of our train of thought and behaviour. His **posture** also signifies stagnation, boredom and discontentment, and suggests that we are holding ourselves back and need to get into a more positive frame of mind in order to move on. However, as the man is depicted alone on this card suggests that we do have a degree of self-sufficiency.

**Trees** are a symbol of life and creation. They signify steady growth, age, experience, time and continuity. A **tree** also represents aspects of ourselves, for example the trunk is our growth and attitudes towards life, the branches represent the different aspects of our lives, and the roots represent our foundation or base. It may be suggesting that we need to create a firm base in order to grow and thrive. The roots also symbolise the provision of wisdom

from the collective experience, and may indicate how we feel about our own roots.

The **hand appearing from the cloud** symbolises power and creativity. The **right hand** is the “power” hand and suggests that we have been specially chosen, and something may be “**close at hand.**” In this card the **hand** is trying to offer the man help and sustenance but unfortunately he declines it.

The **cloud** is a symbol of fertility, abundance and revelation. However, in this case its association is with gloom, depression and obscurity, and suggests that we need to take our current situation seriously and try to work it out.

On the whole, the Four of Cups depicts that we have become bored and apathetic because nothing exciting seems to be happening in our lives. The opportunities are there to enable us to rise above our present state, but our lack of action and motivation stops us from climbing out of this rut. We have started to doubt our abilities and become hesitant, but if we do not summon up our strength and energy we will never break free from our lethargy.

However, the Four of Cups signifies that we seem to have everything we need, but maybe feel that something is missing in our life, and now we are contemplating on doing something different to bring some vitality back into it. There is nothing wrong in devoting time to focus on ourselves as long as we develop it into something positive, while at the same time remembering those who have sustained us along the way.

This card is related to the number four in numerology therefore, other information can be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

The appearance of the Four of Cups suggests that you need to find a new way of dealing with the aspects of your life that are making you feel



discontented, and reassess your position or situation. Even though you seem to have everything you need, you feel that there is something missing in your life and you have become disillusioned with your circumstances. Emotionally you have become stagnated and bored and want to inject more variety into your life. Maybe you are tired and dissatisfied, either with yourself, relationships, friendships or colleagues. Perhaps you are feeling resentful because someone has insulted or hurt you, or maybe you feel unloved or are simply fed up with the tedium of doing the same tasks day after day. As a result you feel let down because your expectations have not been fulfilled, therefore you are now contemplating a change. However, the Four of Cups does suggest that you should take time out to look at the bigger picture and reflect on whatever you are unhappy about and the choices that you need to make, rather than suddenly packing your bags and moving on. Do not allow your future to be clouded with regret from the action you took at this time.

### **Negative**

In a negative aspect the Four of Cups signifies that after all of the pain and struggle, there is something to look forward to. Things are taking a turn for the better and an unhappy time is coming to an end. You may have the chance to get back together with your partner or lover and work things out. You may find that through socialising you have more friends than you realised. If you are self-employed an increase in business is imminent, or if you are looking for work, an offer of employment is on the horizon. You are going to pull yourself together and clean up your act.

### **People**

Those who feel disillusioned with their life. Those who are withdrawing from involvement. Those who are lacking motivation. Those who find it hard to show their feelings or affection.

# Five of Cups



**Key words and phrases:** Despair. Sorrow. Regret. Sadness. Loss. Emotional time. Marital or family problems. Crisis. Disillusionment. Betrayal. Bitterness. End of a relationship, friendship, marriage or work.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a figure wearing a black cloak. In front of the figure three cups have fallen over spilling their contents, and two cups behind the figure are left standing. In the distance a bridge spans over a river leading to a dwelling-place.

The **black cloak** on this card symbolises despair or deep depression, but also physical, emotional or spiritual protection. It is suggesting that we have lost sight of our direction in life possibly due to some kind of deprivation or loss, and feel that we do not have the will or the energy to do anything about it. Part of our life has died and we must learn to manage or survive without it.

The **spilt cups** signify that there is disappointment and regret for what we have lost, but the **standing cups** signify that something of value still remains. Therefore, when we have finished with our grieving, we need to realise that all is not lost and we still have something to work towards.

The **bridge** symbolises a transition between one stage of life and another. It is also a symbol of the connection between the ordinary and spiritual aspects of ourselves. A **bridge** is also a symbol of the connection between the conscious and the spiritual aspects of ourselves.

The **river** symbolises the flow of our emotions. In this card, the strength of the flow of the **river** is asking us whether we are letting our emotions flow easily

and allowing them to be expressed fully and in a healthy way, or are we becoming aggressive and scary? Do we go with the flow or swim against the current?

The **dwelling-place** symbolises the building where our life and soul lies, and represents the different elements within our psyche. The fear of losing our **dwelling-place** is akin to feeling that parts of ourselves have been lost. This loss hurts because our emotions are resistant to change.

On the whole, the Five of Cups signifies disappointment and regret, which is symbolised by the spilt cups, which is probably relating to a relationship. However, the cups that are standing indicate that we still have something positive remaining for us to build upon for the future. It represents change and uncertainty, and the need to see what can be retrieved from the relationship or situation. Although there is loss there is hope, because the opportunities are there for us to recover and move forward, once we have overcome our grief and regret.

This card is related to the number five in numerology therefore, for information related to the Five of Cups refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Five of Cups appears in a spread it may signify that you are grieving or regretting some kind of loss. Maybe a relationship with either your partner, a friend, a business partner or venture has gone sour and has led to a separation or collapse. This may be due to difficulties in your marriage, relationship or some other important or significant aspect of your life. Perhaps you are weary of feeling that you are putting in a lot of hard work and seem to be getting nowhere, which is making you unhappy and discontented. You have become emotionally exhausted and confused. It seems that you cannot put it out of your mind, and you are unable to understand where it all went wrong. However, you need to realise that all is not lost because something of

value has been gained, which is your experience of the loss. If you keep on trying to hold on to what has gone from your life the suffering will destroy you. It is important that you do not dwell on the past and drown yourself in self-pity. You will always have hope, and the opportunity will come to build a better future for yourself. Something will replace or change the emptiness and hurt you are feeling at this time.

### **Negative**

When in a negative position, the Five of Cups can suggest a happy meeting with an old friend or loved one. Your sense of loss is easing and you are putting the past behind you. It is a time for healing the rifts and you now have the courage to face up to reality. There are better times ahead and your wishes may come true. Perhaps you are considering a new job or maybe looking for a new house, or at the least making a commitment to something.

### **People**

Those who are breaking away from a relationship. Those who are crying over spilt milk. Those who feel that they have made the wrong choice. Those who are grieving. Those who are experiencing a setback. Those who are acknowledging their mistakes. Those who feel bitter and resentful.

# Six of Cups



**Key words and phrases:** The past. Nostalgia. Memories. Childhood. Times passed by. A lover from the past. Home and family. Renewing old ties. Sentimental.

## Symbolic Meaning

In the Waite deck, the Six of Cups depicts a young boy and girl standing in a village square. The boy seems to be offering the girl one of the six flower-filled cups and she looks up and smiles at him.

The **young boy and girl** may signify memories of earlier and happier times that we wish we could return to. It may be a time in the past when life seemed more simple and straightforward. They can also signify that we are trying to apologise, change something we did, or straighten things out in order to free our feelings of guilt for the mistakes we made in the past.

The **village** signifies the need to belong to something. It is very hard to keep secrets in a **village** because it is small and has a close-knit community. Therefore, this can indicate that we wish we could be more open with each other, have that closeness, and be able trust those around us as we were able to do in the past.

**Flowers** symbolise harmony, love and friendship, and feelings of pleasure and beauty. They can signify that our inner self is blossoming and there is freshness to what we are doing. The **flowers** on this card have their petals open indicating new horizons and opportunities that will lead to fulfilment. Offering the **flowers** as a gift signifies that we are willing to give ourselves emotionally to others. Receiving the **flowers** suggests that something good is coming our way from an unexpected source, and can also mean that we are

opening up emotionally and spiritually, and more aware of ourselves and our purpose in life.

On the whole, the Six of Cups signifies that we want to leave the past behind us and move forward into the future armed with all of our past experience. It is the beginning of a new phase in our life and we might well dwell on the past with fond memories of the experiences we have had, but we now need to let go and move on because if we do not then our future could become severely harmed. The Six of Cups also suggests that there are new opportunities being offered to us, so we need to think about what action we are going to take. Faces from the past may appear to offer new opportunities, or old skills may prove valuable.

This card relates to the number six in numerology therefore, more information can be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Six of Cups appears in a spread it suggests that you may be reminiscing too much on happier times relating to your past, instead of concentrating on what needs to be done to move on into the future. Perhaps you are thinking of returning to a place where you once lived that was filled with good times and happiness, or in the hope of making contact with the people you was once acquainted with. A past lover may reappear into your life or an old friendship could be renewed. Maybe a past employer who valued your unique skills offers you work, or you start to reap the rewards from the creative talents that you have acquired over the past years.

The Six of Cups can also suggest that you are trying to resolve the mistakes you made in the past, or the difficulties that you are now in that stem from past errors. Do not fall into the same old habits, patterns, and past mistakes that caused disappointment or frustration earlier in your life, accept what you

have now but incorporate the experience you have gained and the positive elements of your past.

### **Negative**

In a negative position the Six of Cups signifies that it is time to put the past behind you and start to live in the present. Beliefs, values and feelings that were firmly ingrained into you from your family or other relationships as you was growing up maybe stopping you from pursuing new goals or making progress. The past is holding you back in some way and it is time to free yourself from the chains that are restraining you, and move forward. A ghost from the past may come back to haunt you. Perhaps family ties are holding you back because you now have to look after a member of your family due to illness or old age. You may be preoccupied with worries concerning children, which is taking up a lot of your time. It is time to negotiate with others about your commitments or worries in order for you to escape from the situations or relationships that are stifling you.

### **People**

Those who have connections with our past. Those who are kind and charitable. Those who live in the past. Past lovers. Those who give support. Those who do not always live in the real world. Those who are loving, caring and nurturing.

# Seven of Cups



**Key words and phrases:** Illusion. Not thinking clearly. Overactive imagination. A mystical experience. A difficult choice. Creative imagination and inspiration. Dreaming instead of acting. Confused. A need to focus and concentrate. Positive visualisation. Undecided. Too many options. Irrational thought.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a figure of a man with his back turned seemingly in awe of the vision in front of him. It looks like the man has to make a choice from the options available in the cups that are floating on the clouds. The options on offer are a woman, a snake, a castle, a cluster of jewels, a laurel wreath, a dragon, and a mysterious shrouded figure.

**Visions or fantasies** are symbols in our imagination appearing as images for our hopes and desires, irrational fears, or the tricksters we may encounter during our lives. They suggest that we may be facing a challenging situation where nothing can be taken for granted or a time where we need to confront our fears and demons. **Visions and fantasies** can also signify our ability to possibly go beyond the dull or routine reality of our everyday lives.

**Clouds** can signify a lack of clarity, judgement or view of a situation, or can represent an inspiring connection with the spiritual side of our nature. **Clouds** can also signify that someone is overshadowing us, or something is casting gloom over a situation.

The **woman** on the card may for a man symbolise sexual desire or the feminine side of his personality. She could either be friendly or threatening, signifying that she could either be making him aware of the inactive anima



(feminine) aspects of his personality, or a dangerous and seductive siren trying to lead him astray. A **woman** can represent our mother and the influence she has over us, and whether we pay attention to what she has to say, it may suggest that it is time to free ourselves from our mother's apron strings and secure our own identity. A **woman** also indicates that we may need to go with our own intuition and be aware of our feelings.

The **snake** represents uncontrolled passion and suggests temptation, but also signifies our search for the spiritual. According to Jung, **snakes** symbolise all that is totally subconscious and instinctive, which can come into conflict with conscious attitudes. However, the subconscious and instinct borders on supernatural and unique wisdom, therefore the **snake** can symbolise both evil and wisdom that overrides human morality. It warns of disloyalty, trickery and evil.

The **castle** symbolises our wish for power, security, authority and protection, and to escape from the humdrum routine of everyday life. However in this case, the castle is in the air surrounded by clouds, suggesting that we should come back down to reality and stop fantasizing.

The **jewels** are a symbol of purity, refinement and superiority. In Eastern traditions they embody spiritual knowledge. **Jewels** indicate that we value what is precious in our lives, probably as a result of what we have achieved through our hard work.

The **laurel wreath** was a symbol of truce, victory, peace, divination and purification. Through its association with Apollo the **laurel leaves** were the crowning symbol of the Greco-Roman world for both warriors and poets. It suggests that we may be dreaming of a position of grandeur or high rank for ourselves.

However, there seems to be a **skull** on the cup that is holding the **laurel wreath** suggesting that we need to be aware and recognise the structure that we have given to our lives. A **skull** can also indicate that we need to be aware of putting ourselves into a dangerous situation.

The **dragon** can represent sexual energy and a sense of personal empowerment. We might think they are frightening creatures, which may suggest that we are worried about the intensity of our emotions, or we are being forced to face our fears head-on. Perhaps we think they are wonderful creatures with great wisdom and powers and can take us to places we can only dream of. In short, a **dragon** is a creature that will empower us or a monster that threatens to destroy us.

The **shrouded figure** may represent the spiritual potential that we have not yet recognised, or the dark or shadow side of ourselves that we do not want to face. Perhaps old memories or emotions have come back to haunt us. A **shrouded figure** can also symbolise unfinished business and uncertainty due to a lack of clarity of who we are, what we are doing in our lives, or to the solution to a problem.

On the whole, the Seven of Cups indicates that we should be careful with the choices we make because they may not live up to our expectations. We are being offered several opportunities but some of them will seem too good to be true and should be closely examined. However, at least one of them should prove to be worthwhile and live up to its promise. We cannot have everything we wish for, so we need to stop daydreaming and come back down to reality, and decide what really matters.

We will need to use our intuition, take positive action and put in the effort in order to create the circumstances we desire in our lives. There is confusion at the moment but something positive could develop once the clouds have gone. Our experiences in life strengthen our character and make us wiser, and

daydreaming of what we want from life wastes too much time. Success does not just drop on our laps it has to be worked towards.

This card relates to the number seven in numerology therefore, for any information associated with the Seven of Cups refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Seven of Cups appears it indicates that decisions need to be made regarding your circumstances. There are many options and possibilities open to you, but you will have to weigh matters carefully and focus on what you really need to achieve. However, you are finding it hard to make a clear decision because you are being distracted by your dreams. It is important to use your intuition and try to separate which dream could be made a reality and worth pursuing, and which is just fantasy, then do what you have to do. Look very carefully at the options that are on offer and narrow them down to a goal that is possible to achieve. This is also a good time for creative pursuits, maybe you have the opportunity to express some artistic talent that could bring fulfilment to your life.

### **Negative**

When the Seven of Cups appears in a negative position, be careful of overindulging in drink or drugs. You are dreaming of future achievement but not doing anything about it. You are lost in a fantasy world where your attention flows from one daydream to another. Perhaps your emotions are up in the air, maybe because of some relationship, and you feel that you have been deceived or misled in some way. You need to put things into perspective and take a good look at reality. Wake up from your dreams and focus on your goals, then take positive action and work towards achieving them.

## **People**

Those who are faced with an array of choices. Those who lack focus and commitment. Those who let their imagination run wild. Those who are building castles in the air. Those who get to pick and choose. Those who are filled with confusion. Dreamers. Those who are creative. Those who overindulge in food, drink, drugs or parties. Artists.

# Eight of Cups



**Key words and phrases:** Moving on. A turning point. Walking away. Leaving the past behind. Disappointment. An emotional phase. Turning your back on a situation. Breaking up. Soul-searching. Tension or conflict in your emotional life. Relocating. A job change.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a man walking away from eight stacked cups. No matter what they mean to him, he has decided to turn his back on them and with his staff in hand he is heading towards a distant mountain range. The moon illustrated on this card is strangely depicted as full and waning at the same time.

**Turning our back and walking away** signifies that we are trying to reject the emotional feelings we have experienced or the situation we were in. It suggests that we feel overwhelmed or maybe even contempt or disapproval, and therefore need some space.

The **staff** signifies that we recognise our need for extra strength, courage, support and assistance, and indicates that we may have to ask for help in order to make progress and get through the difficult situation we are experiencing at this present time.

The **mountain range** symbolises the challenges, obstacles and goals that we need to overcome. They can represent our current perspective on life, approaching the **mountains** signifies the challenges we have yet to encounter, but they can also indicate that we are rising above the common pursuits of everyday life and going in search of our true self or even the meaning of life.

The **moon** represents the emotional and feminine aspect of our personality. It is concerned with our inner emotions, reactions, responses and habitual behaviour. It represents mothers or mother figures in our lives, also the home, security and the care of those who need us. The **moon** is connected to the imagination, intuition, psychic powers and dreaming, and is particularly associated with women, fertility and birth. It is a great reflector and embodies qualities of receptivity that influences our intuition and feelings. The **moon** suggests that we listen to our intuition and try to tap into the emotional ebb and flow of our feelings. The **full moon** represents the fullness of the female energy, symbolises fruition and success, and echoes the symbolism of the circle, signifying wholeness. The **waning moon** signifies a time for decreasing and for letting go of things, and warns us to take more notice and care of our energy levels.

On the whole, the Eight of Cups is asking us to let go of something that is not working. An emotional situation has come to an end and it is time to move on. We are in the process of rejecting someone or something that we once held dear to us and may feel hurt and disappointed with the way it has turned out. However, we may now realise it is the right time to move away and hope we can find the missing element that has eluded our life in order to bring something meaningful back into it. Change is necessary when life has become uncomfortable, and the time has come to assess our situation and take a different direction. We are starting a new phase or solitary journey of our own choosing to experience other things. What was true is not anymore, and we now conclusively know that the past has gone.

This card is related to the number eight in numerology therefore, refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology for more information associated with the Eight of Cups.

### **Interpretation**

When the Eight of Cups appears it signifies the end of an unsatisfactory situation and the beginning of something new. Your relationship or love life may be going through a disappointing emotional phase, which has left you feeling depressed and disillusioned. Perhaps you are now doing some soul-searching and maybe thinking of breaking up and doing something different.

Sometimes this card relates to a project that did not work out as much as you thought it would, or the success you did have with it seems hollow and worthless, therefore you are moving on to something else. Even though it can be painful it is important to let go of something that is not working, and perhaps if you do not walk away and try something new no further progress will be possible in your life. The Eight of Cups promises that changes will be beneficial, and even though you know that you still have to abandon a hopeless situation, a new relationship or project could be waiting for you to introduce yourself. This card also suggests travel or a change of residence.

### **Negative**

When the Eight of Cups appears in a negative position you may realise that your current cycle has ended and there is nothing more you can do or say. Perhaps you are ready to walk away and start something new. At the moment, as far as you are concerned fun and celebrations are in order. You are starting on a journey of discovery, however make sure that you focus on what is important to you. Maybe you will even devote more time to your spiritual side in order to find the answers that can help you along your journey.

### **People**

Those who realise that they need to bring a positive change to their relationship, love life or work. Those who are reassessing their lives and priorities. Those who are walking away from a situation. Those who are looking for answers. Those who are feeling tired and weighed down by worries.

## Nine of Cups



**Key words and phrases:** Satisfaction. Contentment. Esteem. Deep, stable, serene and harmonious feelings. Financial wellbeing. Physical wellbeing. Material success. A dream come true. Sensual pleasures. A wished for marriage. Security. Happy relationships and love life. Respect. Wishes fulfilled.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a stout man with his arms folded and sitting smugly on a stool in front of nine cups that are arranged neatly on a shelf behind him like a row of trophies.

The cups or **trophies** are the reason the man is sitting smugly. They signify achievement and recognition, and indicate that we may soon be rewarded or acknowledged for our accomplishments. A **trophy** suggests that we are proud of our achievements and it lets us know that we are worthwhile and successful. **Trophies** can also increase our self-esteem and can represent the fulfilment of a wish.

On the whole the Nine of Cups suggests contentment, material success, physical health and a liking for sensual pleasures. It is known as the wish card, and signifies that something we have been wishing and working hard for is about to come true. An emotional and creative success has been attained and true happiness is finally realised. This could be the fulfilment of a dream or the one person we have been waiting for to share our lives. Love runs smoothly with our partner, family and friends, our creative endeavours have obtained the results we had hoped for, and life is easier and much more relaxed.



This card relates to the number nine in numerology therefore, more information can be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Nine of Cups appears it suggests that your wishes will come true. This is a time of personal contentment on a physical, emotional and material level. You have obtained your goals and achieved what you desire. Maybe you are about to make a commitment to your partner or even get married, or it could be that your love life has just become a little more hectic. Perhaps you are over the moon about becoming pregnant and cannot wait to organise everything you need for the baby. A creative project may have been successful and now you are reaping the rewards. Whatever your situation you can feel confident, contented and pleased with yourself.

### **Negative**

When in a negative position, there is a danger of becoming lazy and careless. Perhaps you feel that you are being taken for granted or being used by others. Things are not living up to your expectations, which may have led you to overindulge on food, drink or drugs, that may have started as an emotional comforter. Maybe you are frightened of losing everything you have put into a relationship or project, and at the moment you are even finding it hard to put a smile on your face. Do not let fear or the need for comfort to force you to exceed your resources or participate in unhealthy behaviour. Learn to moderate.

### **People**

Those who obtain their goal. Those who have their dream come true. Those who get the results they had hoped for. Those who are able to relax. Those who appreciate the arts. Those who feel content with their life. Those who indulge in sensual pleasures. Those who are feeling a little smug. Those who get their wish. Those who are experiencing luxury. Those who are enjoying themselves.

## Ten of Cups



**Key words and phrases:** Contentment. Happiness. A happy family life. Fulfilment in love life. Returned feelings. Compatibility. Peace. Love. Marital bliss. Family bliss. Home. Respect from your neighbours. Getting together with family and friends. Security. Emotionally complete.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a man and a woman in an embrace and looking up in awe at the ten cups that are forming a rainbow above them. Nearby their two children are happily playing and dancing seemingly unaware of this beautiful vision. Their family home can be seen situated on a hill in the distance.

The **rainbow** has been associated with healing and good fortune, fertility and childbirth, dreams and mythical realms. It symbolises hope and peace after a difficult time, and indicates better things ahead. A **rainbow** suggests that we now have the opportunity to find what we have been wishing for.

The **children** on this card may represent a new beginning, attitude or balance to the settlement of conflicting influences. They can also suggest that we may need to connect with the innocent, playful aspect of ourselves.

**Playing** suggests that we need to rid ourselves of our usual approach to a situation and stop taking things too seriously, instead be a little more light-hearted and have some fun. When we are **playing** well, as indicated on this card, suggests that we are able to cope well with the circumstances in our lives.

**Dancing** signifies the need to express ourselves more flowingly, and prompts us to take a look at what makes us happy in our lives. **Dancing** with others signifies that we have a feeling of belonging and have been able to integrate aspects of ourselves. Spiritually it signifies the rhythm of life and the freedom of spirit.

The **family home** symbolises warmth, shelter and sustenance. The **home** can be the centre of our lives and our hearts, and makes us feel secure and relaxed after the hustle and bustle of the outside world. They can be filled with great memories and nostalgia, maybe of times from our childhood or certain events that happened there in the past.

On the whole the Ten of Cups represents joy and happiness in all relationships. We feel secure now that we have attained what we set out to accomplish. Success and lasting happiness has been achieved through the hard work and effort we have implemented. An apex has been reached in our personal relationships and we are now experiencing harmony and integration in all aspects of our lives. We have not only attained material success and emotional security but also spiritual accordance and satisfaction. However, we still have to put in the effort in order to flourish and keep our relationships growing. Our personal hopes and dreams have come true.

This card relates to the number ten in numerology therefore, for other information associated with the Ten of Cups refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Ten of Cups appears in a spread it means that you have achieved something that brings you lasting success and happiness. There is a deep sense of wellbeing and a harmonious love life. You are very much in love, feelings are sincere between you both, and the relationship is based on a strong mutual trust. Stress and tension has disappeared from your life and

you have created a happy and comfortable home life. If you are not attached at the moment a sudden flirtation or love affair may be about to enter your life. The Ten of Cups also suggests that a birth is possible. Your hard work has enabled you to achieve financial security and comfort, and your ability has earned you the recognition and respect you deserve.

### **Negative**

When the Ten of Cups appears in a spread it indicates that there may be stress due to disruption in the home. Perhaps there are arguments or differences of opinion with members of the family. Maybe a member of the family is leaving home and you are finding it hard to let go, or you may have to move from your home. It can also suggest that you or someone else is having problems achieving their goals. Try to resolve any problems in order to restore peace and harmony.

### **People**

Those who have a sense of wellbeing. Those who radiate love. Those who are experiencing peace and harmony. Those who are feeling content and at ease. Those who have a bond with family members. A happy family. Those who are very much in love and have sincere feelings.

# Page of Cups



**Key words and phrases:** Invitation. Token of affection. Love. New friendship. Going on a date. Meeting someone new. A new phase in a relationship. News of a birth, engagement or marriage. Proposition. Artistic temperament. Creative imagination. Studious. Intuitive. Passionate. Talented.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts the young Page dressed in fine quality clothes. The Page is standing on the seashore holding a cup in his right hand that contains a fish he has just caught from the rolling waves of the sea.

The **seashore** is where two different worlds meet, and can symbolise the coming together of our conscious and subconscious minds. We are being invited to make a connection.

The **fish** is a symbol of fertility, sexual happiness and personal growth. **Fish** are connected to our emotions, and represent how we deal with them. Do we go with the tide or do we try to cope on our own? We all have wisdom, awareness and knowledge of our own experiences, but the **fish** is telling us to use our common sense and not wander off and nibble at the temptations that are on offer without thinking about it first. **Fishing** can signify opportunities, however a **fish** that has been caught can suggest some deep emotion that has surfaced. It can indicate that we are on display and feel exposed, and have nowhere to hide now that we are away from our environment or crowd, or we feel that our freedom and natural expression has been cut short. They can also signify a spiritual exploration to the depths of our subconscious mind. The **fish** is a symbol that often appears in Christianity, and was used as a secret symbol of association by the early Christians.

The **rolling waves** signify the ups and downs of life or the positive and negative aspects of our emotions.

On the whole the Page of Cups is associated with thoughts, dreams and emotions. Traditionally, it is linked with good news, the birth of a child or the start of a new project or job. This card represents possibilities or renewal on an emotional level, especially if we have been going through a painful experience. We may have been left feeling vulnerable and wary of our relationships, and worry about whether we are going to meet or become close with someone else ever again. However, the Page of Cups does suggest that happy emotional news is on the way, so perhaps a new relationship is just around the corner. It also suggests that a new creative idea or intuitive drive is emerging that could lead to something special.

When the Page of Cups signifies a person they are young, sensitive, gentle and loving. This person may be imaginative, thoughtful and a dreamer. The Page of Cups is selfless and always willing to help or cooperate with others. Sometimes it can describe a young person who is creative, intuitive or has a spiritual leaning. It can also represent a child or youth that has imaginary fears or nightmares, or may be melancholic and going through emotional difficulties. However, these traits may manifest in us, therefore need to be carefully nurtured.

The Page of Cups is linked to the zodiacal sign of Pisces. For any other information associated with this card refer to the section on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Page of Cups appears you are about to begin a new phase of emotional growth that will help you to strengthen your self-esteem and build up your trust in others. This is the birth of something new. You may discover that you have a talent or skill that can prove to be beneficial or rewarding once

you have developed it properly, or you may be about to embark on a new course of study. These skills could be linked with your keen psychic or artistic ability. You are starting to see things with fresh eyes and it is becoming easier to overcome the obstacles that were drowning you in melancholy. You may receive some good news regarding your love life, maybe a proposition, an invitation, or a date, or you may start or renew a love affair. Be open to the offers and take a chance, it may not be the greatest love story ever told, but you will enjoy it.

It can also suggest that you may meet someone who will turn out to be a true friend. There may soon be news of a happy event coming up, such as an engagement, a wedding, the birth of a child, or some other happy emotional event or news. Stay open to receiving help. Someone who is sensitive and caring may come into your life. This person is young, and what is said may be significant to you. Children may also play an important part in your life. Focus on your emotional issues, receive guidance from within, and go with your gut reaction.

### **Negative**

When the Page of Cups is in a negative position you are inclined to live in a fantasy world, which is stopping you taking advantage of opportunities that may improve your circumstances. You may be having difficulties with a sensitive child. Your lack of dedication and discipline may be causing difficulties in your life. This may lead you to become overindulgent on food, drink and drugs. Now is the time for you to knuckle down with your studies or work. Do not allow your emotions to get the better of you.

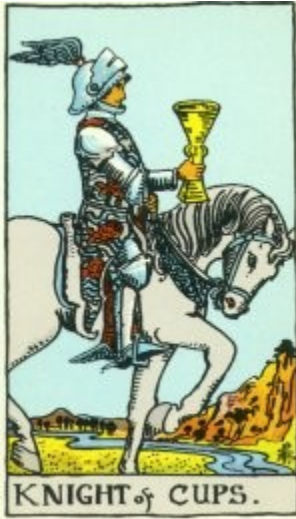
### **People**

Those who are sentimental or romantic. A lover. Those who start a love affair. Those who care for others. Those who express sympathy and understanding. A nurse. A doctor. A pharmacist. Hospital workers. Those who respond to beauty. Those who let their feelings show. An artist. An actor. A photographer.

Those who have psychic experiences. Those who receive guidance from within. Those who reach out and touch someone. A medium. A psychic investigator. Healers. Those who experience direct knowing. A teacher. A student. A sensitive and affectionate child or youth. A young at heart adult. A young friend.



# Knight of Cups



**Keywords and phrases:** Idealistic feelings. Happy changes in your love life. Invitations. A new love. Secret love or relationship. Romance. New experiences. A proposal. Promotion. Inspiration. Following your dream. Opportunities. Artistic. Taking a holiday with friends or loved one. Likes to party. Pleasant, charming and seductive.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a Knight wearing shining armour and a winged helmet as he rides gracefully on a white horse. He is holding out a cup in his left hand as he gently approaches a stream and the hills that are ahead of him.

The **armour** symbolises courage, protection, honour and strength. It signifies chivalry and the need to protect or be protected, possibly from something we feel is threatening us. It can suggest that we are being inflexible or stubborn about moving into new situations. We may feel a need to protect our ideas, ideals, or dreams from mockery or misunderstanding by others. **Armour** may also signify efforts to protect ourselves against emotions that fill us with anxiety.

The **white horse** describes our spiritual awareness and signifies increased strength, stamina and virility. It indicates that it is time to “take the reins” and assume control. Because of its speed, it can mean moving swiftly towards our goal. A **white horse** is a symbol of light, life and spiritual illumination.

The **winged helmet** signifies flight, freedom and also protection. It suggests that we are about to lift-off and become fully aware of our dreams. A **winged helmet** also signifies spiritual energy and protection.

The **stream** suggests that we are aware of the flow of our emotions. It signifies peace and comfort or going with the flow of things or events. A **stream** can also signify our potential and ability to create new life.

The **hills** suggest that we are facing an obstacle, and hoping that we will be able to meet the challenge.

On the whole the Knight of Cups signifies that a busy and exciting time may be about to begin. There may be news of opportunities or invitations that may be favourable for the possibility of a new relationship. Romance is in the air suggesting that we may meet someone who we fall in love with, or who sweeps us off our feet with exciting emotional experiences. This could be in the form of a proposal of some kind, or suddenly taking off on a holiday abroad with a lover or friends. We may become engrossed in a creative or artistic venture, or decide to develop our intuitive or psychic abilities. The Knight of Cups is urging us to follow our heart in whatever we decide to do.

When the Knight of Cups relates to a person, he/she is usually sensitive, loving, idealistic, imaginative, artistic and often psychic. This person is kind, considerate, thoughtful and helpful, and likes to please and attract attention. He/she is exciting and entertaining and has the enthusiasm that can be extremely contagious. The Knight of Cups can be very charming and seductive and may portray the qualities of a romantic lover. However, this knight can be vain and lack sincerity. He/she finds it hard to make a commitment and will be out of there like a shot at the first glimpse of trouble. The Knight of Cups may have good intentions but is not very dependable.

The Knight of Cups is linked with the water elements of the zodiacal signs of Cancer, Scorpio, and Pisces. For any more information regarding this knight please refer to the section on the Court Cards and Astrology.

## **Interpretation**

When the Knight of Cups appears it indicates that new opportunities are on the horizon regarding your love life. It could be that you receive an invitation or a proposition from someone you have met or will meet who sweeps you off your feet. This person is pleasant, seductive, and charming, may be young or young-at-heart and will have an intoxicating effect on you, and before you know it you may find yourself falling in love. However, it urges you to ensure the relationship is sincere and genuine before making a commitment.

Alternatively, new opportunities could prove to be rewarding or profitable. You may be about to start on a creative or artistic endeavour that gives you the chance to use your talents, skills and imagination, or perhaps you are just simply about to change your job. Maybe you have spiritual, holistic or occult interests and want to develop your intuitive or psychic abilities. Perhaps you are about to book a long-awaited holiday with friends. These characteristics can either apply to yourself or someone in your life. You can expect good news that will bring you joy and happy times, so whatever you decide to do, follow your heart and bring some happiness into your life.

## **Negative**

When the Knight of Cups has a negative influence it signifies relationship disappointments, unfulfilled desires and limited options. Perhaps you or someone close to you is indecisive and lacks commitment. An offer or opportunity may not be what it appears to be. You have an overactive imagination and your big ideas are going nowhere. Perhaps this lack of motivation has triggered a separation in your personal relationship. You need to take some time out and think about your life and where it is going. Are your hopes and dreams really going to work or are they unrealistic? Is someone's mood swings driving you to despair? Are other people misleading you? You need to stop being easily influenced by others and stop running away at the first sign of difficulty.

Everything that happens in our lives teaches us a lesson then it is up to us to choose how to deal with it. Maybe you need to make an effort to change the way you react to certain situations or events and bring more balance and faith into your life.

### **People**

Those who are romantic and idealize love. Those who remember special occasions. Those who bring love into your life. Lovers. Charmers. Seducers. Those who are creative and artistic. Poets. Actors. Dancers. Writers. Those who are intuitive. Those who can tap into the subconscious. Mediums. Psychics. Psychologists. Hypnotists. Visionaries. Those who are imaginative. Dreamers. Those who can spin a yarn. Those who are sensitive to other people's moods, feelings, or pain.

Those who can mislead you. Those who have big ideas that come to nothing. Those who are prone to mood swings. Those who can become melancholy and depressed. Those who have a habit of telling lies. Those who can be easily led. Those who are vain. Those who lack sincerity. Those who take offence easily. Those who lack self-confidence. Those who are lazy or lack motivation.

# Queen of Cups



**Key words and phrases:** Homely and maternal. Affectionate. Loving. Protective. Devoted to family and loved ones. Understanding. Sensitive. Intuitive. Honest. Empathic. Intuitive. Psychic abilities. Sympathetic. Creative. Artistic. Refined. Sociable. Sincere. Interested in the occult. An emotional and harmonious life. In love.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a beautiful woman dressed in white and blue majestic clothes sitting beside a calm sea on her elaborate throne that is decorated with water nymphs. She is holding a closed ornate cup that is symmetrically designed with an angel on each handle, which she closely meditates upon.

The **white and blue majestic clothes** represent power and status. The colour **white** symbolises innocence, warmth and love, and also physical or emotional protection, or the spiritual protection of faith. The colour **blue** signifies peace and purity. It is associated with dreamlike states, contemplation, introspection and yearning. **Blue** is a healing colour suggesting relaxation, sleep and tranquillity. It is also a colour of self-expression and wisdom.

The **sea** symbolises our emotions. A **calm sea** indicates that our emotional life is becoming calmer and more peaceful. The **sea** can signify intuition, sensitivity, perception, or any aspect of the feminine. For a man, it may symbolise a connection with his feminine side or anima. It can also signify our innate creative potential or the spiritual side of our personality.

The **throne** symbolises that we are recognising the right to take control. It is a seat of power and authority in both the earthly and spiritual world.

The **water nymphs** symbolise beauty, innocence, purity and youthfulness. It is said that they lived on the shores or in caves beneath the ocean. They adore music and dance and have the power of prophecy. They can present us with gifts, but can also be dangerous by drowning us. Mermaids are classed as **water nymphs** and often appear as beautiful young maidens. For a man they suggest the ideal woman, if there is such a thing, which can mean that it can hinder his relationship with women if he is forever searching for perfection, or it could be that he is frightened of sex. For male and female, it suggests that we may need to look at our own perception of femininity, and in what areas we may need to improve in order to grow and become whole. **Water nymphs** are obviously associated with the water element, which symbolises the emotions and intuition, and also healing with relationships, children, love and sex.

The **angels** symbolise advice, guidance, help or protection. They suggest that help will be provided if we ask for it. Because **angels** are spiritual they may signify the desire to connect with our spiritual side. They suggest that something situated deep in our subconscious could help us to remove the obstacles that are stopping us from moving forward.

On the whole the Queen of Cups represents either a mature woman who is significant to us in some way, or the personality traits that she embodies are being expressed within us at the time of the reading. She is highly intuitive and probably even psychic, and trusts that her inner guidance can pull her out of any difficult circumstances. The Queen of Cups is a very passionate woman and has a loving and sensitive nature. She always has a kind word for everyone and her gentleness and compassion makes her loved by all.

However, there may seem to be some aspects of her personality that are hard to fathom out. It may feel like something secretive is going on around her or there is an air of mystery about her. At times it seems that she has entered a mysterious world making it hard for us to know who she really is. She also has a very strong maternal and nurturing nature and never turns anyone away who is in need of help in some way. The Queen of Cups feels what others are feeling and reacts with sensitivity and compassion.

She is linked with the zodiacal sign of Scorpio. For more information on her personality turn to the section on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Queen of Cups appears you may be becoming more in touch with your inner self and your feelings. You could discover that you have similar traits as the Queen of Cups or someone with her qualities may have entered or is about to enter your life. Your imagination and your creative skills may lead you to tackle a project that will give you the opportunity to express your artistic qualities. Perhaps you will experience deep feelings and emotions due to you beginning a relationship that has become loving, warm, passionate and sensual. If you are unsure of which direction to take, just take some time out, listen to your feelings and inner voice because your intuition and gut feelings are usually right, and trust them to guide you to make the choices and decisions that could be favourable for you.

### **Negative**

When negative, the Queen of Cups signifies that you may be changeable and unreliable. Perhaps your moods are becoming a drain on others because they cannot understand why you are behaving so erratic and unpredictable. Maybe you are in an unhappy relationship or feel that you have been deceived. It could be that you have been hurt in the past and are being too protective with your feelings making it hard for others to get close to you, or maybe you are indulging in drink or drugs to escape from the real world. Perhaps you need to

look at both sides of the situation before judging it, and maybe you need to express your feelings more easily so that all parties involved will know where they are up to within the relationship or situation.

### **People**

A kind-hearted, tender, calming, understanding, affectionate and loving woman. A wife, a mother, a friend or protective and maternal woman who looks after the wellbeing of others. A woman who is intelligent, refined, and a good adviser. A generous and honest woman. A woman who is devoted to her loved ones and those close to her. An intuitive woman. A woman who is very perceptive. An imaginative, creative and artistic woman. An emotional, loyal and passionate woman.



# King of Cups



**Keywords and phrases:** Generous. Helpful. Understanding. Supportive. Compassionate. Considerate. Reliable. Kind. Protective. Caring. Professional. Balanced. Imaginative. Knowledgeable. Reserved. A good listener. Gives good advice. Collaboration. Negotiation. Association. Interested in the arts. Sincere love. A father figure. A good friend.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a regal man dressed in a gold, red and blue long robe sitting on a sturdy throne that is situated on a platform in the middle of the sea. He holds a large cup in his right hand and a short sceptre in his left, and around his neck he wears a gold chain with a gold pendant of a fish attached. A ship to his left is sailing on a voyage and to his right a large fish is leaping up out of the sea.

The **robe** symbolises status and power. It can signify warmth and love, and emotional or physical protection, and also the spiritual protection of faith. The **gold** colour is connected with the emotional self, and its attributes are reasoning and sometimes judgement. It symbolises intelligence, consciousness and awareness, and suggests that we are able to recognise love, patience, wisdom and integrity. This colour urges us to focus on positive feelings and warmth, and promises that success and happiness will enter our lives. The colour **gold** brings out the best and most precious and loved aspects of ourselves.

The colour **red** is associated with life, warmth, love and fertility, but also danger, anger and aggression. **Red** can suggest that we may be suppressing passionate feelings or indicates an intense drive for achievement and success.

The colour **blue** is a symbol of peace and purity. It is associated with dreamlike states, contemplation, introspection and yearning. **Blue** is a healing colour, suggesting relaxation, sleep and tranquillity. It also signifies self-expression and wisdom.

The **throne** is a seat of power and authority in both the earthly and spiritual realms. It is a traditional symbol of kingship, divine authority and power. It suggests that we are acknowledging our right to take authority. A **throne** can also represent our ability to belong to groups, or to society.

The **platform** can be associated with a stage. It can signify that we either feel exposed or long for acknowledgement or recognition. It suggests that we may need to “take centre stage” and make ourselves known.

The **sea** symbolises our emotions. The **sea waves** signify the ups and downs of our everyday lives, however this king is on top of the **sea** suggesting that we are in control of our emotions.

The **large cup** is associated with the water element, which symbolises intuition and the emotions, and with healing in relationships, children, love and sex. It represents our feminine side and suggests that we are receptive to intuitive information. The **cup** urges us to understand that if we are intuitively open to our feminine side we are more able to both give and receive help and assistance with love and sensitivity.

The **sceptre** is a symbol of authority and rulership. Originally it was a male phallic or fertility symbol, but now implies royal or divine power, and has been used as a symbol of imperial or kingly position. A **sceptre** represents the right to use our authority. It can also signify the transference of divine power from above.

The **fish pendant** is a symbol of our emotions, and a common symbol of fertility and personal growth. **Fish** can also symbolise the emotional elements that are deep in the subconscious mind. According to Jung, **fish** may symbolise a deep level of unconsciousness. To relate with the **fish** in the card that is leaping up out of the sea, Jung said: "Fishes and snakes are favourite symbols for describing happenings or experiences that suddenly dart out of the unconscious and have a frightening or redeeming effect." Therefore, a **fish** can signify a spiritual or deep search of our subconscious mind to see what pops up.

The **ship** symbolises our journey through life, and can relate to the emotional inner journey that we may be going through. It suggests that we may be creating new horizons or interests, or on a voyage of discovery for new experiences, however we will not be doing this alone, others will be involved. A **ship** also symbolises the feminine because of its capricious nature.

On the whole the King of Cups signifies that some traits of this king is emerging in us, or it is a man with similar traits who plays an important part in our lives at the time of the reading. He makes a good adviser or counsellor on emotional or psychological matters. Although he seems empathetic he will remain detached. He is friendly and helpful and usually in a position of authority, but can take on most things. He works well with people and is well respected for his diplomacy and his careful intuitive approach. We may find him in some caring profession possibly in a role of mediator, because he is a good listener and so sensitive that he will immediately sense and understand the root cause of any matter, which may lead him to become very successful.

Although he has deep feelings, he finds it hard to express them and will keep his worries and problems to himself preferring to bury his head in his work helping other people. It seems that he is frightened of losing control of his feelings, and even though he may want to be in a deep relationship he will need to feel that the commitment, trust and loyalty is strong enough for him to

open up to his emotions. However, when he is in love he is emotional and highly sexual.

The King of Cups is linked to the zodiacal sign of Cancer. For any other information related to this king refer to the section on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the King of Cups appears it is time to get in touch with your own feelings. You may receive some good advice or healing with the help of someone from the caring, healing, teaching, spiritual or ecclesiastical professions. This person may help you to develop aspects of your inner self or teach you to be more open or to trust your feelings a lot more. Alternatively, you may be asked to compassionately assist someone close to you who may be unhappy with something that is bothering them.

Your intuition and instinct will turn out to be correct with some issue or decision that you make in the near future. Try not to be hurt by what others might say to you, you know they do not really mean it. Be creative and use your intuition to gain success in your career. Take control of your career and property matters, and keep your eye on your investments. Happy circumstances arise from a loved one, or this is a period in which you feel satisfied.

### **Negative**

When the King of Cups has a negative influence it signifies that you or someone close to you feels that their prestige has been damaged. There are upsets in your career or home life. Someone may be playing with your emotions to get what they want from you. Use your intuition and do not be conned into anything. Perhaps you are being too overprotective with your family and they feel that you are stifling their every movement. Maybe others feel that you are being very moody recently and do not know whether they are

going to come home or meet up with someone who is going to be happy or miserable.

### **People**

A good-hearted, generous and loyal man. A kind and honest man. a man who keeps his head in a crisis. A man who inspires confidence and exerts a beneficial influence on others. A doctor. A counsellor. A man who has the ability to ease, bring peace and reassurance to others or to a situation. A judge or lawyer. A connoisseur. A gourmet. An artist. A man who is devoted to a noble and generous cause. A priest. A teacher.

# Swords

**Element:** Air

**Astrological Signs:** Gemini, Libra and Aquarius

**Season:** Autumn (September – October – November)

**Key words and phrases:** Mental activity. Communication. Ideas. Thought. Intelligence. Courage. Truth. Justice. Major choices. Perseverance. Self-control. Fighting against obstacles. Trouble. Worries. Conflict. Important decisions. Reason. Logic.

The suit of Swords is similar to the Spades in an ordinary pack of cards. Swords relate to the air element and are associated with intellect, thought, reason, truth, justice and moral principles. Words, communications and verbal arguments are usual characteristics of the Swords suit. Swords and the air element are linked with the educated mind and ideas that are always carefully thought out, scrutinized and categorised. They can also indicate conflicts, worries and difficulties that need a solution or action to be taken.

# Ace of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** Courage. The start of an intellectual endeavour. Daring and risky initiative. A focused mind. Attainment of power and goals. Recognition. Victory following a fight. Legal matters. Justice. Original creation. Start of success. Career satisfaction. Improved financial conditions. Will to win. Leader. Champion. Hero.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a hand appearing from a grey cloud grasping a sword above a rugged landscape. The point of the sword is encircled by a crown, from which plants are hanging.

The **hand appearing from the cloud** is a symbol of power and creativity. The **cloud** is a symbol of fertility, revelation and potential. A **grey cloud** suggests that we need to take a current situation seriously. It also signifies dedication and service.

The **sword** is an important and ancient symbol of power, authority, strength, courage, justice and intellect that can be used in a constructive or a destructive way. It also signifies clarity of thought, perception and spiritual insight, and suggests that we are able to effectively cut through to the heart of the matter.

The **rugged landscape** symbolises the obstacles and challenges that we may have to negotiate. It suggests that we need to be aware of the difficulties that may arise, and to be careful not to add to the problems through a negative attitude when trying to reach our goals.

The **crown** is a symbol of power, status and authority. It suggests that we may receive acknowledgement and praise for our own success or for reaching our goals. A **crown** signifies that we now have the opportunity to expand our knowledge and awareness. It is a symbol of victory and dedication to duty.

The **plants** that are hanging from the crown signify that we need to nurture and create our own opportunities because they are a symbol of progressive change due to their process of growth and decay. Many **plants** have healing and magical qualities, but if we do not have the knowledge to use their power then **plants** can be harmful. Therefore, it is suggesting that we need to positively progress to obtain the information or knowledge that will push us further towards our goals.

On the whole, the Ace of Swords symbolises our ability to apply intelligence, logic and reason in a fair and responsible way. It suggests that we should behave rationally when facing problems or when trying to resolve a situation. We are being urged to be courageous in adversity, even though it feels too difficult to find the strength to overcome our challenges. Whatever our situation, as long as we face it with a firm determination and honesty, justice will win in the end.

We all have conflict and setbacks at some point in our lives therefore we must view our problems objectively by looking at the facts in order to give us a clear understanding of the situation, and to establish what is right or wrong. This will enable us to dispel any confusion on our quest to find the truth. Once we have cleared up any doubts or illusions a resolution usually follows, then we will know what to do.

This card relates to the number one in numerology and the air elements of the zodiacal signs of Gemini, Libra and Aquarius therefore, more information associated with the Ace of Swords can be found in the sections of this book on Tarot and Numerology and Tarot and Astrology.



## **Interpretation**

When the Ace of Swords appears in a spread, it indicates that you are able to use your logic and intuition to deal effectively with a situation and resolve matters that you are worried about. Your mental energy is strong, which will help you to face your challenges and obstacles in a controlled and decisive way. It suggests that you will be able to think more clearly and make rational decisions that will enable you to drive forward with your plans and win the day. A new project or job may be on the horizon that will enable you to utilise your intellect and communication skills, or you may be about to begin some form of study. Perhaps a new idea may turn out to be profitable. Whatever your situation, concentrate and focus on your goals and objectives and trust your own judgement. If you are involved with any legal matters, it indicates that justice will prevail. Be disciplined and determined to overcome your difficulties, challenges or obstacles.

## **Negative**

In a negative situation, it indicates that you may suffer losses through being too dependent on theory and not paying enough attention to practical issues or to human values. You may be overreacting to some kind of situation. It may suggest that you are behaving too forcefully in trying to reach your goals. Pressurising others will not achieve anything. There may be delays or conflict with putting your business ideas into action. Perhaps you have health problems that will need a visit to the hospital for a minor operation or involve injections.

## **People**

Those who analyse a situation. Those who use their intellect. Those who apply logic and reason. Those who overcome adversity. Those who face their problems. Those who find the strength overcome a situation. Those who are undaunted by setbacks. Those who work in the legal system. Those who champion a cause. Those who right a wrong. Those who accept responsibility. Those who want what is fair. Those who establish the truth.

# Two of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** Crossing swords with someone. Disagreement. A tense situation. Possible problems ahead. Struggle. Feeling overwhelmed. Challenge. A difficult decision. Competition. Precarious balance. Struggle. Getting nowhere fast. Antagonism. Provocation. Incompatibility. Choosing the lesser of two evils. Quarrel. Contention. Duality. Truce. Antagonism. A settlement. Balancing the situation. An agreement. Differences resolved.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a young woman wearing a blindfold sitting on a stool with her back to the sea. She has her arms crossed across her chest while holding two swords across her shoulders. Jagged rocks can be seen emerging from the sea and a new moon shines down on her.

The **blindfold** suggests there is something we are not seeing, or maybe refusing to see. We are being irrational and refusing to see the bigger picture. Maybe we are choosing to ignore our own or someone else's faults, or perhaps we feel that we are being deceived but do not want to face the truth. If we do not stand up to it we will never be able to move on and anxiety will get the better of us.

**The crossed arms and swords** can signify the pain and suffering we are putting ourselves through because of our difficulties, worries and fears, however it will eventually lead to transformation. It can also suggest that we are putting ourselves in a situation of self-imposed martyrdom, maybe due to some guilty feeling. We need to remove whatever it is in our life that is forcing us to bear a cross and start to love ourselves again.

The **jagged rocks** symbolise a threat of disaster if we do not do anything about the situation we are in. Perhaps we are being too emotional and need to move in a different direction. **Rocks** suggest that we have the strength of character even when the odds are against us, so instead of battling against these obstacles we need to find a way around them, our success will depend on this.

The **new moon** is a symbol of receptivity, instinct, the subconscious, emotional life and the ability to react. The **moon** can pull on our emotions and is associated with feelings, irrationality, and the subconscious or hidden. Its symbolism is predominately associated with the feminine, and connected to the imagination, intuition, psychic powers and dreaming. The **new moon** suggests that we need to be receptive to what is going on in our lives, especially of an emotional nature, and to search deeply within ourselves to find the answers that will enable us to move forward. A new phase is beginning in our lives.

On the whole, the Two of Swords signifies that we may find ourselves in an unhappy situation but afraid to act upon it. Closing our eyes to what is going on only causes us distress, and no matter how much we refuse to face the truth or run away from the situation it will eventually come back to trouble us again. Why do we sometimes refuse to look at the facts or ignore the warning signs and instead pretend that everything is fine? Perhaps we are afraid to act or do not want to rock the boat, so we try to hide our distress or turn a deaf ear to the situation. If we stifle our true feelings for too long we will find it much harder to open up again, which will lead to our situation or relationships making no progress. Therefore, we need to have the courage to take off the blindfold and address our issues by listening to each other in order to break free of the deadlock and bring peace and harmony to our situation.

This card relates to the number two in numerology therefore, more information is available by referring to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Two of Swords appears, it suggests that you need to face up to the challenges or obstacles that you come up against, otherwise you will feel forever trapped by your circumstances. You may be in a relationship or situation that seems to be filled with conflict and discord but choose not to acknowledge that there are any problems, so you put up barriers to protect yourself from any hurt or unpleasantness. Lack of clarity and differences of opinion will only cause confusion and deadlock if you do not confront your situation or the trouble within your relationship.

This card indicates that you may be your own worst enemy and have imposed the stalemate upon yourself. However, once you have found the courage to make your move, you will be able to see your way forward and bring peace and balance back into your life. Do not bury your head in the sand, once you resolve your dilemma you will know where you are headed and a new way of life will begin.

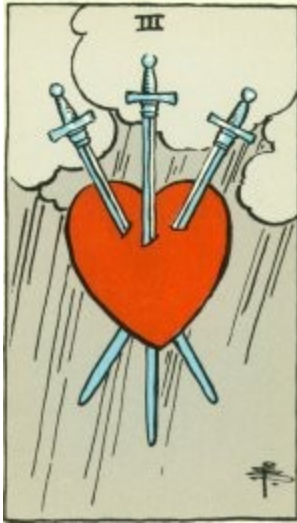
### **Negative**

In a negative position, the Two of Swords indicates that it is the end of the deadlock and you can now see yourself clear to move forward. You have thought things out very carefully or even received advice, which has made you feel that you have to make changes or take a new direction for your own benefit. If you have made any decisions related to your circumstances just wait a little while to see how they unfold.

### **People**

Those who are being defensive. Those who are hiding their true feelings. Those who suppress their emotions. Those who refuse to look at the facts. Those who pretend that everything is fine. Those who are always on the defence. Those who shut their eyes to what is going on. Those who choose not to know. Those who do not like to rock the boat. Those who feel afraid to act. Those who refuse to make a decision.

## Three of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** Tears and woe. Sorrow. Conflict. Strife. Hurt. Painful news. Loss. Funerals. Emotional pain. Grief. Disorder. Angry with friends. Separation. Divorce. The end of a love affair. Distraught about your love life. Confusion. Surgery.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a heart being pierced by three swords floating in the sky. Behind the pierced heart stormy clouds have gathered and it is raining heavily.

The **pierced heart** signifies that someone or something has deeply hurt or wounded us on an emotional level, usually a close relationship or a partnership. It can also suggest a minor operation at the hospital may be needed. Whatever the situation it will mean some kind of severance. Rather than keeping our emotions to ourselves it would be wise to seek counsel or comfort from people who are close to us at this time.

The **stormy clouds** suggest that we are suppressing our feelings of anger and frustration. A **storm** can release our pressure and tension, so perhaps an outburst can clear the air, so to speak.

The **heavy rain** signifies emotional upheaval and sadness about a relationship. It indicates tears and the release of repressed feelings and emotions. It is time to let go and wash away whatever or whoever has been hurting us.

On the whole, the Three of Swords symbolises grief, sadness, loss, and breakages in relationships, work, and financial or material issues. It signifies a situation in which we have discovered a painful truth that has left us

heartbroken. However, this card does have a positive side to it. It urges us to find the strength to move forward because we will come to the realisation that pain and grief are a part of life, therefore, only temporary. If we try to understand pain and grief as a process that we need to work with rather than work against, then the healing process that follows will allow us to move forward.

It indicates that we need to deal honestly with our situation or relationship in order to gain some insight into our dilemma, even though we are hurting inside. It will help us to see things as they really are and put our emotional pain into perspective. Life comes in cycles as does pain and grief, and can be looked upon as a catalyst for growth and change, by teaching us compassion and showing us new and happier ways to live.

This card relates to the number three in numerology therefore, more information associated with the Three of Swords can be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Three of Swords appears, it suggests that you are going through a period of mental stress, emotional hurt and sadness, conflict and upheaval. This could be due to angry quarrels, a separation or breakup within a personal or family relationship, or within a situation. Relationships are very much on your mind at the moment. However, you need to be honest with yourself, put your pain and sorrow into perspective and try to come to terms with your emotional situation in order to start the healing process and find a resolution to your anguish.

Once you have managed to realise that your situation was inevitable and necessary to go through then you will be able to move forward in a positive way, and as a result you will become more understanding, compassionate

and a much stronger person. Sometimes this card suggests the need for medical or dental treatment.

### **Negative**

In a negative situation, the Three of Swords suggests that you have been going through a painful time and now it is finally coming to an end. It may have left you feeling a little confused but you are learning to manage and cope again. The worst is over and the healing process has begun. It may also indicate illness or minor surgery.

### **People**

Those suffering emotional pain. Those who are hurting inside. Those who receive some bad news. Those who are heartbroken. Those who feel lonely. Those who are separated from loved ones. Those who have been rejected. Those who discover a painful truth. Those who feel they have been stabbed in the back. Those who have been betrayed. Grief-stricken people.

## Four of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** Rest. Recovery from illness. Relaxation. Recuperation. Realistic. Recharging your batteries. Constructive. Person of action. Efficient. Works hard. Cautious and sensible. A holiday or trip. Taking time out.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a knight lying on his tomb with his hands held in prayer. Three swords hang on the wall next to a stained-glass window and another sword lies at the side of his tomb.

The **knight lying on his tomb** suggests that he is searching the spiritual side of his nature to find the heroic aspect of himself that will take risks in order to gain honour, respect, but also to remain true to himself. He feels the need to protect his ideas and ideals, and protect himself from the emotions that make him feel anxious, and also from the things he feels are threatening him. The **tomb** symbolises death and rebirth, whether it is literal or metaphorical. In other words, it is the end of a phase in life and the beginning of a new lease or quality of life.

The knight's **hands held in prayer** suggest that we are calling for outside help. Through prayer and meditation we are not just trying to communicate with God, but also the higher spiritual side of ourselves. **Praying** is also a way of making amends for our wrongdoings. We all need to feel that there is a higher power there for us when we feel the need to atone for our sins, or bargain for what we want.

On the whole, the Four of Swords indicates a period of recovery in order to recharge our batteries after a period of emotional or physical turmoil. It



suggests that we need to spend some time in solitude and contemplation to gain a better perspective on our circumstances and experiences, and to gather our strength and prepare ourselves for the future. We need to stand back and take a break, think things through and review where we are at just now. This will give us the opportunity to relax our body and soul, listen to our inner voice and consolidate our inner resources to prepare us for the tasks ahead. Sometimes it signifies convalescence after an illness. Whatever our situation, it suggests that we need time alone to examine our motivations, to give our body time to heal and prepare ourselves for a new energizing and driving force in our lives.

This card relates to the number four in numerology therefore, other information can be found by referring to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Four of Swords appears in a spread, it indicates that you need time out to rest and recuperate. Perhaps you have been ill and need to convalesce or need to rest after a period of hard work. Time alone will give you the chance to build up your strength and energy and to put recent events into perspective. Perhaps it may be a good idea to take some time away from your daily routine or maybe even a holiday is in order.

It is important to look after your own needs and take the time to explore any conflicting emotional or physical elements in your life that need to be resolved. Only by bringing some peace and quiet into your life will you be able to restore balance and harmony of your mind, body and soul. If you continue to overdo it and do not take a break your health may suffer. You need to rest now and again, and once you have you will be ready to fight another day.

### **Negative**

In a negative position, the Four of Swords indicates that you may be feeling out of touch with friends and relationships and with what is going on around

you after a period of rest. Your faith has been restored and you are filled with hope and energy. You feel refreshed and able to cope with your daily routine. However, you need to be aware that your health may still continue to be a worrying factor in your life at the moment even if it does not feel like it.

### **People**

Those who are resting or taking a break. Those who are giving their body time to heal. Those who are recuperating from an illness. Those who are finding peace and quiet. Those who are taking time alone to think. Those who are examining their motivations. Those who are preparing for the future. Those who are tying up loose ends.

## Five of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** Triumph and defeat. Negative thinking. Winning unfairly. Cheating. Manipulation. Struggle. Losing face. Humiliation. Getting what you want but not the way you want it. Using drastic measures to overcome problems or obstacles. Destructive behaviour. Success in some areas but not in others. Selfish.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a man looking back with contempt at two other men who seemingly look defeated and dejected after a fight or conflict. Stormy clouds are building up as the man collects the captured swords as a trophy for his success.

A **fight or conflict** signifies the personal battles or struggles of our everyday lives. **Conflict** can come at us from all sorts of sources, such as work, love, sex, money, children, and so on, and often there is no easy solution. Our opponents may be real people or represent abstract qualities, such as luck, fate, challenges or opposition, or an aspect of ourselves that we are at odds with. It suggests that we may have entered into some kind of quarrel and need to look at the conflict situations in our lives, and the people we come into contact with on a regular basis to see whether they are being aggressive or domineering.

If we feel defeated or deceived, we need to see whether we are being manipulated over a real issue. Usually our opponents will be people with whom we are having some kind of struggle or **conflict**. Who wins is a vital question, as it could indicate what is actually happening in an important relationship, what we wish for or what we fear. Therefore, we also need to pay attention to our feelings in situations like this. Are we feeling frightened, hurt,

confused, sad, angry or rebellious? If we can relate to any of these feelings, then once we have come to terms with them and our situation we will be more likely to take the appropriate action.

The **stormy clouds** suggest that we are suppressing our feelings of anger and frustration. A **storm** can release our pressure and tension, so perhaps an outburst can clear the air.

A **trophy** symbolises achievement and recognition. It suggests that we have overcome our obstacles and used our instincts and intuition to gain success over our opponents.

On the whole, the Five of Swords reminds us to think about our own and other people's motivations. It suggests that we may have been taking advantage of someone and tried to impose our will on a situation without taking the concerns of others into consideration. The Five of Swords indicates that we must accept our limitations and learn to use integrity, rather than being manipulative and selfish in our quest to gain ground. On the other hand, it can suggest that we feel humiliated because we have allowed ourselves to be deceived or hurt by a situation or person. There are times when we need to think of our own needs, especially when we are being taken advantage of or feel tired from the demands of others.

The Five of Swords can also indicate arguments and hostility, and if we have emerged from a hostile situation then what was the cost of the victory and did the ends justify the means? In hindsight are we now thinking "why on earth did I do that and what was I thinking?" If we have been treated unfairly, exploited or humiliated, what are we going to do to make sure it does not happen again? There is too much degradation, destruction, dishonour, cowardice, cruelty and greed on this planet, so we need to face up to our responsibilities and try to salvage something worthwhile and long-lasting in

our lives from the lessons that we can learn from all the adverse situations around the world.

This card relates to the number five in numerology therefore, the section on Tarot and Numerology can offer more information associated with the Five of Swords.

### **Interpretation**

When the Five of Swords appears, it indicates that you may find yourself in a situation where someone or something is stopping you from moving forward and you have no choice but to swallow your pride and accept the reality of the situation. Admitting to your limitations may be humiliating, but alas we must in order to make changes and progress. Perhaps you have taken on more than you can cope with, and because of your ego you do not like to admit that you have made a mistake. Trying to blame it on others will only cause hostility, so there is no use trying to force the issue because it will only backfire on you.

You may still want to carry out the changes that you want to implement or the direction you have been wishing for. However, you may succeed in some areas but not in others, and realise that your desires have not been fulfilled, because even though you may have got what you wanted, it may not have been the way you wanted it to be. Perhaps you are trying to make changes too quickly, which is resulting in conflict and confusion. Before you can move forward, maybe you need to listen, learn and understand other people's side of things before making your own decisions, taking your own action and trying to get your own way. The Five of Swords is teaching us a lesson in urging us to reconcile ourselves with the disagreeable situations and events in order to move on.

### **Negative**

In a negative position, the Five of Swords has a similar meaning to the upright position but is moving out of your life. It suggests that you have learnt to

swallow your pride and honestly assessed your own abilities and peace has come back into your life. However, the battle has thrown about a lot of lies and slander and left you feeling envious, victimised and full of self-pity, but there is no going back. You can analyse what went wrong but it is best to accept what happened and start again.

### **People**

Those who act in their own self-interest. Those who think of their own needs. Bad losers. Those who are experiencing conflict and hostility. Troublemakers. Those who achieve a dubious victory. Those who lose sight of what is right. Those who are dishonourable. Those who lose face.

## Six of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** Moving away from stress, troubles, conflict or difficulties. A feeling of moral or physical discomfort. Difficult or argumentative relationships. Feeling insecure or misunderstood. Deciding to move on. Severing a relationship. Cutting ties. Leaving difficulties for a safe refuge. Relocating. Intellectual and moral fatigue. Depression. Poor or failing health. In the wrong job. The worries of daily life. Travel. A water journey.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a ferryman carrying two passengers across a river to a distant shore. The two figures that are shrouded in shawls seem to be mother and child.

The **ferryman** symbolises that we are being steered out of one phase of our lives to another, and leaving the past behind for a new and better future. He is also associated with death, which comes from the story of the **ferryman** carrying people across the River Styx to their death. However, in this case it suggests being ferried towards a major change.

The **river** represents our emotional journey. In this case, crossing the river suggests that we are moving out of rough waters into calmer waters and great changes are about to happen in our lives. Water is a symbol of fertility, growth, creative potential, new life and healing.

A **shroud** symbolises death, which may be the death of something in our lives, or the death of our past way of life. However, it can also signify that we may have something to hide.

On the whole, the Six of Swords indicates that worries, tensions and anxieties are being resolved. It suggests that we are getting over a tough period in our lives and hopefully heading towards a more positive phase and peace of mind. We still do not know what the future holds but feel that our circumstances can only improve. This may signify a journey of learning and personal development, a journey that needs to be made to help us to emerge from our difficulties in a much wiser and more balanced frame of mind. The Six of Swords may indicate a literal move or journey to somewhere where we will feel more secure and happier. We are entering a new phase and trying to put our problems behind us, and we are filled with new hopes and aspirations. The only way to go now is forward.

This card relates to the number six in numerology therefore, other information associated with the Six of Swords can be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Six of Swords appears in a spread indicates that you may have been going through difficult relationships, moral or physical discomfort or the numerous worries of daily life. Now you are ready to experience a change of scene or move to a different location for some peace of mind. Perhaps you feel like taking a trip or even moving abroad. This is a turning point in your life, which you enter into with a more positive outlook on life. You are leaving the past behind even though you do not know what the future holds, but you know that you have your dignity and self-respect and the only way is up.

### **Negative**

When the Six of Swords is in a negative position it suggests that a situation is getting better but not as quickly as you would like it to be. There may be delays with travel or a move, or a relationship may be severed because of a journey or move. Perhaps your work is not going as smoothly as you would like it to be and you are suffering financial losses through taking risks or being



careless. It is not a good idea to take short cuts when faced with problems, you need to be tenacious and consider matters carefully.

### **People**

Those who are trying to get over a tough time. Those who are picking up the pieces. Those who are recovering and beginning to cope again. Those who are travelling or on some kind of journey. Those who are changing location. Those who are entering into a new frame of mind. Those who are experiencing a change of scenery.

## Seven of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** Slyness. Sneakiness. Cunning. Trickery. Taking advantage of someone. A less-than-honourable action. Unreliability. Taking something that does not belong to you. Stealing. Theft. Secrecy. Betrayal. Feeling cheated. Ability to convince others. Success due to your ideas. A job or career change. A brilliant mind.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

The Waite deck depicts a young man quietly creeping away from a tent camp carrying a number of swords in his arms while looking over his shoulder to make sure he has not been seen.

The **creeping away** is to act like a thief. This suggests that either someone may be furtively taking something from us or we need to check whether we are being totally honest about something. It does not necessarily mean that some materialistic possessions are being taken, it can also suggest that our emotions, energy or ideas may be being stolen.

The **tent camp** suggests that we need to get away from our everyday responsibilities. We may also be feeling the need to move on, away from ties and not have to depend on anyone. **Tents** signify that we want to be self-sufficient and have a more simpler way of life.

On the whole, the Seven of Swords indicates that we will need to be diplomatic and cunning when we are dealing with the opposition, challenges or obstacles that we may come up against when trying to reach our goals. We will need to use our intellect, logic and wits when investigating or trying to solve our problems in order to obtain the best results. It suggests that if we are to take advantage of a situation then some kind of deception may be

needed, even though it makes us feel uncomfortable. Moving behind the scenes may help us to gain control of a situation without it appearing that we are to others, in the hope that the end will justify the means to bring us success.

However, the Seven of Swords also advises us to be careful that we are not being taken advantage of or being deceived. This may be in the form of someone opposing our freedom, independence and diversity, or even stealing from us, which includes our ideas and plans, therefore we may even need to be careful of what we say to others. It suggests that we do not run away from our problems or troubles but to stand up for what we believe is right with integrity and diplomacy.

This card is related to the number seven in numerology therefore, other information associated with the Seven of Swords can be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Seven of Swords appears it advises you not to act hastily or impulsively when facing a difficult situation, instead it suggests that you approach it in a skilful and intelligent way. Confrontation and arguments are not the answer. You need to be tactful, diplomatic and be careful with who you trust when trying to reach your goals. Guile, strategy and knowledge of other people's weaknesses will help you to beat the opposition. Be careful about sharing your ideas and plans because someone may be taking notes, and before you know it your project is in someone else's name. At this time you need to be vigilant to avoid being deceived. Your success is due to your ideas, intellect, studies or research, so do not let anyone take all the glory.

Perhaps you are running away from some commitment, responsibility, relationship or work. You may be procrastinating because you do not want to face your problems and in the hope that they will go away. You need to

consider the consequences of your actions because others may class you as being unreliable. Negative attitudes will only interfere with your goals. If you are not happy with your relationships, job or financial situation you should consider moving on and find a more compatible and satisfying situation. If you are in conflict with someone or with a situation then you need to think positive and respect other people's ideas and what they have to say, perhaps then you may be able to make some kind of compromise. If not then maybe your own ideas, experience, philosophy or contacts will possibly benefit you and help you towards your goal.

### **Negative**

When the Seven of Swords is in a negative position you will need to be aware of being manipulated or talked into buying into some scheme that will become a burden to you. You may need to keep your wits about you for thieves just now. Dwelling on your past mistakes can prevent you from making any progress. Helpful advice or assistance is being offered, listen to what is said. An unconventional approach to exploring new ideas and plans may prove to be profitable.

### **People**

Those who hide from the truth. Those who take the easy way out. Those who sneak away. Those who keep things to themselves. Those who are deceiving or being deceived. A cunning person. Those who are lying or stealing. A thief. Those who cover their tracks. Those who move behind the scenes. Those who prefer to work alone. Those who control without appearing to.

## Eight of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** Feeling trapped by difficult circumstances or fear. Feeling isolated. Crisis. A major difficulty. Lacking confidence. Restriction. Disagreement. Difference of opinion. Quarrels. Anxiety. An oppressive environment. Conflict or difficulties requiring a fight. A change or a renewal in your life. A blessing in disguise.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a bound and blindfolded robed woman standing on a wet and marshy shore surrounded by eight swords that have been thrust into the ground. In the background a castle stands on top of the rock-face at the edge of the seashore.

Being **bound** signifies a feeling of restriction and confinement. It suggests that we may feel that we are in a situation we cannot escape from. It can also mean that we are putting these restrictions on ourselves, perhaps through tying ourselves to work or some other circumstance.

Being **blindfolded** signifies that there is something we are not seeing or refusing to see. It suggests that we are being irrational and refusing to see the bigger picture. Maybe we are choosing to ignore our own or someone else's faults, or perhaps we feel that we are being deceived but do not want to face the truth. Whatever the situation we need to stand up to it or we will never be able to move on and anxiety will get the better of us.

The **wet and marshy shore** signifies emotional difficulty. It suggests that we are feeling insecure and bogged down with problems, and perhaps finding it hard to move forward due to a lack of confidence or emotional support.

Being **surrounded by the swords** is to feel trapped. It suggests that our situation or circumstances are making us feel trapped. Perhaps someone or something has a hold on us and we feel unable to break free and may need outside help. This could be related to our relationships, behaviour or thoughts. It can also mean that we are holding ourselves back through ties with relationships, tasks or routine chores we could easily break away from.

The **castle** signifies a need to expand our horizons or capabilities, to establish ourselves more solidly, or to make a bolder statement to the world about ourselves. The **castle** is about how we see ourselves, and how we want to be seen, and what we want from life.

The **seashore** is where two different worlds meet. It signifies the coming together of our conscious and subconscious minds. We are being invited to make a connection.

On the whole, the Eight of Swords signifies that we feel trapped in a situation or by circumstances that we find difficult to escape from. We imagine that there is no way out of our predicament and feel that if we do take action to free ourselves we may suffer the consequences. Perhaps we feel trapped by debt, an oppressed relationship, a dead end job, or even illusory thoughts, and feel that we do not have the strength anymore to stand up for ourselves or make the decision once and for all to break free.

However, it does suggest that our bondage may be of our own making and it is our own fears or insecurities that are making us feel trapped. We need to realise that we still have the power to make choices and can easily find a way out if we want to. If we feel trapped by our worries and fears we must have the courage to face our dilemmas and take responsibility for our lives, and once we do this our anxieties will disappear and we will begin to feel more empowered.

This card is related to the number eight in numerology therefore, more information is available in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Eight of Swords appears in a spread it indicates that you feel trapped by circumstances. You want to break free but cannot see a way out. This may be because you are afraid of the consequences if you do take action. Perhaps you are hesitant to confront the conflict in your life, which is resulting in you becoming trapped by your own indecisiveness. Maybe the problems you are facing are of your own making and you are bringing anxiety and unhappiness upon yourself. Do not undermine yourself or let your fears get the better of you because it is not as difficult as you think to break free. With a little courage, honesty and a change of attitude, which may be blocking your personal growth, you can change your situation and move on. Even if it causes friction, so what? If you feel that you cannot go beyond your limitations or see it through, then perhaps it may be time to seek advice. Sometimes this card may indicate stress-related problems or a temporary illness that is restricting you from moving forward.

### **Negative**

When the Eight of Swords is in a negative position it indicates a slow and steady return to “normality”. Your wounds are healing and a positive attitude has returned. Restrictions are passing and you are able to see things more clearly. Your confidence is rising, and you are feeling more relaxed and able to deal with the problems that have been blocking your progress. Do not allow yourself to become restricted again, stand up for yourself and be appropriately assertive.

### **People**

Those who feel restricted. Those who feel trapped by circumstances. A prisoner. Those who feel persecuted. Those who are unsure which way to turn. Those who feel at a loss. Those who feel overwhelmed. Those who lack

direction. Those who feel victimised. Those who feel powerless. Those who feel they are being restricted by their relationship.



# Nine of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** Depression. Unhappiness. Worries. Anguish. Anxiety. Sleepless nights. Constant exhausting struggles. Unwarranted fears. Deception. Impatience. Poor health. Despair. Female health problems.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a disturbed woman sitting up in bed in a dark room with her head held in her hands. Her bedcover is decorated with red roses and the symbols of the zodiac, and the woodcut on the side of her bed depicts a swordsman overcoming his opponent in a duel.

The **dark room** suggests that there may be a part of ourselves that we have not come to terms with, or can mean depression, negativity or confusion with some aspect of our life.

**Holding our head in our hands** can signify horror or shame, and suggests that we should give a great deal of thought and care to our situation.

The **red roses** are a symbol of the heart, beauty, perfection, and of sacred, romantic and sensual love. However, in this case it may suggest that love may have been betrayed.

The **symbols of the zodiac** may symbolise our shadow, in other words the parts of ourselves that are hidden or we have not yet fully acknowledged. They can also represent aspects of our conscious or subconscious personality.

A **duel** signifies inner conflict or a hostile relationship with someone else. It is more than likely conflict with someone we know, or conflict between our conscious and subconscious mind.

On the whole, the Nine of Swords signifies that we may be experiencing pain, sadness or anxiety. Primarily, it does suggest that it could be all in our mind and we are thinking negatively, being pessimistic and putting ourselves through torture with our fears and doubts. However, it may indicate that we feel betrayed by life because it has not worked out as we had hoped for. We may be suffering pain through guilt and feel that we have done something wrong, or failed to do something we should have done and now we are having nightmares about it.

Usually, it suggests that our worst fears are unlikely to come true and the unhappiness and vulnerability we are feeling are the aftermath of a difficult situation. If we learn to look within ourselves at our underlying fears and examine our situation, we will probably realise that it is not as bad as we thought, then we can begin to move forward.

This card is related to the number nine in numerology therefore, the section on Tarot and Numerology will offer more information associated with the Nine of Swords.

### **Interpretation**

When the Nine of Swords appears, it indicates that you are feeling overwhelmed by severe doubt and utter despair. There may be negative thoughts going through your head that has led to stress and depression and even nightmares. Perhaps you are feeling guilty about something you have or have not done, which has created a sense of foreboding. Maybe you are hurting because a project is causing you more worries than satisfaction, a personal relationship has gone sour, or there has been a recent bereavement. Even though these situations are painful, time will overcome the hurt. You

may have a challenging situation to face or have a difficult decision to make that is causing worry and anxiety. However, it may be the negative thinking and pessimism that is the most destructive and not the situation. If you learn to let go of these thoughts your situation will become less daunting, and when you realise that your situation is not as bad as you had imagined you will be able to move on with a more positive attitude that may lead you to new opportunities. Sometimes the Nine of Swords can relate to a woman around you who might need your help because she may be suffering with women's problems or mental or physical issues.

### **Negative**

When the Nine of Swords is in a negative position, it indicates that you are at the end of a bad phase and sleepless nights will soon come to an end. You need to rid yourself of old habits, behaviour and attitudes and a burden will soon be lifted bringing you a feeling of new hope and promise. However, you may hear some unpleasant rumours and scandal soon, but so what?

### **People**

Those who feel anxious and tense. Those who are making themselves ill with worry. Those who feel guilty. Those who are overcome by remorse. Those who want to turn back the clock. Those who are suffering from anguish. Those who are having sleepless nights or nightmares.

# Ten of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** Ruin. Loss. Disruption. Misfortune. Stabbed in the back. Hitting rock bottom. Separation. The end of a cycle in your life. A brighter future. Picking yourself up and dusting yourself down. Continuing to fight until the struggles are over. The only way is up. Victory. Triumph.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a dead man lying face down on the ground with ten swords thrust into his back.

The sky is dark and gloomy bringing a more depressing atmosphere to the scene, however there is light trying to shine through.

The **dead man** signifies a relationship or situation that has probably come to a dramatic end and we may feel that we have been “stabbed in the back” or betrayed. Alternatively, it can suggest that we have been carrying heavy burdens from the past that will be the death of us, such as guilt-feelings, negativity, habits, old attachments, values, ambitions and goals. Whatever the situation the **dead man** is telling us to let these burdens die and look deep within ourselves to find our real and positive self and bring it to life, then start afresh and move on. If it relates to someone we know, then the **dead man** is suggesting that this person may need some help or support because they are going through some major upheaval or upset.

The **dark and gloomy sky** signifies that we have lost our way in life and do not know which way to go. This can inflict feelings of depression and frustration, and represent problems with reaching our goals or conflict and disharmony with people in authority. However, there is light shining through the **dark sky**, which suggests “light at the end of the tunnel” or searching for

wisdom and insight about ourselves or our life through our subconscious mind.

On the whole, the Ten of Swords signifies a crisis or conflict is about to be resolved. Although we feel that we have hit rock bottom the worst is over and we are now able to start moving forward and transcend it. Being at our lowest point has enabled us to see things in a clearer light and we now know that we have nowhere else to go but up. Endings are also the beginning of something else and the realisation that a phase of our lives has ended, and with the understanding that we need to let go we are then able to move on to develop new ideas and relationships. Even though we do not know what the future holds something new and inspirational may be just around the corner. The hard part is over and our strength will push us forward.

This card is related to the number ten in numerology therefore, more information associated with the Ten of Swords can be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Ten of Swords appears, it is the end of a painful chapter in your life that has left you feeling drained and exhausted. Maybe you feel that you have lost everything and now you are going through pain and sadness. This may be related to your work or a personal relationship. However, even though you may be suffering just now, this card suggests that you have reached your own limits or a situation has come to an inevitable end. Perhaps you have come to a point where you have finally realised that the hard work you have been putting in with your job has been a misconception and disappointment, or you have realised that your relationship is not the idealistic partnership you thought it was and the truth hurts.

It can also signify that negative thinking may have made the situation worse, so you may need to rid yourself of any old or outmoded ways of thinking

before moving on. Whatever crisis you have been up against recently will improve, and the wisdom you have gained from your difficult experiences will help you to drive forward with determination and optimism.

### **Negative**

When the Ten of Swords is in a negative position, it suggests that new and positive influences are on the way. Your health is improving and you are willing to push forward until your struggles are over. However, be aware of negative thinking because it will not help in a crisis situation.

### **People**

Those who have nowhere to go but up. Those who have hit their lowest point in life. Those who feel like a victim. Those who have suffered a loss. Those who have suffered an attack. Those who can survive. Those who feel that things cannot get any worse.

# Page of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** A quick change of situation. An emergency. News of conflict or illness. Forced to make a choice. Insight. Strong-willed. Constructive criticism. Perception. Discretion. Acting with skill. Good business sense. Speaking your mind. Important news or documents. Professional advice. The help from someone who can act quickly. Travel.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts the Page swiftly walking across rugged terrain holding up his sword in both hands while being watchful and alert. A bird formation is flying in a cloudy sky, and the trees in the distance bend in the wind.

**Swiftly walking** suggests that we are quickly and determinedly moving towards our goal and capable of doing it on our own.

The **rugged terrain** suggests that we cannot expect our journey to be easy and if we are alone we may be experiencing stress. It denotes that there could be obstacles and difficulties ahead.

**Holding on to the sword** indicates strength, courage and justice, and suggests that we are prepared to fight for our beliefs or to fight against injustice, prejudice or oppression to reach our destination or goal.

Being **watchful and alert** suggests that we need to be aware and lively to any information or occurrences that may come our way, and be **watchful and alert** for any problems that may arise.

The **bird formation** signifies that we have a sense of freedom and the freethinking ability to develop structure and organisation to our thoughts, ideas and imagination. They suggest that we are flying free from our cares and worries. **Birds** can also indicate that we are flying towards or seeking knowledge to a higher spiritual awareness.

The **cloudy sky** on this card is not stormy, therefore suggests that our hopes and expectations are high and we do not want anything to stand in the way of our dreams and plans. These **cumulus clouds** signify that we will get our wish and reach our goal.

The **trees** symbolise growth and the basic structure of our inner lives. It may suggest that we are fulfilling our destiny by going back to our base roots and receiving guidance from our subconscious, in order to grow and develop so that our plans and projects may bring a successful and fruitful future.

The **wind** depicted on this card is blowing in the same direction as the Page is walking, therefore indicating that we are being blown along towards our goal. It represents the amount of wisdom and intellect we have available. Whatever amount this Page has available it is pushing us in the right direction.

On the whole, the Page of Swords can represent a young person in our lives who is versatile, enthusiastic, alert and confident. This person is also energetic, artistic and can do various tasks at the same time, and his sharp intelligence helps him to make swift decisions. It signifies communication of all kinds, and the Page of Swords especially enjoys listening to gossip and scandal and sharpening or increasing his/her knowledge through study, discovery and all kinds of mental activity.

However, this person may be deceitful and also gossip or spread rumours about us behind our backs. He/she can be cruel or cutting with his/her tongue therefore, suggests that we should be aware that others might be so ruthless



that they will do or say anything to discourage us from reaching our goals. It urges us to take decisive action and stand strong when we are up against challenges or unexpected circumstances, in order to ensure a successful outcome. When facing our challenges, the Page of Swords indicates that we should stand up for ourselves but go into them with logic, reason, honesty and fortitude.

The Page of Swords is associated with the zodiacal sign of Gemini therefore more information can be sought by referring to the section on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Page of Swords appears in a spread suggests that you may find yourself in a situation in which quick reactions and having your wits about you are needed before making any decisions. Someone may be spreading rumours about you or you may find yourself the object of someone's sharp tongue. It advises that you act with caution. However, refuse to be discouraged and face your problems squarely and honestly, and do what you know is right but do not believe everything you hear.

The Page of Swords can indicate a crisis that may need a professional adviser, expert or someone you can trust to help you to make the correct decision. It also suggests that unexpected news may bring new opportunities into your life, however it urges you to be careful and aware when signing contracts or agreements because you may not know what you are committing yourself to, or what the future consequences are. If you have been going through any problems with relationships, career or financial issues, obviously they need to be resolved, but the outlook is positive and any conflict you have been experiencing will come to an end.

## **Negative**

When the Page of Swords is in a negative position, it indicates that you are finding it hard to concentrate on your job at the moment possibly through boredom, and your mind is jumping from one idea to another leaving the task at hand unfinished. You may be suffering inner conflict due to past injustices. Perhaps you are involved in arguments or even scandal, or someone may be spying on you to gain information they can use against you. It also suggests that there may be disappointments and delays regarding contracts or business documents.

## **People**

Those who think everything through. Those who study and research the facts. Those who analyse a problem and use logic and reason. Those who are mentally quick. Those who face problems squarely. Those who are able to resolve disputes rationally and responsibly. A negotiator. Those who do what they know is right. Those who are diplomatic. Those who champion a cause and right a wrong. A gifted child.

# Knight of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** A difficult or controversial situation. A situation where you need to act quickly. Leadership. Courage. Firmness. Strength. Skill. Initiative. Determination. Sense of duty. On the go. Fighting to solve a problem or conflict. Swift or impulsive action. Justified anger. Mental challenges. Communication. Triumph over opposition.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a knight in armour riding swiftly on his white horse into battle. He holds his sword up high as he charges forward into the wind with his visor raised. The horse's bridle is decorated with butterflies and birds.

The **knight in armour** on this card signifies that we are charging forward on our path and ready to fight against injustice or an oppressor in order to bring peace with ourselves, other people or a situation. This **knight** suggests that we are trying to gain honour and respect while remaining true to ourselves. The **armour** in this case signifies that we are protecting our ideas, dreams and ideals.

The **white horse** is a symbol of light, life and spiritual illumination. It signifies increased strength, stamina and virility. It indicates that it is time to "take the reins" and assume control, and because of its speed, it means that we are moving swiftly towards our goal.

This knight is **charging forward into the wind**, which suggests that we are battling with a situation that is sapping a lot of our energy. Metaphorically, we may have to fight against the wind to gain control of a situation.

The **raised visor** suggests that we are not expecting strong opposition and we are confident of our success. However, it can suggest that we may be a little impetuous charging headlong into an untested situation.

**Butterflies** represent freedom and light-heartedness. However, they can also suggest that we are not focusing on what we are doing because we are too busy flitting about from one thing to another and not finishing what we started in the first place. There seems to be a lack of ability to settle down to the task at hand. Because the **butterfly** can metamorphose from a caterpillar to a **butterfly** it can also signify some kind of transformation that is about to happen in our life.

The **birds** signify freedom and the freethinking ability we need to develop our thoughts, ideas and imagination into something workable. They also suggest that we are flying towards or seeking knowledge to a higher spiritual awareness.

On the whole, the Knight of Swords indicates a period of sudden changes and disruption in our lives from one day to the next. As a person he is courageous, is sharp and alert, he has a keen and forceful intellect and is a master of logic and reason. He is very good at analysing information and solving difficult or confusing situations. He is outspoken and gets straight to the point with authority, influence and honesty, leaving others knowing where they stand.

As a situation, the Knight of Swords suggests that we have the ability and desire to drive forward in order to reach our goals. We are able to brave the difficulties or obstacles and will not hesitate to take the initiative and make radical decisions when needed. This is a time to recognise and confront the destructive aspects in our personal lives and relationships. However, it does urge us not to be sharp-tongued, rude and tactless, otherwise it may cause more trouble than we need and we also must think of other people's feelings rather than cutting off our emotions altogether.

The Knight of Swords is associated with the astrological air element of the zodiacal signs of Gemini, Libra and Aquarius therefore, more information related to this card can be found in the section on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Knight of Swords appears in a spread, it indicates that you may have a desire to make drastic changes in your life. New opportunities may lead you to make changes to your relationships, job or home. Perhaps you are becoming more focused on a business venture that will mean more financial benefits or travel. Maybe a new love affair is about to begin or an existing relationship is about to come to an end. Just try not to be too critical or lack sensitivity towards your partner. Be careful not to cause trouble through being too impatient or impulsive, handle difficulties or problems directly, firmly and honestly. There may be someone who could give you some good advice that will help you to resolve your situation. The Knight of Swords can indicate someone who is coming to save you from a difficult situation or someone who suddenly sweeps you off your feet. Whatever happens will be sudden, unexpected and unplanned.

### **Negative**

When the Knight of Swords is in a negative position it is not the time to start something new, wait a little longer. An aggressive, destructive or unstable young man may create conflict around you. Arguments or disputes are likely and quick decisions are needed. Someone may be being secretive and not to be trusted. Perhaps you are not thinking straight and unable to focus on the task at hand. You need to be patient and avoid sharp words and impulsive behaviour.

### **People**

Those who are direct and get straight to the point. Authoritative people with great influence. A leader. Those who are incisive and alert. Those who are

knowledgeable and can go into detail on most topics. Those who make sense out of confusion through logic and reason. A strong and helpful young man or woman.

Those who can be tactless and rude. A gossip. Those who do not spare the feelings of others. Those who tend to be domineering. A bully. Those who lack sensitivity. Those who can be critical and sarcastic. Those who believe that they are always right. Arrogant people. those who are cut off from their emotions. Cold and aloof people. A dictator.

# Queen of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** Strong-willed. Having the final word. Career-minded. Independent. Being alone. Communication. Analytical. Quick-witted. Sarcastic. Not easily influenced. Making the right decisions. Knowing when to act. Keen intellect. Helpful advice and assistance. Knowing what you want and how to get it. Widowed.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts the queen sitting on her throne at the top of a hill while holding a sword in an upright position with her right hand, and her left hand is extended and raised as if making some kind of gesture. She is wearing blue and white robes and her throne is decorated with a sylph and a butterfly.

The **throne** symbolises power and authority in both the worldly and spiritual realm. It signifies that we have the power and the right to take a position of authority.

The **top of a hill** suggests that we have worked hard to achieve our goal and are now able to see the results of our success.

The **upright sword** is a symbol of justice, authority and responsibility used positively. It is also a symbol of perception, spiritual insight and clarity of thought, and suggests that we are able to cut through clearly and effectively to the crux of a difficult matter.

The **hand gesture** seems to acknowledge what she has managed to achieve in her life, but this queen has had her fair share of hurt along the way.

Therefore, at what cost was her success?

The **blue robe** symbolises peace and purity, and is the colour of the Virgin Mary. It is associated with wisdom, self-expression, dreamlike states, contemplation, introspection and yearning. It is also a healing colour, suggesting relaxation, sleep and tranquillity. The colour **blue** suggests that we may have a sense of connection with our spiritual self.

The **white robe** is associated with purity. It suggests a desire to shape our life into something pure and wholesome, and a growing connection with the spiritual side of our nature.

**Sylphs** are said to be ageless, winged beings of the air, and live on mountaintops. They are associated with logic, communication, learning and travel, and are summoned by burning incense or aromatic oils. **Sylphs** are also connected to the ritual knife or sword.

**Butterflies** symbolise transformation and rebirth because of the metamorphosis it goes through from the caterpillar stage. They are delicate and ethereal, therefore suggesting that we should try to be more light-hearted and less serious.

On the whole, the Queen of Swords is often associated with a woman who may have suffered with disappointments and sorrow. She may be a widow or divorcee who has come to terms with being alone. She has become very self-reliant, independent and resilient due to the pain and disappointment she has endured. When voicing her opinions she will tell you exactly how it is in a direct and open way. She is determined to reach her aims, knows what she wants and how to get it. She is intelligent, talented, creative and ambitious, and most likely to be found on the front line in business, corporate enterprise or others bodies where she likes to express her individuality in company speculation or gain. She may also be found involved with societies and associations where she is able to display her creative flair.



The Queen of Swords has the ability to quickly weigh up a situation and understands human fatuity, which she judges fairly and in an unbiased way, but she is not easy to fool. It suggests that we may meet someone like her or we might want to adopt some of her qualities.

The Queen of Sword is associated with the zodiacal sign of Aquarius therefore, more information on this card can be found in the section on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Queen of Swords appears in a spread, it advises you to adopt her qualities of courage and determination when dealing with difficulties or obstacles in your life. It can also indicate that you may meet someone with her characteristics that can help your situation. It is time to break free from tradition, the way you think and feel or, anything you feel that is tying you down, and be more unconventional or do something different and unusual. Begin to stand out from the crowd and show others how unique you are. If you are going through difficulties, stand up for yourself and be more assertive with the people who are trying to impose ties on you. If you have suffered some kind of grief or setback you will soon be able to transform this negative experience into something much more positive, and come out of it a much wiser person. If you are feeling lonely, go out and have some fun. Do not let others decide or control your destiny.

### **Negative**

When the Queen of Swords is in a negative position, it can indicate that a vindictive and unpleasant woman may be spreading malicious gossip about you, possibly motivated by jealousy. You may have to pit your wits against a professional adversary. Do not allow past unhappy emotions embitter you against the opposite sex and love in general. Someone may be trying to force you to do things their way. There may be quarrels with friends, broken relationships or love affairs, or setbacks in speculation.

## **People**

Those who are honest and up front with everyone. Those who are direct and open in all their dealings. Those who are astute and can quickly weigh up a situation. Straightforward and no-nonsense people. Those who are quick on the uptake. Those who have a great sense of humour. Those who have seen and done it all before. Those who have suffered loss or hardship. Those who have the strength due to life's experiences and knocks. A professional woman who can advise or help you to fight your corner. A lawyer. A doctor. A divorced, widowed or separated woman. Someone you will find hard to trick or fool.

# King of Swords



**Key words and phrases:** Authority. Professionalism. Strength. Intelligence. Determination. Drive. Aggression. Fighting spirit. Expertise. Knows what needs to be done. Fulfilment of plans and ideas. Justice. Law and order.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts the king sitting in on his throne holding an upright sword as if in judgement. He is wearing white, purple and orange robes and the back of his throne is decorated with butterflies. In the sky a couple of birds can be seen.

The **throne** is a seat of power and authority in both the worldly and spiritual realm. It is a traditional symbol of kingship, and is suggesting that our right to take authority has been acknowledged.

The **upright sword** is a symbol of authority, justice, intellect and light. It can be used constructively or destructively, which means that if we are to accept our sense of authority and power, then we have to accept the responsibility that comes with it. The **sword** suggests that we have the ability to cut to the crux of a difficult matter, and can also indicate the desire to cut certain elements out of our life that no longer feed our growth.

The **white robe** is associated with purity. It suggests a desire to shape our life into something pure and wholesome, and a growing connection with the spiritual side of our nature.

The **purple robe** signifies spiritual awareness and mystery. It suggests that we may have a deep psychic or intuitive awareness to tap into an unexplored aspect of our self.

The **orange robe** is an uplifting and cheerful colour. It signifies increased energy and suggests that we are becoming more creative and confident about ourselves and with the work we do.

**Butterflies** symbolise transformation and rebirth because of the metamorphosis they go through from the caterpillar stage. They are delicate and ethereal, therefore suggesting that we should be more light-hearted and less serious.

The **couple of birds** signify the freedom of our thoughts, imagination and ideas to create something workable. It also suggests that we are gaining a higher spiritual knowledge and awareness.

On the whole, the King of Swords is concerned with truth, equality and fairness. He is in a position of power and authority and approaches problems rationally and logically rather than emotionally. He is clever, knowledgeable, witty and intelligent of which he makes excellent use with skill, personal initiative and enterprise within his business life or bringing quarrels to a peaceful end. When a judgement is needed, he understands and honours all sides of an issue and his decisions are impartial and objective.

However, sometimes the King of Swords can appear cold, uncaring and domineering, but this is because he finds it hard to express his emotions, which does not fair well in his personal relationships but works successfully in business. The King of Swords suggests that it may be a good idea to develop some of his personal traits, or may indicate that we may meet someone like him who could offer us guidance or expert advice.

This king is associated with the zodiacal sign of Libra therefore, the section on the Court Cards and Astrology will offer more information related to the King of Swords.

### **Interpretation**

When the King of Swords appears in a spread, it suggests that you may be about to meet someone in authority who is intellectual, articulate, analytical, ethical and just, and may provide you with good business or legal advice. This could lead to a promotion or the opportunity to look at your situation from a new perspective that will lead to professional advancement.

The King of Swords advises you to remain detached and not to let your feelings influence you. Become a leader and act in a decisive and dispassionate way. Develop your intellectual and intuitive powers and use your knowledge to put yourself in a more commanding position. Focus on what is important to you now, and if you are looking for answers to anything do not give up until you find them, however be careful who you share your information with. If you are thinking of entering into a new personal relationship, make sure that your new partner has interests that complement your own.

### **Negative**

When the King of Swords is in a negative position, you or someone close to you is playing manipulative mind games with arguments. A malicious man may be making trouble for you, possibly through written libel or spoken slander. Be wary of a contract or document that can trap you into something you will wish you had not signed. The King of Swords can also indicate that you may be the victim of injustice or of an unfair verdict in a legal matter.

### **People**

Those who are intellectual and knowledgeable. Someone who is ethical and moral and works against corruption and dishonesty. A lawyer. A judge. Those

who understand and honour all sides of an issue and are concerned about truth and fairness. Those who are articulate. A writer. A speaker. Those who communicate their ideas successfully. An unemotional, intelligent and analytical man who is in a position of authority and can view situations with a dispassionate eye and give you good and sound advice. A specialist. A doctor. A government official.

# Pentacles

**Element:** Earth

**Astrological Signs:** Capricorn, Taurus and Virgo

**Season:** Winter (December – January – February)

**Key words and phrases:** Business. Money. Property. Work. Career. Financial security. Skills. Talents. Education and training. Material resources. Status. Practical. Reliable. Sensible. Materialistic. Resourceful. Management. Prosperity. Successful.

The suit of Pentacles is similar to the Diamonds in an ordinary pack of cards. Pentacles relate to the earth element and are associated with business, career, property, status and money. Pentacles and the earth element govern things that we can see, touch, taste and smell, and are a suit of practicality, security, prosperity and success.

# Ace of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** A change for the better financially. Start of a successful venture. Luck in financial matters. Bright prospects. Promotion. Success through pleasurable pursuits. Profit. Money coming in. Financial success. Reward for hard work. Lucrative venture. Material and spiritual prosperity. Profitable investments of time, money and energy.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a hand appearing from a cloud while holding a pentacle. The hand is suspended above a lush garden that has an arched gateway cut into the hedging, which leads to some mountains in the distance.

The **hand appearing from a cloud** is a symbol of fertility, natural abundance, potential, revelation, power and creativity.

The **cloud** suggests that we have a desire for unity and wholeness and a growing connection with the spiritual side of our nature, but we need to take our current situation seriously with dedication and service.

The **cupped hand** suggests a helping hand is being offered or we are holding on to what we have.

The **pentacle** is a symbol that awakens the personal magic within us to bring all matters of concern within our hopes, dreams, aspirations and wishes into harmony. It suggests that we should focus on bringing our own magical qualities and wishes into harmony and work towards attaining our goals.



The **lush garden** symbolises potential, personal growth, beauty and creativity in our lives. A well-maintained and abundant garden signifies natural fertility and is associated with sensual pleasure, love and seduction. It suggests that we are starting to create fertile progress with new ideas, plans and projects.

The **arched gateway** indicates some kind of initiation or event that will mark a significant advancement in our lives. It suggests that we will soon receive an offer that will lead to new opportunities, and this new phase will bring new responsibilities, new skills and new people into our lives.

The **mountains** indicate that we will come up against a few obstacles and challenges on our journey but should manage to conquer them.

On the whole, the Ace of Pentacles symbolises the beginning of prosperity and successful endeavours through our own efforts, a windfall or a legacy. Whatever the circumstances, our financial situation is about to greatly improve. It indicates that it is a good time to take the initiative in all materialistic and money matters in order to improve our financial situation or strengthen our sense of security. The Ace of Pentacles signifies a practical, solid, common sense and realistic approach to life, and with the experiences that we attract to ourselves will bring benefits as a result of our own sound and constructive knowledge, skills, and our ability to focus on the job at hand. This card urges us to make our dreams a reality by attracting the ideas and means needed to start on our projects in order to reach our goals.

The Ace of Pentacles is related to the number one in numerology and the earth element in astrology therefore, more information regarding this card can be found by referring to the sections on Tarot and Numerology and Tarot and Astrology.

## **Interpretation**

When the Ace of Pentacles appears in a spread, it indicates that a moneymaking opportunity is on the way to you. This could be in the form of a new business venture, project or promotion. Whatever the circumstances, money is on the way that brings contentment and personal accomplishment along with it. It can also indicate that you may meet someone influential who is able to help you with lucrative contacts or pull some strings to put you on the right path. A project that you are about to start will lead to prosperity and material security, enabling you to experience true happiness and stability. It can also indicate that you will receive financial backing for a new business venture. However, you need to be prepared to work hard and carefully nurture your new venture to eventually see the fruits of your efforts.

The Ace of Pentacles can sometimes indicate a windfall or a monetary gift that may keep you on your path for a while. However, it will not be enough to give you the opportunity to retire, because this card suggests that you will be sowing the seeds of a project or an idea in order for it to grow. It also indicates that you may be thinking of improving your health or body and may direct us to become involved with nature or even farming, or matters connected with property or estates. Sensual and pleasurable pursuits are important to you now and you may be taking time out to play, perhaps through making seductive encounters or wining and dining that special person in your life. This is a time in your life when you can face the future with optimism and clarity.

## **Negative**

When the Ace of Pentacles is in a negative position suggests that you may lose money through unsound investments. Maybe your job is bringing in the money but your heart is not in it, which is making you feel unhappy. You may be spending too much on food and drink that has led to a decline in your health, and now you are suffering from fatigue and other related problems.

**People**

Those who achieve tangible results. Those who become involved with nature. Those who are improving their health and body. Those who are seeing their efforts rewarded and experiencing growth. Hard workers. Those who are practical and realistic. Those who use their common sense and take advantage of what works. Those who feel safe and secure. Those who know that their situation is stable.

## Two of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** Balancing the finances. Unexpected expenses. Debt to be paid. Trying to make ends meet. Too many responsibilities. Moving in a new direction. Loss of money or income. A need to budget carefully. Making a financial agreement.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a young man dancing, or trying to balance two pentacles that are attached by a cord that forms the same shape as the sign of infinity.

In the distance behind him two ships are trying to navigate the high rolling waves of an extremely rough sea.

**Dancing** in some cultures is symbolic of the actions or steps we need to take to survive the conflict in our lives or the creativity that needs to be put into it. A frantic solo performance may suggest that some element of our life is threatening to take us over. It suggests that we need to be more flexible and go with the flow, and make some space for happiness to come back into our lives.

**Trying to balance** something suggests that we need to try and maintain a mental, emotional or physical equilibrium with whatever difficulties are in our lives at this time. If our difficulties are financial, such as trying to balance the books, then we need to consider what resources are available to us now.

The **sign of infinity** is a symbol that is shaped like the figure eight. It comes from the Latin *infinitas* or “unboundedness”. Eternity or infinity has no boundaries and discontinuity therefore is perpetual. It is also an ancient Egyptian symbol of eternal life. However, the **sign of infinity** in this case refers to time and numbers, indicating financial difficulties and worries. It

signifies that we feel our financial or money problems seem to be going on forever. It suggests that we need to make some kind of arrangement to bring a balance to our finances.

The **two ships on the rough sea** indicate that we are feeling emotionally insecure and uncertain of the outcome concerning our difficulties or problems. They suggest that we are going through a stormy and tempestuous time at the moment.

On the whole, the Two of Pentacles signifies that we need to bring balance and harmony to our finances and emotions. It seems that we are in a situation where we are trying to juggle different elements of our lives in order to keep our heads above water. It can indicate that our work may take up most of our time leaving us little time to do anything else, so we end up rushing about trying to get everything done. It may be that we are studying new skills or in an apprenticeship that, at the moment, only pays a small salary leaving us little money to go out and have some fun, but we know that our job prospects will improve if we stick to the training.

We may be in a situation where we seem to be spending most of our money on bills or living expenses leaving nothing left for any leisure time, or we may have so many daily commitments that we are too tired to do anything else. However, the Two of Pentacles does suggest that we are able to cope with the ups and downs in our lives and manage to get through it because we have the energy, endurance and patience.

This card relates to the number two in numerology therefore, by referring to the section on Tarot and Numerology more information can be found that can be associated with the Two of Pentacles.

## **Interpretation**

When the Two of Pentacles appears in a spread, it indicates that your finances seem to be fluctuating and need to be juggled about to bring them into balance. Maybe you are thinking of taking on extra work to pay off your bills. You will need to handle your responsibilities or finances in a more balanced way and be content with any small or slow improvements rather than being impatient because you feel that you are not making any progress. You will need to decide how you are going to approach your circumstances and how you are going to cope with your situation for a while.

Perhaps you are worried where your life is going, but there is no need to because it will work out fine as long as you stay focused. Over a short period of time you will see an improvement to your situation and feel a sense of relief and harmony within your personal relationships. The balance will be restored, the pressure will ease off and happiness will be regained, because you have the ability and the emotional and physical stamina to make it happen and be successful.

## **Negative**

When the Two of Pentacles appears in a negative position, it indicates that you may have difficulty or delays in trying to start something new. You may be living beyond your means and are now finding it difficult to pay your creditors. Perhaps you may receive some bad news, maybe another debt has to be paid or some other unexpected expense upsets your financial situation, making you feel depressed and anxious. The Two of Pentacles suggests that it is important for you to focus on agreeing a solution with your creditors before it becomes out of control.

## **People**

Those who are trying to balance their finances and other resources. Those who are juggling many obligations at once. Those who are trying to cope with demands.

## Three of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** Success through effort and hard work. Mastering an art or a technique. Job satisfaction. Detailed work. A venture close to your heart. Appreciated and rewarded skills and abilities. Recognition. Receiving payment for a job well done. Home improvements. Original and progressive ideas.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

The Waite deck depicts three figures standing in a church or monastery. The man standing on the platform seems to be a stonemason, and the other two figures seem to be a monk and another man who are discussing the skill and the design the stonemason has sculpted into the archway.

The **church or monastery** is a place of sanctuary where we can pray, ask a higher authority for help, or forget our cares and worries for a short time. It can symbolise the self, and may be urging us to focus our subconscious mind on bringing together the elements of our personality and destiny into a perfect and harmonious whole. This suggests that we are being asked to see our self as something sacred and of supreme value, and maybe peerless and unique.

The **stonemason** is a master of skill and creativity who has the ability to transform a lump of stone into a solid, strong and beautiful work of art. The **stonemason** is suggesting that we too can develop and master awesome skills if we allow ourselves to stay focused on our goals.

The **monk** can either signify that we have a spiritual guide and mentor, or that our own self-belief is willing to be guided by the shrewd aspects of ourselves. The **monk** can also be our subconscious or intuition urging us to listen and pay attention to guide us on our path with clarity and purpose.

The **archway** signifies that we are building a new phase of life for ourselves in which we will be learning and developing new skills, taking on new responsibilities, and meeting new people. However, we will have to put in the effort because eventually our skills and talents will be put to the test.

On the whole, the Three of Pentacles signifies a venture that has managed to get off to a good start because of our skill, application and confidence. It indicates that our efforts are producing great material success through cooperation, planning and getting the job done. Satisfaction, reward and recognition may have been achieved but we need to keep on pushing ourselves and our ideas because there is still a lot of hard work to do. However, the Three of Pentacles is a card of cooperation so we cannot do it alone, we need the help of others to reach our goal or to make great things happen. Everything will work out perfectly if we value the unique contribution other people have to offer to the project or contract.

This card is related to the number three in numerology therefore, other information can be found by referring to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Three of Pentacles appears it indicates that your skills, application and competence are off to a good start. You are proving your ability, meeting your goals and being recognised as an expert in your field of work. It suggests success in your career, in business, personal projects and exam results. Your work and creative ability is now being recognised and earning you high praise. You are valued for your original and progressive ideas and your efforts, which gives you a sense of satisfaction and probably financial reward. Perhaps you are about to apply your skills to creating a comfortable home, which may involve structural changes or painting and decorating.

Any investments you have made in your personal relationships, the results of your efforts will begin to materialise and contentment will prevail. Contracts or



paperwork may need your signature. Through consistent effort you will be successful in reaching your goals.

### **Negative**

When the Three of Pentacles is in a negative position it can indicate that you may have too much work for you to handle, or you have bitten off more than you can chew. Perhaps a project that you were supposed to start on has been delayed or you are hitting problems on a project that is stopping you from finishing it within the allocated time. Maybe you need more training or study before success is attained. More hard work may be needed before you can reach a specific standard. It can also indicate that you are not making any progress due to a lack of motivation or direction.

### **People**

Those who work as a team. Those who coordinate with others. Those who combine their efforts through cooperation with others. Hard workers. Those who plan and organise their resources. Craftsmen. Those who are competent and get the job done. Those who can prove their ability and meet their goals. Those who know what to do and how to do it.

## Four of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** Financial stability and security. Saving up. Concerned with financial matters. Inability to let go of anything. Miserly. Mistrust. Selfishness. Comfortable material life. Holding on to your possessions. A transaction. Being overcautious. Property dealings. Scrooge.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a crowned man sitting on a stool on the outskirts of a city and seriously holding on to his pentacles (money), as if to say “this is mine and no one else is getting their hands on it”.

The **crown** represents status and recognition. It is an acknowledgement of our own success and of the goals and achievements we have accomplished in our life.

The **city** signifies that we may need to interact better than we are doing at the moment on an emotional or social level. With the **city** having many streets and avenues it may also indicate complex problems that need to be negotiated in order to give us a clear sense of direction.

**Money** is a symbol of power and status. It usually signifies something that we have achieved through hard work. However, **holding on to money** can mean that we are feeling insecure or worried that it may run out, but it also suggests that we may be **holding on to our ideas** instead of putting them into action. Other indications are opportunity, materialism, greed, fear of losing something we value, or a feeling that we are trapped in a rut with nothing or no one to spend it on.

On the whole, the Four of Pentacles signifies that we are being overly concerned with material success and physical possessions. It indicates that we may be becoming miserly and only interested in gaining money and material possessions. Hanging on to what we have may provide us with a feeling of security, but it will also cause us to stagnate and stifle our growth because we are afraid to take risks out of fear of loss. If we are materially or financially miserly we are more likely to be emotionally miserly also, turning our backs on our relationships with friends, colleagues and even the locality that gave us the opportunity to accumulate our wealth in the first place.

This card can also indicate that with this frame of mind we may be also closing ourselves off from our creative input and new ideas for growth. However, the Four of Pentacles can signify that we feel happy and satisfied with our situation and making the best of things, because we feel that any speculation may be ill-advised as it might endanger our resources and security. It suggests that we need to let go of our fears and suspicions and open our hearts and minds. The Four of Pentacles urges us to listen to the advice of those who can help us, and try to understand why we are holding on so tightly.

This card is related to the number four in numerology therefore, more information can be found by referring to the Tarot and Numerology section in this book.

### **Interpretation**

When the Four of Pentacles appears it indicates that you are concerned about your material possessions. You seem to be tightly holding on to your money and your emotions. We all know that it is important to have financial and material security but if our main focus is on these things it is unlikely we will achieve fulfilment and wholeness because other factors are needed in our lives. Remember the story of Scrooge in A Christmas Carol? You will feel much happier and good about yourself when you realise that self-worth does

not just depend on what you possess, it is about sharing what you have and sharing your feelings. It is not good to become fixated on material possessions because you will always feel that something is missing in your life and will probably regret it later. You need to let go of your false sense of control and reassess yourself and your situation, do not let yourself stagnate. If you become more flexible and find security within yourself, you will find that your financial situation will still be stable and secure, your relationships will improve, and sharing your creative ideas with others will produce more stability in your life too.

### **Negative**

You may need to keep an eye on your spending before it gets out of hand. You may have difficulties trying to balance your budget or trying to save money. Your finances and material possessions are dominating your life. You are trapping yourself in a world where you feel that nothing is good enough, therefore nothing can be enjoyed any more.

### **People**

Those who keep hold of what they have. Greedy people. Penny-pinchers. Those who do not like change. Those who want to maintain control. Those who worry too much about money. Misers. Those who become stagnated because of their refusal to share their life with others. Those who are envious of other people's accomplishments. Scrooge.

## Five of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** Loss. Misfortune. Misery. Loneliness. Poor health. Hardship. Feeling left out in the cold. Sorrow. Depression. Poverty-stricken. Destitute. Needy. Unemployed. Suffering. Financial strain. Broke.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts two unfortunate destitute figures passing by a brightly-lit stained-glass window of a church as they walk in the snow on a cold dark night. These two figures are probably beggars, one of them is walking on crutches and the other is huddled in old and tattered clothing.

The **two destitute figures** symbolise anxiety. They suggest that we may be afraid of losing something that is important to us, such as our job, home or relationship, which may lead to emotional or physical suffering and pain. It can also mean that we may feel cut off and alienated from society, or that we are feeling oppressed, out of place, lost or spurned by someone close to us.

The **brightly-lit stained-glass window** indicates that light is shining down on something that we have been in the dark about or has been hidden from us. It symbolises spiritual illumination and suggests that we will experience a dawning of inspiration and understanding.

The **church** is a place of sanctuary where we can pray, ask a higher authority for help, or forget our cares and worries for a short time. It can symbolise the self, and may be urging us to focus our subconscious mind on bringing together the elements of our personality and destiny into a perfect and harmonious whole. This suggests that we are being asked to see our self as something sacred and of supreme value, and maybe peerless and unique.

The **snow** being frozen rain can indicate coldness, and may suggest that a relationship has become cold leaving us feeling emotionally overwhelmed, miserable and sad. A **snowstorm** may indicate that we are feeling confused, out of control, and that we have lost direction in our lives.

The **dark night** can indicate confusion or the depressed and hidden side of our personality. It can suggest that we have not come to terms with the Shadow aspect of ourselves. **Night** can symbolise death, but not necessarily physical death, it can indicate the death of a situation or relationship and it is urging us to move on. It also suggests a time when we should be resting and gathering our strength because our difficulties are coming to an end and a new day is dawning.

The **crutches** suggest that we need to ask for help in order to move forward, or it may mean that we need to support others. It can indicate that we feel that other people are inadequate for our needs, or that we disapprove of other people's deficiencies or weaknesses. If this is the case then we need to seriously alter our way of thinking. The **crutches** can also indicate the many dependencies we have in life, such as alcohol, drugs, tobacco, people or patterns of behaviour.

The **tattered clothing** may signify anxiety concerning our appeal or feelings of inferiority. It suggests that we may have to rid ourselves of negative attitudes and beliefs. It can also suggest that we may be neglecting some aspect of our lives or ourselves, which needs to be rectified.

On the whole, the Five of Pentacles signifies that we have fallen on hard times materially, financially, physically, emotionally or spiritually. It indicates that we may be so focused on a particular area of our lives that we have suffered a loss in other areas because we have not paid attention to them. It suggests that we are finding it hard to cope financially or physically and feel alone, abandoned and betrayed, and have lost our faith in people because

they just do not seem to care. However, the Five of Pentacles suggests that the support we need is not on the outside, it is within ourselves.

The reason why we are probably in this position is primarily because of our own actions, indicating that we may have good ideas about how to earn money and improve our situation, but we will not learn how to retain it. It then leads to losing something precious in our lives, such as our personal relationships. Therefore, we need to take time out to get in touch with our inner self or spirituality. If we switch our thoughts to bringing abundance into our lives then we will be able to appreciate our lives more. We have the ability and resources, and now it is the time to be willing to make and accept changes in our lives.

This card is related to the number five in numerology therefore, more information associated with the Five of Pentacles can be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Five of Pentacles appears in a spread it indicates loss and hardship in your life and difficulty with trying to move forward. This may have been caused by being too extravagant when dealing with business matters or because you have been unemployed for a while. This hardship may have made you lose faith in yourself and pessimism has set in leaving your confidence, creativity and self-worth extremely low. However, you need to know that your circumstances are only temporary and there is a solution to your dilemma. It may not be easy to sort out, especially if you have gone through loss or difficulties in your personal relationships. If you are willing to step back and take a look at your inner self, review your circumstances and maybe change your attitude, then your situation may transform into something of lasting value.

**Negative**

When the Five of Pentacles is in a negative position it is telling you that your loss and hardship is coming to an end and your financial situation is improving. You have a strong need to make a fresh start in your life, you have accepted the harsh lessons and you are ready to move forward. Inner balance and wise management of your finances will bring you happiness.

**People**

Those who are struggling to make ends meet. Those who have lost their job or income. Those who are going through a period of hardship. Those who are suffering ill-health. Those who have been rejected and lack support. Those who feel lonely.



# Six of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** Help with finances.

Generosity. A small gift or token of love. Financial worries. Initiating a new venture. Returning a favour. A bonus. A loan.

## **Symbolic Meaning**

The Waite deck depicts a merchant who is standing and weighing his money in a pair of scales while two needy and destitute figures kneel before him. The kind-hearted merchant evenly distributes some coins into their waiting and grateful hands.

The **merchant** indicates the need for an authority figure to help us to manage our emotional and material resources.

**Weighing** signifies that we are assessing the worth of something and deciding what is of value to us. It suggests that we need to weigh up and decide if it is worth taking a risk in a situation.

The **pair of scales** is a symbol of justice, balance, truth and wisdom, and links with the weighing up of our decisions and actions. It suggests that we may be looking for justice in a situation and to bring balance, harmony and self-control back in to our lives.

The **destitute figures** signify anxiety. However they are being given a lifeline, which suggests that we are beginning to rectify aspects of ourselves that we have neglected.

On the whole, the Six of Pentacles symbolises giving and receiving. It is not about how much money we have it is a card of generosity, abundance and

kindness. Wealth does not make us rich, but compassion and generosity does. When it relates to money, it is not the money we have earned, it is the extra money or a bonus given to us in recognition of our efforts or productivity, or the desire to share our good fortune and success with others. It can also indicate a gift or a token of love.

The Six of Pentacles suggests that we have learnt to appreciate what we have and are now in a position to give of ourselves, knowing that what we communicate from within ourselves will come back to us. If we are always focusing on our limitations then our vision will be that of limit and lack, but if we focus on generosity and gratitude we open up to allow more abundance to enter our lives.

This card is related to the number six in numerology therefore, referring to the section on Tarot and Numerology will offer more information associated with the Six of Pentacles.

### **Interpretation**

When the Six of Pentacles appears, it indicates that you may have a desire to help others by sharing your resources. You may be about to receive money through an inheritance, a gift, a windfall or from the result of your work, and you want to share the benefits with others by being charitable, giving gifts or by being benevolent. It may indicate that someone sees the hidden talents in you and is in the position to offer you financial backing, possibly to help you to start on a new business venture that could be very beneficial in the near future.

The Six of Pentacles also suggests that you may be able to pay off any outstanding debts. There is a feeling of abundance, a new lease of life, security and success around you. However, it does urge you not to waste your resources, and make sure that you take care not to be too generous and manage your assets and possessions properly. Within your relationships give

and take is important right now, so whether you are involved in teamwork or a business partnership, and even within your personal relationship with your partner share your resources and be receptive to what they have to offer. It is time to be generous and also to enjoy the kindness of others.

### **Negative**

When the Six of Pentacles is in a negative position it indicates that there may be financial loss due to extravagance, carelessness, gambling or just sheer stupidity. You may be involved in legal matters over money, which may be related to a divorce or a business arrangement. Perhaps you are feeling insecure because of a lack of recognition for all the hard work you have put in. Others may be envious of you and causing unhappiness and distress. Perhaps you are not feeling charitable or generous because others have let you down with promises that never happened. Be careful of people taking advantage of you or involving you in shady deals.

### **People**

Those who donate money to good causes or are able to support others. A philanthropist. Those who have the knowledge to offer good advice. Those who have the power to act with authority. Mentors. Those who depend on others to be taken care of. Those who are taking advice. Those who are not acquiring what they need. Those who receive a gift or reward. Those who are learning and receiving information.

## Seven of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** Gains and profits in the making. Success as a result of efforts. Financial success through work or talent. Slow but steady progress. Reassessing the situation. Unfulfilled success. Working for nothing. Feel like giving up. Dissatisfaction. Wasting your time and effort.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a young man leaning on his hoe in deep thought and gazing at the produce he has grown.

The **hoe** is a weeding tool and symbolises the way we feel about our work and career issues. Weeds can destroy the life of the produce we are attempting to grow, as well as all the time, effort and nurturing we have devoted to it in order to make gains. Therefore, weeds may signify that there are problems in our working life that need to be rooted out. The **hoe** suggests that we are aware that it is important to eliminate what is not wanted in our lives, and perhaps indicates that we may need to rid ourselves of mental attitudes, old habits, ideas and patterns of behaviour that are choking us and stopping us from moving forward. It is time to weed out aspects of our lives that are stifling us.

On the whole, the Seven of Pentacles indicates a situation in which we are undecided as to the direction we want to take. It signifies that everything is not going as expected, leaving us feeling unfulfilled, and evaluating the circumstances of our actions and efforts. The hard work seems to have got us nowhere and we may be thinking of abandoning what we have done so far and do something different. Even though we enjoy what we are doing the monetary gain has been slow and pointless. However, the Seven of Pentacle

does suggest that we have made a lot of progress and it would be a shame to give it all up now because eventually we will see the benefits of our labour.

The Seven of Pentacles also signifies that we must not become complacent, because so much has already been accomplished we would not want to put that into jeopardy. Our circumstances may look challenging but we should not be discouraged. We may need to take some time out to develop fresh ideas and potential for bringing greater success. As long as we persevere, keep our focus and maintain our commitment, our plans will eventually take shape and we will receive the rewards we deserve.

This card is related to the number seven in numerology therefore, more information associated with the Seven of Pentacles can be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Seven of Pentacles appears in a spread you may feel that you have been wasting your time and effort on a situation or work project. However, this is not the case, it is time for you to take stock. You may doubt your ability to make a success of things, but actually you should be proud of what you have achieved so far. You are capable of having what you want but cannot afford to rest on your laurels, or become complacent about what you have achieved so far. If you persevere and remain focused on your goals the result you are after will come. Take time out to review the determination and energy needed to reach your goals and do not make any rash decisions. Carefully think about your decisions and what the outcome is likely to be before taking action. You still have further work to do if you want to see a satisfactory outcome. Long-term plans will eventually pay off, but patience is needed.

### **Negative**

When the Seven of Pentacles is in a negative position, it indicates that your financial situation is causing depression and anxiety. Your success will desert

you if you do not use consistent effort. There may be delays in payments that may make you feel anxious. Your hard work seems to have got you nowhere, perhaps it is not worth struggling at the moment and you should wait a while and try again later. Money worries may be on your mind and maybe you cannot afford to pay the bills because business is not profitable at the moment.

### **People**

Those who are reviewing what has been done. Those reflecting on their progress. Those who are taking stock. Those who are considering a direction change. Those who are standing at a crossroads. Those who are looking to a new strategy. Those who are finally seeing some results. Those who are reaping the rewards. Those who are patient and making plans for the future.

## Eight of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** Creation. Gaining new knowledge or skills. Nose to the grindstone. Making money. Many gifts and skills. Education. Promotion. Apprenticeship. Making a profitable investment. Material security.

### **Symbolic Meaning**

The Waite deck depicts a young man learning his apprenticeship to become a stonemason. As we can see he has repeatedly carved the pentacles in the stone discs in order to perfect his skill. He seems to have been very productive by the amount that are hung on the tree and on the floor beside him.

An **apprenticeship** signifies that we are learning new higher abilities and skills. It suggests that we are moving away from our routine and ordinary way of life into specific areas of knowledge and awareness. An **apprenticeship** indicates that we are about to begin a powerful learning curve where our hard work and perseverance will bring rewards and recognition. It suggests that we may be offered a promotion due to our dedication and achievements.

A **stonemason** is a master of skill and creativity who has the ability to transform a lump of stone into a solid, strong and beautiful work of art. The **stonemason** is suggesting that we too can develop and master awesome skills if we allow ourselves to stay focused on our goals.

On the whole, the Eight of Pentacles signifies that we are progressing in doing something we are passionate about. It suggests that we are totally absorbed in the work we do and thankful for the skills we have at our disposal. It often implies a time of great diligence, focus and attention to detail. This may

indicate an urge to take on a course of study, research or an apprenticeship to develop new skills or obtain qualifications. It will take hard work and extraordinary effort to obtain them, but the knowledge and skills we acquire will make us better equipped to reach our goals. It also indicates the need for meticulous detail by ensuring everything is as it should be. The Eight of Pentacles is about caring and taking the time to check the smallest details and not be slapdash about it. We reap what we sow therefore we need to work diligently each day towards our goals.

This card is related to the number eight in numerology therefore, other information associated with the Eight of Pentacles may be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Eight of Pentacles appears in a spread it indicates that you feel a personal satisfaction from putting your talents, skills and abilities to good use. Perhaps you are developing new skills or adding to your education in order to gain qualifications in an apprenticeship or other higher studies. The skills you learn now will eventually turn out to be profitable for you. Maybe you have started a new job or have been offered a promotion, or dedicating yourself to a project that you are passionate about, it may be a hobby that is producing steady results that could lead to a financially rewarding profession. Whatever your situation, you may not receive much financial reward at the moment, but through hard work, effort, dedication, skill, ability and patience, you can work towards a long-awaited goal and look forward to future rewards.

### **Negative**

When the Eight of Pentacles is in a negative position, it indicates that you may be worrying that your plans will fail. You may be lacking in confidence to perform or doubting your ability and incentive to carry on. Maybe you have lost your job because you are lagging behind on production or your potential. Perhaps you have become impatient and because you want success to come



quickly you have been slapdash in your work, which has damaged your reputation and the quality of your work. You may have been caught cheating in your exams, or financially caught out for income that has not been declared.

### **People**

Those who are diligent and putting in the effort. A good worker. Those who are absorbed in a project and producing steady results. Those who are increasing their knowledge by taking a course or learning a new craft or skill. An apprentice. A student. Those who pay attention to detail. A skilled specialist. Those who approach a task methodically.

## Nine of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** A healthy and stable situation. Material comfort. A restful situation. A reassuring situation. Well deserved success. Prosperity. Solitary achievement. Relying on yourself. Working alone. Femininity. Safety. Security. Love of nature. Prosperous property negotiations.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a wealthy and elegant woman standing alone in the vineyard of her estate. She has a falcon perched on her gloved left hand, and her manor house can be seen in the distance.

These days **wealth** is symbolised by where we live, the décor of our home, the amount of electronic equipment and state-of-the-art technology we use, what kind of car we drive, what we wear, perhaps what we eat, and our social position. **Wealth** and status has come a long way from the days, in some cultures, when it was the amount of beads we had around our neck to indicate our standing in the social arena. Therefore, the **wealthy and elegant woman** depicted on this card may indicate the amount of resources we have or are able to use.

Being **alone** in this case may relate to issues of independence. It all boils down to whether our temperament can deal with being **alone**, or are we mistaking it for loneliness? If we are **alone** and happy then it suggests that we are positive and comfortable with our independence. This card suggests wholeness, completeness and self-sufficiency, however maybe something is missing in her life and perhaps therefore is suggesting that we feel a need for someone in our lives, or we need to be more self-sufficient or self-reliant.

The **vineyard** is a symbol of fertility, sexuality and spirituality. It suggests that our situation may become a little more prosperous and pleasurable as new life is injected into it.

The **estate and manor house** suggests a need to widen our horizons or capabilities and establish ourselves more firmly and make our mark on the world. However, it can also indicate that we have taken on more than we can cope with and the situation has become very stressful.

The **falcon** suggests freedom and hope for those of us who are being restricted in any way. It indicates that we can now see the bigger picture instead of tying ourselves down with minor details. The **falcon** is a bird of prey and like the eagle it likes to be in a dominating position, therefore can also signify triumph over lust, or triumph over the control imposed by someone else.

The **gloved hand** suggests that we may feel the need to protect ourselves, or that a situation needs to be carefully handled at the moment. Others may not be considering our feelings, therefore it indicates that we need to be more assertive and not show any vulnerability.

On the whole, the Nine of Pentacles signifies that we are now in a position to enjoy the comfort and pleasure from what we have been able to achieve. We realise that all is well and there is nothing to worry about because we have everything we need, and feel proud for what we have accomplished. It indicates that we are content with our own company and enjoying the good things in life. We have a sense of self-worth and self-sufficiency, and happy in the knowledge that we have earned the position we are in now. We feel satisfied and complete and do not need the approval of others. The Nine of Pentacles signifies that we are in a healthy and stable situation.

This card relates to the number nine in numerology therefore, more information associated with the Nine of Pentacles can be found in the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Nine of Pentacles appears, it suggests that you are able to relax now that the hard work has been done. Everything has gone according to plan and you can now reap the benefits. You feel happy, secure and proud of your achievements. It suggests that you have hit a high point on a material and financial level, money is no longer a worry to you and there are no demands being made on you. You may be thinking of buying a new car or new furniture, you deserve it so why not? The Nine of Pentacles also indicates a love of nature and you may feel like working with it in some way, such as growing your own produce. You do not need to rely on others anymore because you are able to support yourself. You are making good use of your resources and your sense of self-worth is strong. You are in full control of your abilities and resources, which you are now able to use to assist others if need be.

### **Negative**

When the Nine of Pentacles is in a negative position, it warns against carelessness or putting too much trust in your available means. Bad management or risky investments may lead to an important project becoming financially unstable. Perhaps you are feeling lonely or bored, be very careful if you are thinking of entering into a new relationship as they might be attracted by your wealth. You may be having problems with some issues regarding a property.

### **People**

Those who are disciplined and exercise self-control. Those who rely on themselves and their own resources. Those who have achieved a comfortable lifestyle. Those who are tactful and diplomatic. Those who enjoy leisure and

the good things in life. A refined person with sound business sense. A lover of nature and animal life.

## Ten of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** Home and family matters. Strong family ties. Material and financial advantages. Acquiring the benefits of your work. Financial gain and security. Social status. Inheritance. Starting a family. Property and business deals. Good sound advice.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts the male head of the family sitting with his two dogs while two other members of the family, a man and a woman, stand happily talking to each other under the archway to their settlement. A young child is peeking around the woman, who is probably the mother, and trying to pet one of the dogs while keeping an eye on the old man. On the archway is a coat of arms, and the pentacles on this card form the positions of the spheres on the Kabbalistic Tree of Life (which is explained in the section on the Tarot and the Kabbalah).

The **male head of the family or old man** signifies the Self for a male, or the Animus for a female. It relates to the aspects of ourselves that carries authority, wisdom and compassion. He represents tradition, masculine maturity, the father figure, and the innate wisdom within us all.

The **two dogs** signify devoted, loyal and close friendships. They suggest that we can trust those around us to be faithful, loyal and protective. **Dogs** are sociable animals, therefore may indicate that we might need to make more of an effort to socialize with other people. Sometimes **dogs** may signify someone we are finding hard to get rid of and who may cause trouble if we try.

The **other members of the family** suggest that we have reached a period in our life where we are looking for security and maybe even to “settle down”. This “settling down” may indicate setting up home with a partner, adopting a new lifestyle or fulfilling a wish. In other words being settled within ourselves, desiring stability and knowing what we want.

The **young child** indicates our potential for development through new experiences. It is suggesting that it may be a good idea to tap into the passion and natural drive that a **child** has when we are facing difficulties.

The **woman or mother** may indicate, for a female, an aspect of her own disposition that has not yet been fully integrated. For a man it signifies how he relates to his female partner, his own feelings and his intuition. She indicates that it is a time for nurturing and supporting.

The **man** may indicate the arrival of a new friend or lover into our life. He can also indicate an aspect of ourselves, whether we are male or female.

The **coat of arms** symbolises clan or family solidarity and unity, and possibly corporation in business.

The **archway** symbolises that we are moving into a new phase of life in which we will be taking on new responsibilities, meeting new people and learning new skills.

On the whole, the Ten of Pentacles signifies material success, satisfaction and comfort together with a happy and secure family life. This card has a sense of permanence and security indicating an urge for stability in our lives. This may be through marriage, starting a family or basically settling and putting down roots. It indicates that we have achieved something and are completely satisfied in the knowledge that we can now enjoy material, emotional and spiritual abundance and security on a long-term basis. There is

also a feeling of belonging with the Ten of Pentacles because it indicates family stability, support, happy gatherings and practical help, suggesting that we can rely on them if we are going through a difficult period. Sometimes it indicates a house move or an inheritance.

This card is related to the number ten in numerology therefore, information associated with the Ten of Pentacles may be found by referring to the section on Tarot and Numerology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Ten of Pentacles appears in a spread suggests that you have reached a stage in your life where you can enjoy material security and emotional abundance that has been obtained by completing something through your hard work. You can be assured of financial prosperity and security in your personal affairs and you may enjoy recognition in your field of work. You have a good family life and enjoy the relationship you have throughout the whole generations of your family.

Sometimes it indicates an inheritance and suggests that you may carry on a family tradition through marriage. In relationships you may be ready to establish your own family in order to strengthen your sense of self-worth. The Ten of Pentacles also suggests that you are now able to use your skills and resources to help others. Investments in property and business will prove to be profitable now, and any business trips will be successful. You are in a good position and can now relax with the fact that you have created something long-lasting.

### **Negative**

When the Ten of Pentacles appears in a negative position it indicates that your family may be putting too many responsibilities on you, which leads to arguments and disputes. Bad investments may lead to financial loss or there may be a delay in money that is owed to you. You may be feeling



unappreciated or taken for granted. Perhaps you are trying to base your self-worth on other people's wealth, attitude or behaviour rather than expressing your own creativity or true self.

### **People**

Those who have material abundance and free from financial problems. Those who are successful in business and are financially secure. Those who concern themselves with permanence and long-term security. Those who have a strong and established family life. Those who follow convention. Those who stay within established guidelines and become part of the Establishment.

## Page of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** Financial help. Good news concerning money and finances. Studious. Ambitious. Opportunities concerning education. Opportunity to increase your income. Professionally inclined. Starting a new business. Successful business venture. Slow and steady progress. Apprenticeship. Research. Documents. Willing to learn. Paperwork. Negotiations.

### Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a young man standing in a rich and fertile landscape staring intently at the pentacle he is holding. There is a ploughed field in the valley below him and a mountain in the distance.

The **rich and fertile landscape** signifies that we are in touch with our own unconstrained and natural feelings. It suggests that new opportunities for personal growth are coming our way. A **rich and fertile landscape** may also indicate that we are thinking about our lifestyle, perhaps we feel that we are being tied down with routine and conventional traditions or taboos and have a desire for freedom or getting close to nature.

The **ploughed field** signifies that we are ready for new growth and change, and may be in the process of creating a new opportunity for ourselves.

The **valley** is a strong symbol of female sexuality relating to the breasts and the more nurturing aspect of our personalities. It can indicate tranquillity and contentment, and suggests that we are independent of thought and adventurous. A **valley** also signifies that a project we are working on will be successful, resulting in prosperity.

The **mountain** suggests that we will come up against obstacles and challenges but we will get there in the end as long as we stay focused on our goals.

On the whole, the Page of Pentacles represents a young person who is conscientious, thrifty, capable and diligent. This is someone who may not have a lot of money but has great prospects, maybe a student with a sense of duty and understanding of the importance of learning. Through careful attention, diligence and practical application this young person is working towards his/her goals. This person may actually seem more mature and sensible for their age, and very dependable, reliable and a person we can trust and value.

As a situation, it is one that has just started. This could be in the form of a new job, a hobby that could prove to be profitable or some good news that has a significant impact on our lives. The Page of Pentacles focuses our attention on striving to attain our goals, on our position in the world, and the way we earn our living. It suggests that we have the ability to organise and concentrate on our resources, and urges us to seek responsibility on all levels and establish ourselves practically.

The Page of Pentacles is associated with the zodiacal sign of Capricorn therefore, more information about this card can be found by referring to the section on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Page of Pentacles appears in a spread it suggests that you are not bringing in much money at the moment but may be trying to find an intelligent way to increase your finances. You may be about to start a new job that has good prospects. It does signify that you will realise your ambitions and status as a result of your integrity, dependability, practical common sense, frugality, perseverance and hard work. Someone may help you to make a change for

the better by showing you a new approach to your situation or circumstances. Listen to what is being advised and act upon it, because it may become useful and open you up to new ideas. You may decide that you want to go into further education or learn a new skill of some kind to enhance your career prospects. Long-term rewards are promised as long as you learn to be self-disciplined, and organise and concentrate on taking care of your material and physical resources, and listen to any advice that may be useful.

### **Negative**

When the Page of Pentacles is in a negative position it warns against a loss of prestige through a lack of self-discipline or a proper sense of responsibility. There may be setbacks as a result of failure to seize opportunities through shyness, through shirking obligations or through neglecting to make adequate preparations. You may be unable to attract support because of a narrow, pessimistic and self-centred outlook.

### **People**

A young person who takes learning and material achievements seriously. A student. Those who make their plans real and achieve tangible results. Someone you can count on. Those who are practical and use their common sense. Those who take a realistic approach and find a solution that works. Those who stick to their commitments and establish credibility. Those who can be trusted and have faith in others. Those who have the ability to be prosperous. A hard worker.

# Knight of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** Good news where finances are concerned. Steady but sure work. Reliable. Extremely dependable and careful. Trustworthy. Easy-going, intelligent and likeable. Patient, hardworking and clever with material things. New experiences. Travel for business. Methodical. Loyalty. Thorough. Attention to detail. Practical.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts an armoured knight sitting on a strong and sturdy black shire-horse. They have come to a temporary halt in the rolling hills of the countryside while he takes time out to thoughtfully examine the pentacle he is holding.

This **armoured knight** signifies that we are determined to stand our ground and will do things by the book without taking any risks, and work solidly and steadily towards our goals. He is suggesting that through trust, honesty, perseverance and hard work we will gain honour and respect. The **armour** signifies that we are protecting our ideas, tradition and future conventional ideals.

The **shire-horse** is a heavy powerful type of **horse** that was bred to pull heavy loads. It was used in the fields to pull the ploughs, and used in medieval times to ride into battle because of its height and sheer weight, plus the fact that it sounded like rolling thunder when it was charging towards the enemy. These days the **shire-horse** is used to pull traditional draught beer drays. This **shire-horse** signifies controlled strength, stamina and virility, and is suggesting that we are making ponderous but meaningful progress. The **black shire-horse** represents the excitable side of our nature, but also suggests materialisation, pessimism and judgement. In ancient Egypt the

colour **black** was the colour of resurrection and eternal life and a symbol of power and authority. It is suggesting that we “take the reins” and assume control of a situation. It also indicates travel in the near future.

The **rolling hills** suggest that we are facing obstacles and hoping that we will be able to meet the challenges. They also relate to the female breasts and the nurturing aspect of our personality.

On the whole, the Knight of Pentacles represents a conventional and practical young man who leaves nothing to chance. He accepts responsibility and is not afraid of hard work. He is trustworthy and steadfast and his solid, common sense and industrious approach to life, along with the experiences he attracts to himself, will bring benefits as a result of his own sound and constructive knowledge of technique. He has most likely to have developed his skills through his adherence to traditional methods and through his ability to keep plodding along at the job in hand. He enjoys material possessions and sensual pleasures, and manifests good health and vitality.

The Knight of Pentacles signifies endurance and constancy rather than passion. It suggests that we should embody some of his qualities of steadily pushing ourselves along getting things done as he does, while not forgetting to connect with the everyday pleasures of life. It may be a call to awaken our dormant passionate self, but it does indicate that we will have long-term benefits related to our career, business or investments.

The Knight of Pentacles is associated with the astrological element of earth therefore, more information can be found by referring to the section on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Knight of Pentacles appears you may be in a situation where you need to call on an adviser to help you with a business or financial transaction.

What steps you take are entirely up to you, because as a result of you being extremely dependable and careful you may be afraid to take the risk, so follow your gut reaction and do what you think is right. You are hard-working, patient and rather conventional and have the ability to move tenaciously towards a goal. Life may be a little bit boring at present but slow and steady progress will assure success, and your diligent hard work and determination will pay off at the end of the day.

You may meet an easygoing, intelligent and likeable person and enjoy his/her company or take a trip with someone you like or love. There may be good news regarding a pay rise or promotion. If life is slow at the moment, in time you will get your wish and your desires will be realised. Honest labour and secure investments will bring money to you, and success will come through hard work, perseverance and dependability. Your relationships will also be stable and loyal.

### **Negative**

When the Knight of Pentacles is in a negative position there may be setbacks due to an over-conservative attitude, a stolid unimaginative approach and a lack of technical and executive ability and practical skill. You may have some kind of legal loss due to a careless attitude. Perhaps your confidence and bank balance is low just now, business is bad and you are finding it hard to get credit.

### **People**

Those who are unwavering in their pursuit of a goal. Those who are cautious and proceeds slowly and carefully. Those who are thorough and take care of every detail and never leaves a job half done. Those who are realistic, willing to look at the facts and predicts any problems in advance. Those who are hard-working, diligent and industrious, and when dedicated to a task is tireless and unflagging.

Those who can be obstinate and must have their own way. Those who are too conservative, afraid to take a risk and misses chances through waiting. Those who can be obsessive and do not know when to give up. Those who are pessimistic, concentrates on what is wrong and dooms a project from the start. Those who forget that life should involve a little fun.



# Queen of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** Realistic and practical. Organisation. Confident. Hospitable. Good business sense. Prosperous. Hardworking. Practicality. Security. Successful. Common sense. Responsibility. Good financial management. Putting order into accounts. Shrewd. Material benefits. Sensuality. Family values.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a queen sitting on her throne in a beautiful lush landscape while lovingly holding a pentacle on her lap. She is wearing red, white and green robes, and her throne is decorated with the head of a goat, Cupid and fruit sculptures, and a rabbit rests at the left of her as she sits under a bower of roses.

The **throne** is a seat of power and authority in both the worldly and spiritual realms, and acknowledges our right to take authority and control.

The **beautiful lush landscape** signifies that we are in touch with our unconstrained and natural feelings. It suggests that we have new opportunities for personal growth coming our way. It may also indicate that we are thinking about our lifestyle, perhaps we feel tied to routine and conventional traditions or taboos and have a desire for freedom or getting close to nature.

The **red robes** are associated with life and warmth, love and fertility, but also danger, anger and aggression. They suggest that our feelings are passionate and indicate an intense drive for achievement and success.

The **white robes** represent status and power. They symbolise innocence, spiritual purity and wisdom, and are associated with warmth, love and also protection, either physical or emotional or the spiritual protection of faith.

The **green robes** are associated with equilibrium and compatibility. They suggest new beginnings, new personal growth, new developments in our personality and opening up to new methods of self-expression.

The **goat's head** is a symbol of our earthy, sexual side, and suggests that we may have the chance to flaunt this because it indicates a new and passionate love affair may be just around the corner. A **goat** has the ability to climb and reach the pinnacle of mountains and suggests that we will eventually reach our goals through our determination and ambition.

**Cupid** is a symbol of love and desire. It suggests that we are searching for a union with someone or something, which may be in the form of more authority and recognition in our career, or a desire to unite with someone close and move into a relationship with them.

The **fruit sculptures** signify fertility, reproduction and growth, as well as readiness, eroticism and sensuality. **Fruit** can also signify the fruitfulness of our maturing subconscious mind.

The **rabbit** as we obviously know is a symbol of fertility, creativity and abundance because of their prolific nature. However, because of their trickster associations with stories such as Brer Rabbit and the Hare and the Tortoise it indicates that we may surprise those around us with our ability to be innovative, which may lead to success and promotion.

The **bower of roses** symbolises love, purity and beauty. A **rose** is a symbol of the heart, of perfection, and of sacred, romantic and sensual love. It

suggests that love is in the air and perhaps even a marriage. It may also indicate the beauty of nature and life as it should be, or how we want it to be.

On the whole, the Queen of Pentacles signifies a mature woman who is creative, intelligent, sensible, practical and sensuous. She is charitable and thoughtful, and applies her qualities within her family and business matters. This woman works hard and is very good when she is working with intricate details. She likes organisation and everything to be in order, and makes plans to make sure that she gets the right results. She is so conscientious that she keeps a tight reign on things in order to make sure that she does not run into any difficulties with her finances or other resources, and has the ability to prevent any errors or catastrophes that many others would not have foreseen.

The Queen of Pentacles is dutiful, loyal and proud of her family, and will spend time and attention to make sure her home is comfortable and nice. She is very considerate and perceptive, and if we have any problems she will happily try to console and calm us and offer sensible advice that would be wise to take on board. This woman is successful in business, and can usually be found in a job where she has the opportunity to use her critical and analytical faculties, and where attention to detail and problem solving is needed. She gets around every obstacle and comes up with what is needed. This card invites us to think and feel as she does because some of her qualities will benefit us just now.

The Queen of Pentacles is associated with the zodiacal sign of Virgo therefore, more information is available that relates to this queen by referring to the section on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the Queen of Pentacles appears in a spread it indicates that you need to show how organised and accurate you can be. It is time to put some order into your resources and take control of your financial and material matters. Be

more self-sufficient and use your money and other resources constructively and creatively. A job that involves helping others may bring you financial rewards because the Queen of Pentacles suggests that you have a good head for business and an ability to manage other people. It suggests that your organisational skills are brilliant and you are able to make intricate and fiddly tasks work to bring chaos into order.

The Queen of Pentacles can also indicate that you may meet someone like her who is good with business matters or successful in his/her chosen field of work. This person likes the good things in life and happy to share his/her wellbeing with you or offer some valuable advice that could prove advantageous. The Queen of Pentacles' special energy has meaning for you now or it may be wise to adopt some of her characteristics. As far as relationships are concerned, sensual pleasure, contentment, mutual support and security is indicated.

### **Negative**

When the Queen of Pentacles is in a negative position it suggests that you may be overindulging in the good things in life and it may be a good time to take care of your health and your body by starting a new diet or taking on an exercise programme. You may need to be aware of someone who is behaving suspiciously and is not trustworthy. It suggests that you may be worrying for no reason whatsoever, which is counterproductive to your health and work. You may have a tendency to be cunning and cold-blooded in your quest to attain what you want, and may criticise the actions of others and analyse their motives. It urges you to adopt a team spirit rather than trying to do it all on your own. Perhaps you are doubting your abilities, which is making you feel insecure and stifling your progress.

**People**

Those who are nurturing and give love and support. Those who create a warm, secure environment. Those who are concerned with the welfare of others. A capable woman who is a mother and businesswoman. Those who are big-hearted and will do any service for others. Those who are down-to-earth and allows others to be themselves. Those who are resourceful and finds a use for whatever is at hand. Those who work hard for material success. A businesswoman. Those who are trustworthy to keep their word and secrets. Those who are loyal and steadfast.

# King of Pentacles



**Key words and phrases:** Reliable. Practical. Disciplined. Hardworking. Leadership. Favourable business deals. Ambitious. Shrewd. Management. Investment. Business and financial ability. Organisational skills. Common sense. Earned success. Perseverance. Success through effort. Dealing. Negotiation. Communication. Content.

## Symbolic Meaning

The Waite deck depicts a king sitting on his throne while holding a sceptre in his right hand and a pentacle in his left. He is wearing black and red robes that is decorated with grapes and vine leaves and his throne has sculpted bulls' heads adorning it, which is sited in front of a large castle.

The **throne** is a seat of power and authority in both worldly and spiritual realms. It is acknowledging our right to take authority and control.

The **sceptre** is a symbol of authority and rulership. Originally it was a symbol of male fertility, but now it implies royal or divine power and has been used as a symbol of imperial or kingly position. The **sceptre** can indicate our right to use our authority, and also signifies the transference of divine power from above.

The **black and red robes** may be a symbol of power and authority to this king, but in the West the wearing of **black** is associated with death and mourning. However, in early times the bodies of the dead were stained with **red** ochre to symbolise blood and the connection to earth. In ancient Egypt, **black** was the colour of resurrection and eternal life, because new life was seen as emerging out of the darkness. It is associated with the mother

goddess and fertility when it is linked with **red**, the colour of blood, which signifies life, strength, power, dynamism, vitality and sensuality. It suggests that we have intense emotions and drive for survival, goals and achievement, but may be stifling our passionate feelings. The **black and red robes** can also represent that we are accessing deeper into our spiritual side.

The **grapes and vine leaves** are a symbol of fertility, sexuality and spirituality. They suggest that our situation may become more prosperous and pleasurable as new life is injected into it.

The **sculpted bulls' heads** symbolise masculinity and assertiveness, and also virility, sexual passion and creative power. However we may need to try and steer clear of the negative side of the **bull**, for example, “**a bull in a china shop**”, which is destructive and angry.

The **castle** may suggest a need to expand our horizons or capabilities, and to establish ourselves more solidly and make a bolder statement to the world about ourselves. However, we just need to be sure that we do not take on more than we can handle.

On the whole, the King of Pentacles is practical, patient, reliable and tenacious. He attains financial and emotional stability and security through his persistent and methodical quality of seeing things through to the end. He is enterprising and adept, and uses his skills and practical knowledge competently to reach his goals. He finds opportunity everywhere and is able to mould his material, physical, emotional, mental and spiritual resources to consolidate his financial position and add to his material possessions, as he likes to have nice things around him. However, if someone close is experiencing difficulty he is more than willing to help out in any way he can.

The King of Pentacles loves working and has good business acumen, and also not afraid to get his hands dirty. He has no difficulty with attracting

followers in business, projects or other movements, and will usually use his good judgement and intuition when employing them. It is important for him to have a happy and harmonious partnership because he needs to put down roots and establish his own family. He is ambitious but may not like taking risks, and usually stays in the same job. He is very good at handling financial matters, to which he may direct his skills when seeking a career. Routine is a necessity to him, and change or uncertainty may make him feel uncomfortable. This king is urging us to take on some of his characteristics as they may be of benefit to us just now.

The King of Pentacles is associated with the zodiacal sign of Taurus therefore, more information related to this card can be found by referring to the section on the Court Cards and Astrology.

### **Interpretation**

When the King of Pentacles appears, it indicates that someone may enter your life who is ambitious and gifted in dealing or negotiating in financial, property or business matters. This person may offer some valuable advice that will help you to achieve your goals. Alternatively, it may indicate that you must take the responsibility as to how you make good use of your resources. Practicality, organisation and self-sufficiency are needed if you are to start a new venture, or if you are making financial investments in order to achieve long-lasting stability and security. However, your prospects look promising to attain prosperity and for developing something that will endure.

The King of Pentacles suggests that a promotion or a pay rise is possible and property matters go well. Be careful not to become too involved in business that your personal relationships suffer. Try to balance your family and friend's needs with your innate capacity to manage your business and financial concerns successfully. Your patience and persistence will be rewarded. You have what it takes to reach a successful outcome. Put your creativity and new ideas to the test.



**Negative**

When the King of Pentacles is in a negative position you may need to deal with a miserly bully who is always conscious of his own interests. You may be being too possessive with your partner, which may destroy the relationship. Perhaps you are being too stubborn over a business matter and will not see reason. Learn to appreciate what you have and do not become greedy.

**People**

Those who are enterprising and can take an idea and make it work. A manager and businessperson. A banker. Those who are preoccupied with financial matters. A stockbroker. An investor. A financier. Those who are adept, have a wide range of natural abilities and skilful with their hands. A property developer. Those who work with the land. Those who are reliable, dependable and meet all their commitments and promises. Those who support and encourage the accomplishments of others. Those who are ready to jump in and help and give generously of their time and attention. Those who are steady and work towards a goal with firm resolve.

# The Spreads



## What is a Spread?

The layout of the cards is called a spread. Learning how to read a spread will take some time before you become fluent, understand their meanings and their positions in the pattern of the spread. After studying each card and its symbolism start by trying to understand what a single card is trying to say to you. First of all, start by shuffling the cards while asking a question or asking for guidance. Next, cut the

cards with your left hand into three piles and choose a card that you feel drawn to from one of the piles, either by taking the top card or by fanning out that pile and pulling out a card. The left hand is said to represent the spiritual and subconscious.

## Preparing for a Reading

After you have learnt the traditional meanings of the Tarot, you should eventually be able to give the cards your own distinctive individual interpretations. Using the Tarot cards can help you to improve your intuition or psychic awareness and the more practise you put in, the stronger it will become. Eventually you will be able to gain insight into past events and future circumstances to which you can give advice.

If you are feeling agitated or distracted it will be difficult to focus on the reading. Therefore it is important to create the right atmosphere and an ordered and established routine. This will provide a secure framework in which to work and will make you feel more relaxed and confident. Remember most people will come to you for advice concerning their problems or issues, you are their consultant, much like when you go to the doctor for advice on

issues concerning your health. The setting and ambience that needs to be created should be conducive of a consultation.

### **Setting the Scene**

Ideally you will need to create a quiet and peaceful atmosphere with no outside distractions. Take a few moments to attune yourself before you start to read the cards, perhaps by taking a few deep breaths and going into a short meditation technique to open yourself to spiritual guidance. The next chapter will guide you through some of these techniques. If you like you can also light a candle or burn some incense, or maybe some crystals may enable you to keep your focus, however anything that has a special meaning for you will be fine.

### **Asking a Question**

When the stage is set, the querent (the person who is consulting the cards) may want to ask a question. However, not everyone will ask a question, especially if they are sceptical of the reader's psychic ability, and sometimes the querent may ask about something that is not really related to their issues. This may be because they are afraid to confront or express their worries, or should I say fear a confirmation of what they know is worrying them and will have to face reality. An intuitive reader however, is usually able to offer sensitive advice to solve the dilemma. If the querent does want to ask a question try to get them to ask an open one rather than a question that requires a yes or no answer, or questions that begin with "how long will or when will?" Try to urge the querent to start with "what are the issues, how can I overcome or what is the best way to?" kind of questions.

I ask the querent to shuffle the cards while concentrating on their question. With the querent actually holding the cards and shuffling them connects him/her with their subconscious mind. I then ask the querent to cut the deck into three piles with his/her left hand, stack them all together again in whatever way he/she wants to, then ask their question. Because the querent

has influenced his/her own spread the Tarot will now answer the question, everything connected to it, the issues that are working for and against the querent, and offer advice on the best way to move forward.

### **Answering a Question**

You should not offer information to the querent as the absolute truth, or that a situation or state of mind does not involve any choice. A Tarot reading does not give an absolute outcome or give all the answers it only gives you a perspective into the querent's situation. It is then up to you to sensitively offer advice on their situation. If the querent is going through difficulties, then looking at all of the cards will usually offer you more information to the reason for the querent's present circumstances and possibly an avenue to offer advice. You must always try to put yourself in the querent's position.

### **Practice**

The secret of understanding the Tarot is to be receptive to what the symbolism is telling you. After you have learnt the traditional interpretations of the cards, concentrate on the symbolism of each one or even step into the scene on the card, then you will start to connect with your subconscious mind and see what lies beneath the surface meaning. Practise this by shuffling the cards and ask a question, then cut the cards and draw one out. You may be surprised to learn that through its symbolic language you may have chosen the exact card that will reflect on your particular question or situation. Try to practise as much as you can and with friends if possible.

### **Shuffling the Tarot Cards**

Before you begin a spread shuffle the cards well. I do not use reversed cards in a spread because I believe that the Tarot should be shown as they were originally made, and besides that, there are enough negative or unfavourable meanings in the upright cards to give an accurate reading. However, if you favour reversed cards that is fine too, but if you do not want to use reversed meanings you will have to make sure that you keep all the cards in an upright

position while shuffling them. After shuffling the Tarot cards give the deck to the querent to shuffle and ask him/her to think of a question while doing so. Then ask the querent to cut the deck into three piles with his/her left hand and place them face down in front of him/her. After this has been done, ask the querent to put the three piles back together again in any way he/she chooses and hand them back to you.

### **Dealing the Tarot Cards**

When dealing the cards take them one at a time from the top of the deck and lay them face down until you have the appropriate number according to the pattern of your spread. Turn the cards face up while being careful to turn them over from side to side, because if you turn them over from end to end the cards will be in a reversed position.

### **Analysing the Spread**

Before you begin a reading, take a moment to study all the cards in your spread in order to see how they relate to each other as a whole. Do any of the cards relate to your question? Are you wary of cards that look unpleasant? Is the overall feeling of the spread happy or disappointing? Are there many Major Arcana cards? Does one particular suit dominate the spread? Is there a strong presence of court cards? You could study them for ages, but obviously this is not practical. Allow your intuition to draw out the meaning of the cards while keeping in mind their position and how they interrelate with the other cards in the spread.

### **Reading the Tarot Cards**

When reading a Tarot spread you will be forming the answer to your question. I do this by forming a story in my head that relates to the querent's spread, question and circumstances. I first look to see how many Major Arcana cards appear and if there are three or more, I know that there is soon going to be big changes around the querent. Then I look to see if there is an even balance of each suit or does one particular suit dominate.

Court cards can indicate how many people may be involved in the querent's situation and the zodiacal birth sign they may be, or the characteristics they are likely to have. However, the Court cards can indicate an event that has happened or will happen during the period of the Court card's zodiacal sign. Court cards can also signify that there may be a need for the querent to adopt some of the qualities or characteristics of the Court cards to assist his/her self-development.

Be aware of the cards that repeat the numerical value because this will connect with the Tarot and Numerology section of this book and add more clarity to the reading as to events and the depth of spiritual or emotional problems the querent may encounter. Also pay attention to the cards that lie at either side of the card you are reading to see if they are positive or negative cards. If they are negative then you will have to advise the querent as to the best way to approach or overcome these obstacles or outside influences.

When you are reading for a querent they may be afraid of what they see in the cards, especially if they see the Death card. Under no circumstances must you tell anyone that there is going to be a death, even if you feel that it is inevitable. What will happen is that you will only instil fear and negative emotions into the querent, and it is not your right to do that. However, neither should you lie, exaggerate or glamourize what you see in the cards. If the cards are telling you that the querent is heading into difficulties, sensitively tell him/her that there are going to be difficulties ahead. If you use your instincts and intuition the Tarot will offer advice on how to deal with the querent's circumstances.

### **Taking Notes**

It is a good idea to take notes when practising to read a spread. Write down each card you selected and their position in the spread, and write the story that it is telling you. Jot down the problems or conflict, what your intuition wants you to understand, what your role is in the reading, the

recommendations for action, the projected outcome, and how you feel about that. Every so often look at your notes again to see if your reading was accurate.

### **Telling Time**

Sometimes you will be asked when do you think the events that have come to light in the reading will happen. It can be hard to judge sometimes because it may depend on the querent to put in the effort to make things happen, so it can be a case of “how long is a piece of string?” However, there are some guidelines that seem to work. For example:

- The Major Arcana cards can signify that the event will happen very soon.
- The Court cards can predict the months. Therefore, if you draw the King of Pentacles he represents the zodiacal sign of Taurus, which would indicate the months between April and May.
- The Aces can signify the season. Therefore, if you draw the Ace of Cups it would signify the summer season during the months of June, July and August.
- The Minor Arcana cards can indicate days or weeks. Therefore, if you draw the Six of Wands it would suggest within either six days or six weeks.

### **Dropped Cards**

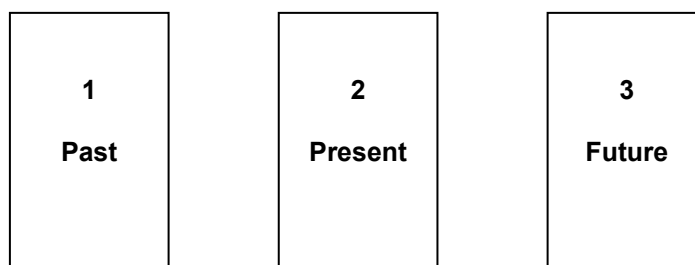
If a card is dropped while shuffling keep hold of it because it is important to the reading and could well be the answer to the querent’s question, or predict the time when events will start to happen for the querent. If many cards are dropped it suggests that it is soon going to be very eventful in the querent’s life. Sometimes a card in the spread may keep drawing your attention to it as if it is trying to jump out at you. It seems that way because it is trying to tell you something important within the reading and will keep pulling at you until your intuition gets the message.

## **The Spreads**

There are many spreads for you to choose from and the only way is to experiment and find a spread that you feel comfortable with, or maybe design your own as I have done. The spread I use is simply based on the old Romany three card past, present and future reading. However, I do three readings with many cards in each one without asking for any questions from the querent. The first reading will tell me the story of the past events that has led the querent to his/her present circumstances. The second reading will tell me where the querent is at presently and any advice that may be needed. The third reading will inform me of any events, changes, or anything else that is likely to transpire in the near future, and the advice as to the best way for the querent to go forward. At the end of the reading I then ask the querent if he/she has any questions, and usually they tell me that I have answered all the questions they might have asked and happy with the reading.

## **The Three-Card Spread**

The three-card spread is an old Romany method used to answer a specific question. The querent is asked to shuffle the cards while thinking of his/her question, then with his/her left hand cut the cards into three piles and place them face down in a row. The top card of each pile is then turned over by the reader. The first card represents the past, the second card represents the present, and the third card represents the future. For example:





## Case Study

Peter, aged 29, is a self-employed builder and was concerned because he was finding it hard to find the finances to buy the materials for each contract that he secured. Work is steadily coming through for Peter, but after he has paid his workforce and obviously has to financially support his family he struggles to invest into the next job. He mentioned that his situation had become stressful and he had not told anyone else how he felt about his circumstances. Peter wanted to see if the cards would show any new direction or developments to his dilemma. These are the three cards he chose:

**Past**



**Ace of Swords**

**Present**



**Queen of Pentacles**

**Future**



**Ace of Wands**

### Position 1: The Past – Ace of Swords

The Ace of Swords shows that Peter has been finding it difficult to put his ideas into action. This was possibly due to practical issues or delays with finances to enable him to get a project off the ground. For a while now, Peter has been finding it hard to find the strength to push on through the obstacles and challenges he has come up against. However, his dedication, courage and determination has got him this far, therefore the Ace of Swords suggests that he should keep focused, concentrate on his goals and make sure that he uses his logic and intuition to deal effectively with his situation.

### Position 2: The Present – Queen of Pentacles

The Queen of Pentacles in this position indicates that Peter needs to put some order into his resources and take control of his financial situation. He will need to be more self-sufficient and use his money and other resources

constructively and creatively, and be careful of how much he is spending on the good things in life. This card suggests that Peter has a good head for business but maybe need to improve his organisational skills and deal with the intricate details or attitudes that may be stifling his progress. It urges him to adopt a team spirit rather than trying to do it alone and allow others to understand what is on his mind or what he is feeling. The Queen of Pentacles also indicates that Peter may meet someone who is very good at dealing with business matters and can help him to overcome his obstacles, and maybe come up with what is needed. It would be advisable for Peter to listen and take on board what this person has to say because it could change his life.

### **Position 3: The Future – Ace of Wands**

The Ace of Wands in this position indicates that the action Peter takes now will be the start of something new, and could lead to a new career or a major change in his lifestyle. This card urges Peter to go ahead with strength and determination in his actions and things will start to move in the direction for a stable and long-lasting venture. It will mean hard work but it is about to be revitalized.

## **The Celtic Cross Spread**

The Celtic Cross is one of the most popular spread of the Tarot since Arthur Edward Waite recommended it as the most suitable to obtain an answer to a definite question. It provides an overview of the querent's situation and is also excellent as a general reading. The Celtic Cross is laid out in two parts consisting of the Christian symbolism of the cross and an upright staff.

### **The Signicator Card**

Some Tarot practitioners like to use a signicator card with the Celtic Cross spread but personally I prefer not to use one, because the card that has been chosen as a signicator might have been dealt in another position in the spread giving it more significance. However, if you prefer to use a signicator card many practitioners use a Court card to represent the querent. For

example, the Queens and Pages can represent women, and obviously a more mature woman would be represented by a Queen, and Kings and Knights would represent men with the Kings being the more mature ones. If you happen to know the querent's birth sign then you could use the Court cards that relate to their zodiacal sign. For example, fire signs Aries, Leo and Sagittarius would be the Wands Court cards; the water signs Cancer, Scorpio and Pisces the Cups Court cards; the air signs Gemini, Libra and Aquarius the Swords Court cards; and the earth signs Taurus, Virgo and Capricorn the Pentacles Court cards.

Once a significator card has been selected, place it face down on the table and shuffle the rest of the cards. Hand the deck for the querent to shuffle while he/she thinks of the question and ask him/her to cut the deck into three piles with his/her left hand and put the piles back on top of each other again in any way the querent wants to. You then pick up the cards, turn over the significator, draw each card from the top of the deck and lay them down as follows:

- Take the first card and place it face up on the significator. This is the card that covers the querent and reveals the present situation that surrounds the querent's question.
- The second card is placed face up and horizontally across the first card. This card crosses the querent, and reveals either the positive or negative influences relating to the obstacles, circumstances or conflict connected with the querent's question.
- The third card is placed face up beneath the other cards. This is the card that is beneath the querent, and reveals the recent past influences or root of the current situation that has resulted with the question.
- The fourth card is placed face up to the left of the significator. This is the card that is behind the querent, and reveals the past events that have formed the basis of the question.

- The fifth card is placed face up above the other cards. This is the card that crowns the querent, and reveals the possible goal or outcome of the querent's present position.
- Take the sixth card and place it face up to the right of the significator. This is the card that is before the querent, and reveals the immediate future influences or situations connected with the querent's question.

The cards that form the shape of the cross have now been laid out and there are four cards left that form the shape of the staff.

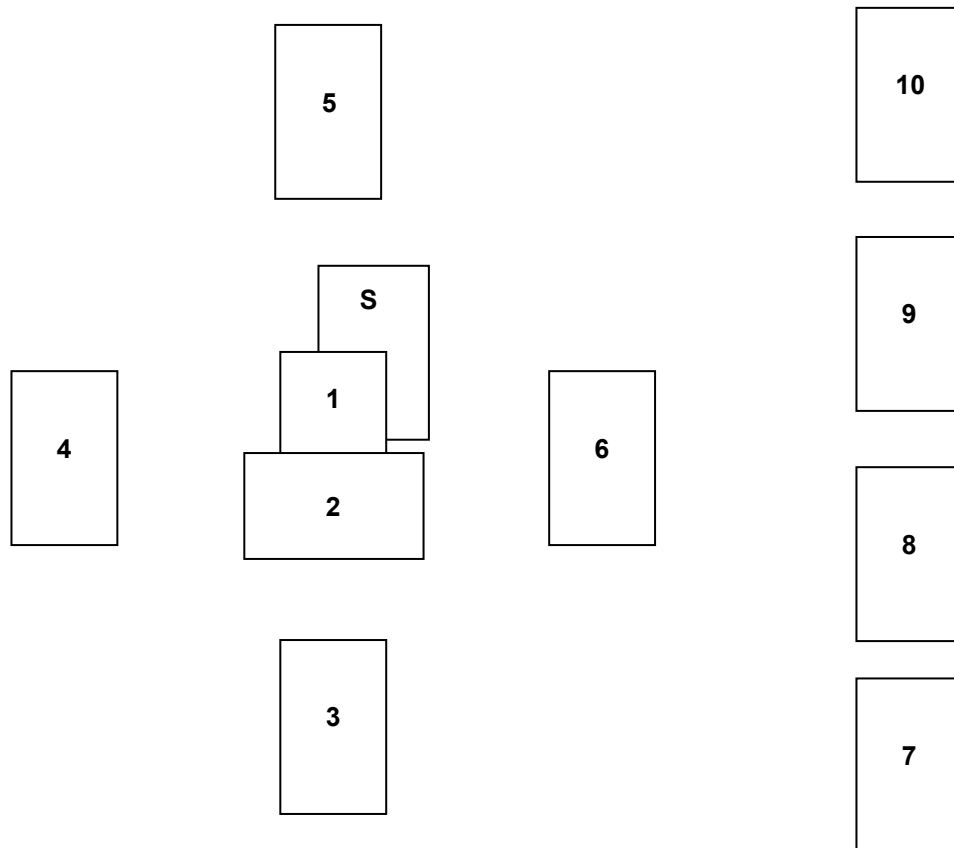
- Take the seventh card and place it at the base of the staff and to the right of the cross. This is the querent's feelings, and reveals the querent's emotions, attitudes, how he/she views the situation, and the state of his/her mind.
- The eighth card is placed face up above the seventh card. This is the querent's outside influences. It reveals the present opinions of family, friends and others who are involved in the querent's situation, and the environmental and home issues that may have an influence on the querent at this time.
- The ninth card is placed face up above the eighth card. This is the querent's hopes and fears, and can help to shed some light on the querent's fears and doubts or show his/her wishes and ideals, or unexpected factors.
- Take the tenth card and place it above the ninth card. This is the outcome, and reveals the final result or answer to the querent's question.

### **Clarification Card**

If a Court card is in the outcome position it usually means that another person will be involved in bringing the querent's situation to a conclusion, so if this happens a clarification card can be drawn to find what area of the querent's situation this person may be dealing with. You should also keep in mind that

the tenth card is the final culmination of all of the other cards and should be read with a connection to them, especially with the fifth card (the crown card) and the sixth card (the immediate future influences card). The pattern of the Celtic Cross spread is as follows:

### The Celtic Cross Pattern



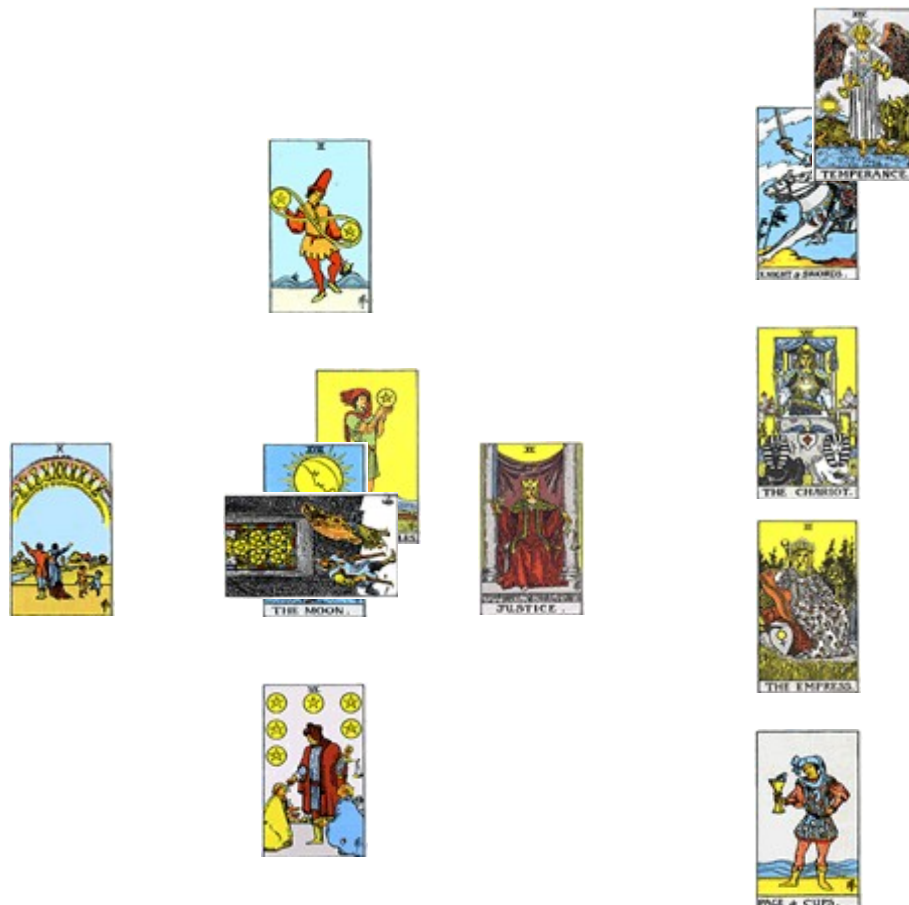
S = the Significator. 1 = What Covers the Querent. 2 = What Crosses the Querent. 3 = What is Beneath the Querent. 4 = What is Behind the Querent. 5 = What Crowns the Querent. 6 = What is Before the Querent. 7 = The Querent's Feelings. 8 = The Querent's Outside Influences. 9 = The Querent's Hopes and Fears. 10 = The Outcome of the Querent's Reading.

## Reading the Celtic Cross Spread

**Case Study:** John, aged 52, a Nightclub and Public House Manager.

John had been working as a manager in the licensed trade for approximately 25 years. Unfortunately due to outlet closures because of a recession within the industry his job became redundant. However, he wanted a change of direction and felt that he would like to try and write a book, and now he has the opportunity he wanted some guidance as to whether it would support him financially to do so. John came for a reading in the hope that it would reveal that writing a book would be the right direction for him to take. After choosing a significator card for him these are the cards that John chose:

### John's Celtic Cross Spread



## Significator card – **Page of Pentacles**

1. What covers John – **The Moon**
2. What crosses John – **Five of Pentacles**
3. What is beneath John – **Six of Pentacles**
4. What is behind John – **Ten of Cups**
5. What crowns John – **Two of Pentacles**
6. What is before John – **Justice**
7. John's feelings – **Page of Cups**
8. John's outside influences – **The Empress**
9. John's hopes and fears – **The Chariot**
10. The outcome for John's reading – **Knight of Swords**

### **The Significator**

The Page of Pentacles was chosen as the significator after asking John his zodiacal birth sign. John is a Capricorn, which is represented by this card. In the Waite deck the Page of Pentacles depicts the page facing to the left, meaning that he is leaving his past behind him. Capricornians are hardworking, ambitious and focus all their energies towards one goal, and often make it to the top of their profession. We usually find Capricornians working at their own business, but they also do work well with others and make good leaders.

#### **1. What Covers John – The Moon**

The covering card, which represents the present situation that surrounds John's question signifies deception, confusion, difficulties and a feeling that he is groping in the dark at the moment. John feels that he has been betrayed by his employers and now finds it hard to trust other people. The Moon card suggests that John must trust his intuition to detect other people's intentions and ask more questions. However, this card is a good sign for psychic and spiritual development and a good card for putting his creative talents to writing, psychology, psychotherapy or any other imaginative projects.

## **2. What Crosses John – Five of Pentacles**

The crossing card, which signifies the influences, obstacles or conflict connected to John's question is the Five of Pentacles and indicates loss and hardship. It suggests that John may be finding it difficult to move forward because he is struggling financially due to being unemployed for a while. However, this card indicates that his circumstances are only temporary and there is a solution to his dilemma, because as a Capricornian he has the ability and resources to bring abundance back into his life.

## **3. What is Beneath John – Six of Pentacles**

The Six of Pentacles in this position reveals the root of the current situation or the past influences that has led to the question. It symbolises generosity, abundance, kindness and a desire to help others by sharing our resources. It suggests that John enjoys helping others and has been in a position to do so. He has worked hard at his job and received the just rewards and personal satisfaction from his work. However, he now feels insecure due to a lack of recognition for the effort he had put into his work, and also feels let down with promises that never happened. Therefore, in the end John's generosity dwindled away his resources because he did not manage his assets and possessions properly, but to be fair, did not foresee the circumstances he was to find himself in.

## **4. What is Behind John – Ten of Cups**

The Ten of Cups reveals the past events that have formed John's question. It is a card of happiness, security and accomplishment that has been achieved through hard work and effort. In the past John has achieved success and happiness, and his ability had earned him the respect and recognition he deserved. However, with being a Capricorn, John was spending too much time at his work to the detriment of his personal relationships, but after the hurt of having to let go he has overcome the pain and is facing the future with his usual ambition.



## **5. What Crowns John – Two of Pentacles**

The Two of Pentacles reveals the possible goal or outcome of John's present position. It signifies a need to bring balance and harmony to his finances and emotions. This card suggests that John will need to handle his responsibilities or finances in a more balanced way and be content with slowly making improvements and progress at the moment. He has the ability and emotional and physical stamina to make things happen, so as long as he stays focused and patient he will be successful in reaching his goals.

## **6. What is Before John – Justice**

The Justice card in this position, reveals the immediate future influences connected with John's question. It signifies fairness, honesty, truth and taking responsibility for his actions. It indicates that John will win over any problems within his business and home life. He can expect a good outcome to his situation if he makes the necessary preparations and tries to achieve a balance in all areas of his life. If John uses his integrity his problems will be solved one by one. He has the ability to maintain the courage of his convictions therefore the outcome should be a fair one.

## **7. John's Feelings – Page of Cups**

The Page of Cups reveals John's emotions, attitudes, how he views his situation and what his state of mind is. It represents possibilities or renewal on an emotional level. This card suggests that John is about to begin a new phase of emotional growth that will strengthen his self-esteem and build up his trust in others. A talent or skill may prove to be beneficial or rewarding and may involve a fair amount of study. These skills could be linked to John's keen psychic or creative ability. He is starting to see things with fresh eyes and his obstacles are becoming easier to overcome. The Page of Cups also suggests that John may meet someone who can offer help and will become a true friend. This card is urging him to go with his gut reaction, be open to offers and take a chance. Some happy emotional news may soon be received.

## **8. John's Outside Influences – The Empress**

The Empress in this position reveals the present opinions of family, friends and others who are involved with John's situation, and the environmental and home issues that may influence him at this time. It signifies fertility, new life and growth, and suggests that he is about to enter into a creative and productive phase and will achieve something that will lead to growth and prosperity in all aspects of his life. This will be achieved by drawing on his wisdom, understanding, strength and creativity, and directed in the areas of writing, art, beauty or caring profession. John's efforts and achievements will be rewarded if he uses his talents wisely and responsibly, which may lead to good fortune and financial security, enabling him to surround himself with material comforts. The Empress also suggests that John may develop successful and creative partnerships in both business and personal relationships. This card urges him to be generous with his time, but also to deter others from being too dependent on him.

## **9. John's Hopes and Fears – The Chariot**

The Chariot reveals John's fears and doubts or his wishes and ideals, or any unexpected factors. It symbolises motion and represents success through focused effort and reward as a result of hard work. This card suggests that John has a passionate ambition to achieve a particular goal and will need to harness all of his abilities and talents to attain this. In order to achieve this he will have to focus on identifying any problems, searching for answers to questions, learning the lessons of his past mistakes and go forward with commitment and determination. It does however indicate that John is able to cope and has the ability and skill needed to be successful. Even if there is a struggle, as long as he uses his gifts and is prepared to work hard his goals will be achieved.

## **10. The Outcome of John's Reading – Knight of Swords**

The Knight of Swords in this position reveals the final result or answer to John's question. It signifies a period of sudden changes or disruption. This

card suggests that John has a desire to make drastic changes in his life and will have the opportunity to make these changes. His focus will more than likely be a new business venture that will mean more financial benefits. There may be someone who could give John some good advice that will help to steer him in the right direction. This is a time for John to recognise and confront the destructive elements in his life, take the initiative, make radical decisions and drive forward in order to reach his goals.

### **Clarification Card – Temperance**

Because the outcome card was a Court card a clarification card was turned over off the top of the deck, to find out in what area of John's situation the person represented by the Knight of Swords may be dealing with.

Temperance symbolises compromise, moderation, cooperation, coordination, balance, and the ability to live and work in harmony with others. It suggests that John may soon be in a transaction or negotiation with someone regarding a business deal. Even though he has a measure of doubt or worry he is being asked to go with the flow to see how things develop. It indicates the way forward is through compromise and cooperation. This card is about obtaining security through economical and thrifty management and is excellent for creative work. Therefore, the outcome suggests that there will be a new chapter in John's life, and his business and personal life will become stable and balanced. There is light at the end of the tunnel and John will feel secure and happy with his life.

### **Cards Pairs and the Celtic Cross Spread**

John's reading has five Major Arcana in the spread, which means there are going to be major changes or events coming up in the near future for him. If we link the clarification card (Temperance) with the sixth card (Justice), they indicate that balance will be restored in the areas of John's business, home and personal life. The first card (The Moon), the eighth card (The Empress) and the seventh card the (Page of Cups) all suggest a creative and productive time. (The Moon) and the (Page of Cups) are urging John to use his psychic

and creative ability and (The Moon) and (The Empress) suggests that he has the ability to direct his talents and skills to writing. The ninth card (The Chariot) is telling John to harness all of his gifts and use them to achieve his goals.

There are also three Pentacles in the spread other than the significator card the Page of Pentacles, and in John's case are related to finances and business. They actually all link to loss and hardship. If we link card three the (Six of Pentacles) with the fourth card the (Ten of Cups) the loss here was the break-up of the family due to John's lack of give and take at home and spending too much time at work. The (Temperance) card and the (Two of Pentacles) suggest that John needs to bring a balance to his finances and his personal life because the (Five of Pentacles) indicates that he is struggling financially at the moment and maybe even feeling isolated. However, this reading pans out beautifully and John will make the changes that are needed to bring security back into his life.

### **Numerology and the Celtic Cross Spread**

More information can be found within this reading by adding all of the numbers of the cards in the spread and the numbers of each suit if there are three or more. For example, there are five Major Arcana cards and if we add The Moon = 18, Justice = 11, The Empress = 3, The Chariot = 7 and Temperance = 14, we have a total of 53, then reduce this number by adding the two digits together  $(5+3) = 8$ .

In numerology the number eight can suggest significant changes in money, relationships, career, home life and status. However, it urges John to pay close attention to detail and put in a lot of hard work, but also warns him to be careful not to neglect those who are dear to him. Eight is the number for regeneration or renewal that comes from a beneficial crisis, meaning that John has the opportunity to free his creative energy now that he has been made redundant. Losing his job has been a crisis but has also been beneficial

because it has given him the time to write his book. At the end of the day, it suggests that John will get what he deserves, meaning he will only profit from the amount of effort he puts into it.

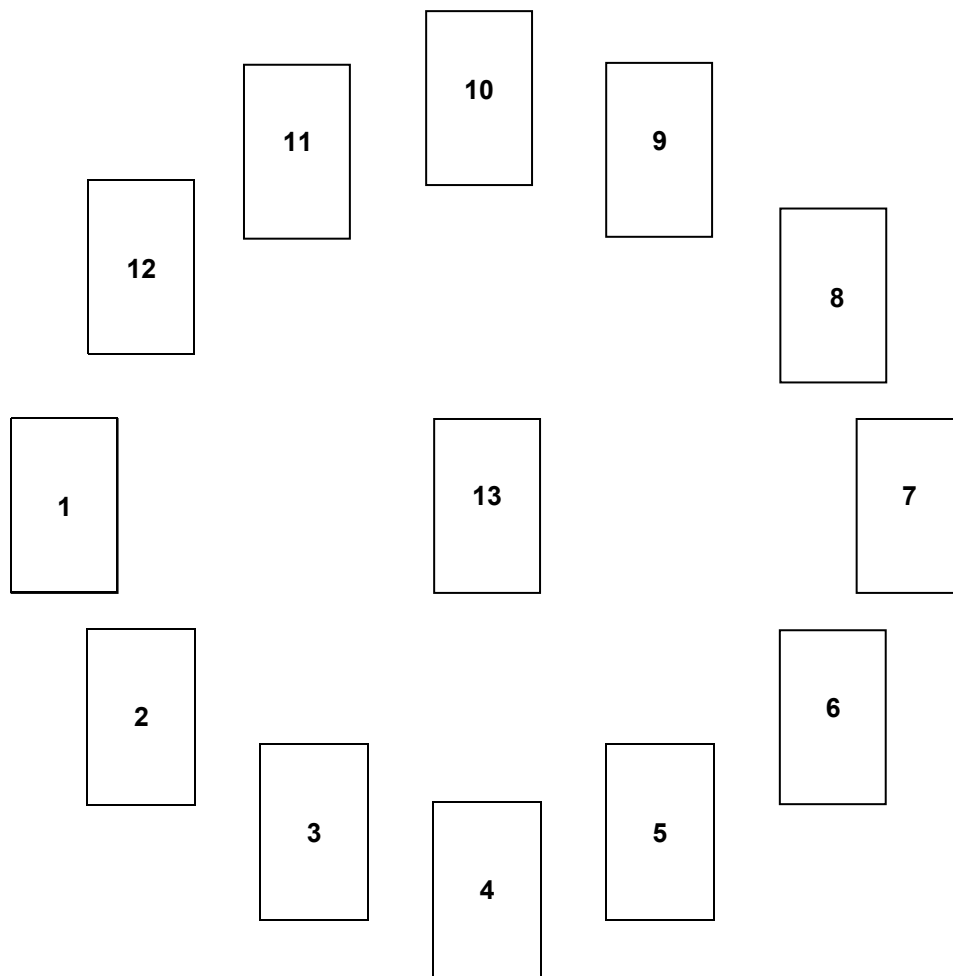
Now if we add the numbers of the Pentacles because there are three of them we come to the number 13, and when reduced we have the number 4. The number four relates to building safe foundations and security, and suggests that John should be careful and steady in his work and also put in the effort. However, the number four indicates that John will be hard-working, practical and diligent, and probably be successful in the business and financial world.

By adding all of the numbers in the spread also gives us the number 4. This confirms that John's reading relates to business and finances, and it is totally down to him to make things happen by working hard, pushing himself forward and seeking out the people who could help him.

## **The Horoscope Spread**

This spread is useful for looking at all the different areas of the querent's life. It can be used either as a month-by-month forecast or as a general reading as to events or the present circumstances of the querent.

Shuffle the cards and hand them to the querent to shuffle while thinking of a question or thinking about areas of his/her life that he/she may or may not be happy with. Then get him/her to cut and stack the cards as before in the other spreads then hand them back to you. From the top of the deck place the first card face down in the position of nine o'clock, then place the other eleven cards face down in an anti-clockwise direction until you have twelve cards in the positions of the hours on a clock. Next place a thirteenth card in the centre of the spread as follows:



**Position 1: The First House – Aries: The Self**

This position indicates how you are currently thinking and feeling, and reveals your own individual approach and immediate reaction to the problems confronting you and the energy and abilities you have readily available to deal with any challenges or obstacles. It also relates to the whole physical body, head and face.

**Position 2: The Second House – Taurus: Money and Resources**

This position focuses on your financial, material, physical, emotional, mental and spiritual resources, and the way in which you are able to control or influence them in order to strengthen your position. It also relates to the neck, throat, ears, larynx, tonsils and Thyroid Gland.

### **Position 3: The Third House – Gemini: Communications and Everyday Activities**

This position relates to communications within your immediate environment and the physical and mental processes by which you ascertain your relationship to it, such as telephone calls, writing letters, using the internet, speaking, newspapers, television, radio, visiting or journeys by transport, and so on. This applies to family, friends, neighbours, work colleagues or anyone who has an intimate connection with you. This position also relates to your mental ability, energy and power and its development through learning and education. In health matters it represents the lungs, shoulders, upper arms, nervous system and the oxygenation of the blood.

### **Position 4: The Fourth House – Cancer: The Home and Family**

This position refers to your home and anything associated with it. This includes strong memories, emotions, thoughts and feelings about the family, especially the relationship with your parents who are seen as a living link to your past and the embodiment of your physical and mental heredity. Property and savings are also associated with the fourth house and even travel sounds attractive, but home is more appealing. In a nutshell it describes your feelings about the quality of your home, your domestic environment and your life. In health matters it represents the chest, breasts, stomach, diaphragm, pancreas, the womb and the ovaries.

### **Position 5: The Fifth House – Leo: Pleasure, Romance and Creativity**

This position is associated with pleasurable pursuits, romance, entertainment and speculative ventures. It refers to your individuality, desire for self-expression, and your ability to take advantage of your natural talent to add new accomplishments to your inherited abilities. This is related to your creative abilities and the amount of talent and skill you can manage to produce for your ventures, whether for financial speculations, gambling, love affairs, art, writing, drama, hobbies, holidays and all other ways you seek pleasure and entertainment. It is also the house for producing children,

another way that shows your desire for self-expression and creativity. In health matters it is associated with the heart, the spine, and the forearm from the elbow to the wrist.

#### **Position 6: The Sixth House – Virgo: Work and Health**

This position refers to your routine work and opportunities and to your general health and wellbeing. It focuses on your ability to organise and use your resources, your ability adjust to your immediate environment and your efforts to achieve perfection with the skills, talents or tools you have at your disposal, whether mental, moral, physical or spiritual. This may be in the workplace or in a role of training or study, therefore relates to your employers or teachers and your ability to work or study in accordance with them, or your ability to cope at home with the daily chores. The sixth house relates to your ability to deal effectively with the physical and psychic tools at your disposal in a way that you will not become liable to illness. In health matters it represents the abdominal region (stomach) and the digestive system, which also relates to diet.

#### **Position 7: The Seventh House – Libra: Partnerships**

This position refers to committed relationships and partnerships in your personal or business life. This can relate to joint ventures in business or your relationship with your partner. It describes your feelings and attitudes towards the relationship as to whether it is harmonious or hostile. The seventh house also represents the kidneys, lumbar region and veins.

#### **Position 8: The Eighth House – Scorpio: Money, Endings, New Beginnings and Sex**

This position refers to your ability to develop and strengthen your resources as a result of the impact on your circumstances in life, or the resources of others and the part they are likely to play in your life. These resources can be physical, emotional, financial, moral or spiritual and are about your ability to bring new life and strength to them. This is the house of life and death and will



inform you of situations or events that are beginning or ending. It is also the house that deals with deep and sexual relationships, and spiritual or occult matters. In health matters it represents the bladder and reproductive organs.

**Position 9: The Ninth House – Sagittarius: Travel and Education**

This position refers to the world outside your immediate surroundings and the means by which you make contact with it through long journeys or exploration either physically, mentally or spiritually. It also deals with educational journeys indicating studies such as philosophy, religion, the Law or any factor that may increase your awareness or experience, and may indicate travel to Universities or colleges. This house also relates to the hips, thighs and sciatic nerves.

**Position 10: The Tenth House – Capricorn: Career and Ambitions**

This position relates to the way you project your skills and talents as a whole, your conscious endeavours to attain a chosen goal, your position in the world and the way in which you earn your living. This house refers to your hopes and ambitions, making your way in life, your reputation and social status. Reference to your mother and your superiors in the workplace may also be indicated in this house as to how they operate as a whole, what interests them and what concerns them. In health matters this house relates to the knees, joints, teeth and skin.

**Position 11: The Eleventh House – Aquarius: Friends and Social Circle**

This position refers to the people with whom you can communicate your individuality and bring out the qualities that you like to display or develop as a means of self-expression, such as your friends, social contacts, colleagues, and all groups related to the kind of social life that you enjoy. This can include clubs, associations, societies, charitable organisations or any group that comes together for social purposes, ideological objectives, to allow you to project your creative abilities, or group enterprise for speculation or gain. This house also represents blood circulation, the lower legs and ankles.

### **Position 12: The Twelfth House – Pisces: Fears and Anxieties**

This position refers to your deepest fears, secrets, illusions, psychic matters, and your ability to adjust to life as a whole and find your appropriate position in the world. This may involve making sacrifices for some ideal, juggling your finances, temptations, overindulging, addictions, obsessions or any other weakness or “Achilles’ Heel” that may not be helping you to reach your goals. This house also represents the feet.

### **Position 13: Overall Influence or Significator**

This position can either be a card that can be used as an outcome to the overall reading or can be a significator card to represent you as used in the Celtic Cross spread. If you use a card for an outcome to the reading it will show you whether it is going to be an easy journey for the querent or a difficult one. Obviously a Major card will indicate that there will be a major influence connected to all of the positions in the spread and a Minor card will only have a minor influence on the reading. If it is a Court card but not a significator then it may be someone who has an influence over the reading, or it may be urging you to adopt some of the qualities or characteristics of the Court card. A clarification card can be used to determine the influence, the area or the role that this person has in the querent’s life.

### **Reading the Horoscope Spread**

**Case Study:** Paula, aged 25 and unemployed.

Paula came to me for a reading because she was concerned about her relationship with her partner and her prospects for a job. She feels that her relationship is not working out and she moved into his home, therefore will be unemployed and homeless if they were to break up. Paula needed some guidance as to the direction she should take at this time. These are the cards that were chosen:

## Paula's Horoscope Spread



Position 1 – The Self: **Nine of Cups**

Position 2 – Money and Resources: **Wheel of Fortune**

Position 3 – Communications and Everyday Activities: **Ace of Swords**

Position 4 – The Home and Family: **Six of Pentacles**

Position 5 – Pleasure, Romance and Creativity: **Five of Pentacles**

Position 6 – Work and Health: **Two of Wands**

Position 7 – Partnerships: **Five of Wands**

Position 8 – Money, Endings, New Beginnings and Sex: **Two of Swords**

Position 9 – Travel and Education: **Seven of Wands**

Position 10 – Career and Ambitions: **Page of Pentacles**

Position 11 – Friends and Social Circle: **Two of Cups**

Position 12 – Fears and Anxieties: **Nine of Wands**

Position 13 – Overall Influence or Significator: **Three of Pentacles**

**Position 1: The Self – The Nine of Cups**

In this position the Nine of Cups suggests that Paula has some emotional issues with her partner that may become heated at times. She has a lot of feelings for her partner and was hoping and thinking that a permanent commitment would happen, possibly even marriage. Paula has been happy and content with her relationship but now feels that it is not living up to her expectations and is frightened of losing everything she has put in to the relationship, and is even finding it hard to put a smile on her face. However, it does suggest that Paula's wish will eventually be realised and something will happen to make her dreams a reality.

**Position 2: Money and Resources – Wheel of Fortune**

In the second house the Wheel of Fortune indicates that Paula has reached the end of one cycle concerning her financial situation and a new phase will begin. She is worried about not having the money to make ends meet, but it suggests that rapid changes will offer her opportunities to change her financial and material circumstances. Paula feels that she is not in control of her life at the moment and believes that fate will direct her in the right direction, which is all well and good but it will be up to Paula whether the outcome is going to be positive or negative. However, this card does suggest that through luck her money issues may come to an end making life easier for her.

**Position 3: Communications and Everyday Activities – Ace of Swords**

In this house the Ace of Swords indicates that communication is strained at home but Paula has the ability to use her logic and intuition to deal with her situation, and clear thinking will help her to make the right decisions to resolve the matters she is worried about. It suggests that there may be good news regarding a job or project in which she will have to use her communication skills. This job may involve a lot of paperwork and possibly some form of

study. This card urges Paula to focus on her goals and objectives, and trust her own judgement.

#### **Position 4: The Home and Family – Six of Pentacles**

In this position the Six of Pentacles suggests that give and take is important at this time. It indicates that Paula may need to bring balance, harmony and self-control back into her life and try to rectify aspects of her home life that she has neglected. It urges Paula not to waste her resources and share her generosity with her partner and be receptive to what her partner has to offer. It is time to be generous and enjoy the kindness of others.

#### **Position 5: Pleasure, Romance and Creativity – Five of Pentacles**

The Five of Pentacles in this house indicates that because Paula has been unemployed for a while it has made her lose faith in herself and her confidence, creativity and self-esteem is extremely low. It suggests that her relationship may have gone cold leaving her emotionally overwhelmed, miserable and sad. However, it also implies that Paula may need to take a good look at herself because some aspects of her life may have been neglected and need to be rectified. Paula may need to take time out to get in touch with herself, switch her thoughts to bringing abundance into her life and be willing to make and accept any changes that may happen. This card suggests that her finances will improve but she will have to cut back on the good things in life.

#### **Position 6: Work and Health – Two of Wands**

In the sixth house the Two of Wands indicates that on the job-front Paula will need to put things into perspective as to what is more important to her at the moment, and may need to give herself time to think things over. Paula will have to be in the right frame of mind if she is to look for work because she will need to take charge of her situation, show how persevering she is and not let anything stand in her way. Her efforts will be rewarded as long as she can overcome the obstacles ahead of her, and if she is lacking in energy then she

needs to make sure that her diet is adequate and maybe take a course of vitamins, or eat more fish, fruit and vegetables.

#### **Position 7: Partnerships – Five of Wands**

The Five of Wands in this position suggests that Paula and her partner may be engaged in a quarrel or dispute and she wants to try to resolve it and clear the air. She must not let these irritations get the better of her and needs to think about what really matters. At the end of the day a disagreement is just a disagreement and not a call to arms. Once the air has been cleared Paula and her partner might have the time to spend some passionate moments together.

#### **Position 8: Money, Endings, New Beginnings and Sex**

In this house the Two of Swords indicates that Paula will need to face up to her challenges and obstacles, otherwise she will forever feel trapped by her circumstances. Once she has resolved her dilemma she will know where she is heading and a new way of life will begin. It suggests that Paula's troubles and disputes are going to end and she will realise that there was no need to weigh herself down with worry after all.

#### **Position 9: Travel and Education – Seven of Wands**

In this ninth house the Seven of Wands suggests that Paula may have been planning a holiday or a trip with her partner to give them the chance to straighten out their problems and maybe make steps towards a commitment. It also suggests that Paula may have a desire to acquire knowledge of a spiritual or philosophical nature, or may just want to improve her mental ability.

#### **Position 10: Career and Ambitions – Page of Pentacles**

The Page of Pentacles in this position suggests that Paula is trying to find an intelligent way to increase her finances so that she will financially have the ability to support and take responsibility for her own life, rather than be

dependent on her partner. It does indicate that Paula is ready to go further with her ambitions and may meet someone who can change things for the better by showing her a new approach to her situation. This could be through some social invitation or through a sudden business offer. This card also suggests that Paula may go into further education or learn a new skill, but whatever direction she takes as long as she is prepared to work hard and learns to be self-disciplined there will be long-term rewards.

### **Position 11: Friends and Social Circle – Two of Cups**

In the eleventh house the Two of Cups suggests that someone close to Paula is willing to put the past behind them and show that they care for her. Therefore, no matter what Paula is feeling at the moment she will soon experience happiness, harmony and love, and share positive ideas and friendship. It also suggests that Paula may soon be invited to a reunion with old friends.

### **Position 12: Fears and Anxieties – Nine of Wands**

The Nine of Wands in the twelfth house indicates that Paula may be experiencing difficulties and is losing faith in her own abilities. It urges her not to allow setbacks to cause her to lose motivation and must stay focused on her goal. Paula is equipped to face the challenges and has the strength to tackle any problem, and therefore should not give up. Perhaps she is upset because she wants things to happen now and does not really want to bide her time before she reaps the rewards of her endeavours. Paula will need to learn to stay with it and be patient because she will get there in the end.

### **Position 13: Overall Outcome or Significator – Three of Pentacles**

In this position the Three of Pentacles suggests that Paula will have success in her work, and her creative ability will earn her praise. She will be valued for her ideas and efforts, which will give her a sense of satisfaction and financial reward. Any investment that Paula has made in her personal relationships, the results of her efforts will begin to materialise and contentment will triumph.

### **The Horoscope Spread and Numerology**

In this spread there are four Pentacles, four Wands and three twos. If you add together the numbers of the Pentacles and then reduce the total by adding the two digits together as before in the Celtic Cross Spread, you will see that numerically the influence of the Pentacles is the number five, as with the Wands. The three twos have a strong influence on the spread with their own number of two. By adding all the numbers in the spread and reducing the total by adding the two digits together, the influence on the spread is the number seven. Now if you refer to the section on Tarot and Numerology you will be very surprised with what you discover in relation to this spread by reading the numbers two, five and seven.



# Tarot and Psychic Ability



There are seventy-eight cards in the Tarot and studying them cannot be rushed. Firstly the best thing you need to do is choose a pack that you feel comfortable with and has pictorial images and symbols on all of the cards. Study and memorise the interpretation of each card from the booklet that comes with the pack, and when you have a superficial understanding of each arcana you can start to go deeper into the interpretations of them, perhaps through books or taking on a course. Actually the best way to read the cards is by using your own interpretations. This means that you will need to learn to trust your intuition and let your subconscious mind show you the messages of each arcana.

## Psychic Ability

Psychic ability is in all of us but most of us have forgotten how to use it. It is a sixth sense that can be developed, but unfortunately our Western culture seems to rebut anything that they cannot understand or get to grips with, even though they cannot disprove that it exists. Therefore, because science will not acknowledge something that cannot be measured, it has conditioned most of society to think on the same lines. All animals still use their sixth sense and we humans are made up of parts of the same DNA. I will show you how to tap into your subconscious mind through meditation/self-hypnosis, which will help you to relax, enhance your psychic awareness, concentration, creativity, visualisation and learning, and even how to contact your spirit guide.

## Explanation of Meditation/Self-Hypnosis

The mind is split into two distinct parts, which we need in order to live and these are the conscious mind and the subconscious mind. The conscious mind is aware, knowing and deliberate and deals with intentional actions or

emotions in a critical, analytical or logical way, which we can call the self. It is associated with rational thought and everyday decision-making. The subconscious mind is the part of the mind that is not fully conscious but influences our actions in an intuitive, instinctive, creative, psychic, spiritual or emotional way, which we can call the inner or higher self. It stores everything that we have ever seen and done and received from our five senses.

Communication and knowledge is always being stored in our conscious and subconscious mind as the brain picks up information from our five senses, then the conscious mind studies this information and with some suggestions from the subconscious mind it will then make decisions. It is only the subconscious that can access psychic awareness and spirit guide contact because the conscious mind would be too critical, so the best way to tap into our subconscious is through meditation or self-hypnosis.

Meditation or self-hypnosis can be looked upon as an altered state of consciousness and a connection between the physical body and the non-physical subconscious and inner self, which is best induced in a relaxed state. It is simply a way of relaxing and setting aside your conscious mind while at the same time activating your subconscious mind to allow suggestions to be made to your subconscious. This will enable you to act on these suggestions with greater ease and efficiency and open your mind to pure uplifting thoughts from your inner or higher self.

Meditation or self-hypnosis has many benefits such as:

- Improved psychic awareness
- Spirit guide contact
- Increased relaxation and elimination of tension
- Increased and focused concentration
- Improved reflexes
- Improved memory

- Increased self-confidence
- Increased organisation and efficiency
- Increased motivation
- Improved interpersonal relationships
- Elimination of anxiety and depression
- Elimination of habits or other negative tendencies
- Improved overall quality of life
- Establishes and maintains harmony of body, mind and spirit, and the list goes on.

We are told that the subconscious mind uses 80% of our computer. We have a blank mind when we are born and we have no experience apart from the fear of falling and a fear of loud noises. We have no phobias, compulsions or desires apart from food. We also have no prejudices, we do not hate or love and we do not possess any of the seven deadly sins. As we go through life our five senses gradually fill the pages of our diary, and what we are today is the result of our accumulated experiences that we have learnt and witnessed from birth to this very minute. However, all of the information that we have gathered in our subconscious will not have all been positive.

Meditation or self-hypnosis enables us to communicate directly with the subconscious part of our mind to accept positive and beneficial suggestions that will enhance the quality of our lives, and will lead to achieving our ambitions and goals. It will also help us to remove negative thoughts and fear, and help us to get rid of things that are detrimental to our health and happiness and stopping us from moving forward.

In order to achieve all this we must practice the art of meditation or self-hypnosis, and there are some very simple exercises that you can follow. These exercises can be repeated as often as you like or at your own pace.

*As with all meditations and self-hypnosis, I recommend that you tape or record all of these exercises.*

### **Self-Hypnosis Briefly Explained**

Before you begin this exercise sit down and make yourself comfortable, warm and where you will not be disturbed. Loosen all tight clothing and remove your shoes. You may play some relaxing music if you like. Place your feet apart and flat on the floor and your hands either resting away from your body or resting on your lap. Close your eyes, inhale a deep breath and hold it for five seconds, then exhale slowly and as far as you can to the bottom of your stomach. Repeat this another three times, and each time you exhale allow yourself to let go, and relax. Allow your body to become limp and heavy and let all the tension just drift away. Do not try to put any effort into it just allow things to happen naturally. If you like you can count backwards, in your mind, from 10 to 1, and with each number you count allow your mind and body to relax even more.

Let your mind drift away to anywhere you like and allow your body to become heavier and more relaxed with every breath or every number. You can repeat this exercise as many times as you like until you know you are physically and mentally more relaxed than when you started.

Next you need to bring in the visualisation technique. Imagine in your “mind’s eye” the muscles in your feet and around your toes and *feel* them relaxing. Let them go limp and heavy. Let all the tensions fade away. Then move up slowly through your calves, to the tops of your legs, your hips, your stomach, your chest, your shoulders and neck, down your arms and into your fingers and thumbs, up the back of your head, over the top and down your forehead. When you reach your face, pay special attention to allowing all the little muscles to relax around your eyes, your eyelids, your cheeks, all around your mouth, your jaw and even your tongue. You may find at this point that your jaw sags open slightly with the pleasant feeling of total relaxation.

Do not be afraid, as you will not lose control or become rigid, but you may find that with the first few attempts you drift into a light sleep. Part of the skill is to stay more or less awake while being totally relaxed in order to give yourself positive suggestions. The idea is to programme your mind to slip into relaxation to the trigger of backward counting or controlled breathing and physical relaxation.

The process can take a little time in the early stages, maybe 15 to 20 minutes, and sometimes needs quite a bit of practise to perfect. However, when you have mastered the technique, self-hypnosis can be attained very quickly indeed, in a matter of seconds with some people.

When you have entered into self-hypnosis, you can make any suggestions you wish to yourself, such as:

I am gaining in confidence

I feel happy and relaxed at all times

Every day in every way I am getting better and better

I will approach people and situations in a more positive manner

I will be appreciative and receptive to people

I will study hard and be motivated to do so, and so on

## **A Simple Relaxation Exercise**

Once you have made yourself comfortable, closed your eyes and done the breathing exercises, this exercise will help you to relax each part of your body. The three dots ( ... ) suggest a slight pause. *Remember to tape all of these exercises.*

*Now just concentrate on relaxing every muscle in your body from the tips of your toes to the top of your head. Just begin to relax. Concentrate now on your feet and your toes ... and as you do so just allow a feeling of comfort and relaxation enter your feet and toes. A nice calm ... relaxing feeling. Now just gently flex your toes ... and then relax them. Sense the feeling of*

*relaxation and calmness flowing into your calves and shins ... just relaxing you more ... and more. Tense your calf muscles ... and then let go. Let the relaxation gently flow up through your knees and into your thighs ... and just tighten your thigh muscles ... and relax them. Now your stomach muscles ... flex them ... and let them relax. Tense all the muscles in your back ... and the tiny muscles around your spine ... let go ... and make sure they are totally relaxed.*

*Sense the comfortable safe feeling of peace and relaxation gently floating upwards through your stomach and along your spine ... and as you feel yourself sinking more and more comfortably into the seat ... you become more and more relaxed ... more and more at peace ... and more and more at ease.*

*You may notice how calm and peaceful your breathing is becoming ... and with every breath you take ... you breathe in more and more relaxation ... and every time you breathe out ... you breathe out all of your tensions and all of your worries ... allowing all your troubles and cares ... the real ones and the imagined ones to just drift away.*

*Now just concentrate on your shoulders ... tense them ... and relax them. Make sure all the muscles surrounding your jaw are at their most comfortable and very relaxed ... and if at anytime you feel like swallowing ... then just swallow. Now tighten the muscles in your arms ... and then slowly relax them. A feeling of calmness and relaxation flows down your arms ... into your elbows ... along your forearms ... into your wrists ... hands ... and fingers ... flex your fingers a little ... and then relax them.*

*Now concentrate on making sure your neck is relaxed ... and at its most comfortable for you. Concentrate now on all the very tiny muscles surrounding your nose ... eyes ... and ears ... flex them ... and relax them. Feel the flow of comfort and relaxation rising up through your entire body ...*

*reaching the very top of your scalp ... pushing out all the worries ... all the stresses ... nothing to worry you ... nothing to trouble you ... and nobody wanting anything from you. This is a time for you ... a time for you to completely relax ... and just let yourself sink deeper and deeper ... floating down and down ... all outside noises fading away ... and any noises that do remain ... or any new noises ... will just continue to relax you more and more.*

*Every breath you take will just keep on relaxing you more and more ... enabling you to drift deeper and deeper into this relaxing state of peace and tranquillity. Just let yourself go. You are so completely relaxed. Just rest and relax now. Just rest and relax.*

Relax for one minute then continue

*Relax ... relaxing ... releasing ... letting go completely as every muscle relaxes ... and you drift down with that relaxation as it occurs ... allowing that comfortable heaviness to increase ... to flow down ... softening ... each muscle loosening as that relaxation increases now. You can continue to drift down as you allow the meditation to deepen now ... that feeling of comfort ... of security perhaps as you relax each and every part of you ... allowing your subconscious mind to accept the responsibility for taking care of those things that are important to you ... as your conscious mind drifts to wherever it wishes ... perhaps to a special place that your subconscious will provide for you ... where you can relax even deeper ... secure ... safe ... enjoying the pleasant feeling of trance.*

*And as you drift down ... you can also drift back again in your own time ... as you choose ... when your attention is required ... or just when you want to ... drifting back to wakeful awareness as your eyes open ... and you can take this opportunity to practice again your ability to create your own state of comfortable meditation or self-hypnosis ... creating that tension ... as before ... feeling that tension ... then releasing that tension ... and allow the*

*meditation to develop and continue ... as you allow that drifting down ... deeper and deeper ... each breath of yours relaxing you more ... and I would like you to continue now to practise that ability ... to drift down ... to enjoy that experience ... and then drift back again. So go ahead now and drift for a minute or two.*

Drift for two minutes

*You have done very well ... you have managed to do that for yourself ... how to create that tension ... and then release that tension ... and to drift down into a comfortable state of meditation or self-hypnosis ... where you can utilise the abilities and capabilities that your subconscious mind can provide for you ... that creative part of you ... where those special capabilities and capacities will be available to you even more than before. Your subconscious mind can do so many things for you as you drift down into meditation.*

## **The Coming-Up Exercise**

*Now ... in your own time and in your own way ... ask your subconscious to drift back up again ... and then drift back up in your own time ... in your own way ... bringing with you those comfortable positive feelings of balance ... of things resolved ... remembering all the suggestions ... feeling refreshed ... relaxed ... vitalized ... confident ... and full of energy ... as you reach the surface of wakeful awareness ... allowing your eyes to open as you take a deep breath and smile.*

## **Count Down Relaxation Exercise**

There is an alternative relaxation technique you can use by counting down to achieve relaxation. Make yourself comfortable as before with feet flat on the floor and close your eyes. At the end of the induction use the Coming-Up Exercise or carry on with another one of the exercises.



*And now that you are resting so quiet there with your eyes closed ... you are going to relax even deeper. You are going to count, in your head, very slowly to seven ... and in between each count you will use the words “drifting deeper and deeper”. And you will find as this count progresses ... that you can drift deeper into that trance state. As you count just tell yourself “I am going deeper and deeper into relaxation”.*

*Now it doesn't matter if your mind wanders. It doesn't matter if you lose awareness altogether. All that matters is your own relaxation ... so just be comfortable ... allow yourself the pleasure of sinking deeper and deeper into the comfortable cushion of your chair. Just let yourself drift into that relaxation as you count slowly to seven using the words “drifting deeper and deeper” in between each count ... and begin that count now:*

**One** ... *Drifting deeper and deeper ...*

**Two** ... *Drifting deeper and deeper. And already you can feel yourself settling down ... becoming much more relaxed now ... your feeling so very comfortable ... beginning to feel peaceful too. Just feel that relaxation working it's way through you body. It's bringing every part of you to rest ... settling you right down.*

**Three** ... *Drifting deeper and deeper ...*

**Four** ... *Drifting deeper and deeper. And now you can be aware of how slow and easy your breathing has become ... a little slower and deeper too ... and each deep breath that you take is making you more comfortable ... and much more relaxed ... more and more relaxed ... just feel your whole body getting heavier and heavier ... almost as though you're sinking down ... down ... just sinking down into sheer comfort ... as each breath you take relaxes you more ... and more ... and more.*

**Five** ... *Drifting deeper and deeper ...*

**Six** ... *Drifting deeper and deeper. You're feeling more comfortable ... more relaxed ... heavy ... and so glad to be drifting deeper and deeper. Heavy ... drifting deeper and deeper ... and relaxed. Feeling heavy ... drifting deeper and deeper ... heavy and relaxed ... drifting deeper and deeper ... heavy and relaxed.*

**Seven** ... *Drifting deeper and deeper ... into that warm and comfortable state of just letting go completely ... allowing your subconscious mind to take on more and more of that responsibility for guiding your awareness down ... as you drift with your own thoughts. Each word allows you to drift now ... deeper and deeper into relaxation ... nothing bothers you ... and nothing disturbs you at all. Should the phone ring it will not concern you. Even the loudest of noises will not bother you at all ... because you are concentrating only on each word ... and each sound ... relaxing you even deeper than before.*

*This is a special time for you ... a time to put aside all your worldly thoughts and material problems ... a time when you can really become aware of that inner part of you ... a time when no-one is demanding anything from you ... no-one needing anything from you. This is your time ... a wonderful relaxation of both your body and your mind. Now allow yourself a short time of silence ... a few moments that you can use to settle down deeper into that comfortable state that you are enjoying right now ... using the ability that you have to drift even deeper into your own innermost mind. In a few moments' time you'll be much more relaxed ... more comfortable ... feeling so safe and secure ... far far more relaxed than you are now ... so just rest quietly now and enjoy the peace and tranquillity of the next few moments.*

Allow about one minute to rest quietly

*Now ... just let yourself drift deeper and deeper ... more and more into that relaxation. As you count down from five to one now ... just let yourself drift deeper and deeper ... more and more ... into that relaxation.*

Increase the interval between counts

**Five ...**

**Four ...**

**Three ... deeper and deeper ... drifting down and deeper still ... down and down ...**

**Two ... down ... down ... down ... down ...**

**One**

*Just rest and relax now. Just rest and relax*

### **Visual Imagery**

Should you have a situation in your life that you want to change or something that you would like to develop, such as learning the Tarot cards and developing psychic awareness, one of the simplest exercises to help you with this is visual imagery. It is a way of viewing your own ideas, feelings and interpretations. Its language will be personal to you through what you can see in your "mind's eye," what you feel, taste, hear and experience. In order to develop or change something you will need to concentrate in order to visualise your plan.

The first step is to induce yourself with the Relaxation Exercise

Then carry on with the Garden Exercise or the Cloud Relaxation Exercise

Follow on with the Personal Visualisation Exercise – these will help you to develop your visualisation skills.

End with the Coming-Up Exercise

## **Visual Imagery Exercise**

### **The Garden Exercise**

*As you go deeper now your subconscious mind becomes open ... more accessible and receptive to new learning ... to changing old beliefs ... as you relax so comfortably there ... so calm ... and a feeling of peace and tranquillity allows you to relax more and more with each easy breath ... and with each gentle beat of your heart. So let go now ... let go of stress and tension ... and go deeper now.*

*Relax ... and as you continue to drift deeper still ... you begin to see ... sense ... or imagine yourself in a beautiful garden ... the sun is shining ... gently warming your skin ... and you are comfortable. You look across the lawn as it sweeps away to an ornamental pond ... with a fountain playing ... the water droplets sparkling ... glistening ... in the soft diffused light that filters through the leaves and branches of the ancient trees that surround this garden ... shielding and sheltering this beautiful place. The grass is soft ... springy beneath your feet ... and as you walk you pass flower beds cut into the lawn ... so many varieties and colours ... and you are aware of the fragrance of the flowers carried to you on a soft breeze that drifts across the garden ... rustling the leaves ... causing the heads of the flowers to sway gently. The subtle sound of nature is all around you ... birds singing ... the drone of insects ... and the splash and gurgle of cascading water ... each sound ... each sensation ... relaxing you more ... comforting as you drift deeper ... and every step becomes heavier.*

*You soon find yourself in a small clearing ... the sun warming you ... and relaxing you more and more now ... as you sit resting your back against a*

*large and ancient tree. The bark of the tree is soft and comfortable ... and you sense that many people have rested here as you are resting now ... and although you are alone you feel safe here ... peaceful ... comfortable ... as your mind drifts and fades.*

## **The Cloud Relaxation Exercise**

This is an alternative exercise of visual imagery for you to use if you like. As you will see the word “relaxed” is emphasised, therefore when you tape this exercise make sure you emphasise it with your recording.

*Now ... continue to allow that relaxation to deepen. You allow no tension at all to come into you. You can allow your mind to clear totally of all worries and concerns ... and know that all forms of tension, anxiety and depression that you may have had are all lifted from you ... and you will feel very very **relaxed** and calm within yourself.*

*Whenever you hear the word **relaxed** ... you will double your relaxation. You now experience complete peace and calm within yourself. As you rest so quietly there ... **relaxed** ... and peaceful ... just imagine that as you look upwards you can see the sky ... a clear blue sky with just one fluffy cloud. And as you look at the one white fluffy cloud it begins to descend ... getting lower and lower ... until it envelops you as you rest there ... and that fluffy cloud seems to gently massage your body with soothing ... healing energy ... making you feel even more **relaxed**. You feel calm ... safe ... and secure. You can feel the soothing energy gently massaging ... pulsating through the whole of your body ... in through the pores ... and flowing right through your body ... easing out any tensions ... depressions ... or anxieties ... out through your fingertips and your toes. Any bad feelings ... any negativity ... all being pushed out ... and this leaves you feeling so very calm ... so very **relaxed** ... so unconcerned.*

*If you wish ... now that you recognise that you are really in control ... you may choose to allow your cloud to just drift upwards into the clear blue sky. And you can enjoy the wonderful clean ... pure fresh air ... or you may choose to float on your cloud ... surrounded by pure healthy energy ... and as you take a deep breath you can feel this healthy soothing energy flowing through your nostrils ... all the way down your throat ... and into your lungs. You can feel it enter your bloodstream and circulate to all parts of your body ... filling you with soothing healing energy ... that is flowing all through your body. You can feel your whole body tingle with pure ... healthy ... soothing energy. Now take a deep breath ... and as you breath out ... release any remaining negative emotions ... you feel so good now ... relaxing ... deeper and deeper.*

## **Personal Visualisation Exercise**

*As you sit there you start to think of ways you can store ... in your mind ... the knowledge and information you can gather from the Tarot cards ... you imagine yourself dealing with your problems and correcting them ... in a controlled and relaxed manner. Your psychic energy is allowing you to pinpoint your problems ... and create details of your plan. You concentrate on all the things you will do to gather this information from the Tarot cards ... and set a day when you are going to start ... from getting up in the morning in a calm ... relaxed ... and controlled way ... and you will continue each day to put special emphasis on the Tarot cards ... and allow your inner or Higher Self to help you. You will be able to pinpoint any problems that need correcting ... and you see yourself changing and receiving much better interpretations than you will find in a book. You see and feel yourself in the middle of your plan ... it is working ... and you are in control.*

When you have completed this exercise, simply use the Coming Up exercise to wake yourself. When you wake you will remember all the suggestions from this exercise. Practise this exercise to perfection and you will be amazed with the results.

## **Study Time Exercise**

This exercise is to help you to concentrate on any study or learning that you need to do by using a special trigger word. This trigger word can be anything you like that will allow you to focus your mind on the work at hand. For example, if you are studying from books then you can use the word “bookworm.”

Start with the Relaxation Exercise

Then if you like, the Garden Exercise

Then the Study Time Exercise

Followed by the Coming-Up Exercise

## **Study Time Exercise**

*Whenever you settle down to study you will say quietly to yourself a very very special word ... a very powerful trigger word ... the word is **Tarot** ... that's right **Tarot**. Whenever and wherever you settle down to study ... just say this special word **Tarot** to yourself ... and you will find that instantly ... you are able to focus your mind and attention into a powerful beam of concentration ... a beam of concentration so powerful that you are easily able to absorb and store in your memory ... all the information and knowledge contained in the Tarot cards ... or contained in whatever you are studying ... be it from reading ... listening ... psychic ability ... or viewing ... information and knowledge which you will be able to instantly recall ... whenever and wherever you may need it ... and you will be able to concentrate 100% on the study material in front of you. nothing will disturb your concentration ... unimportant noises will just simply fade away into the background ... unless there is an emergency which you will immediately attend to ... and return to your studies as soon as is possible.*

*Every day and in every way your motivation ... how long to study ... and when you sit down to start your study period ... just say the trigger word **Tarot** ... and you will then be able to focus a powerful beam of concentration on the*

*cards or subject you are about to study ... absorbing all the information and knowledge ... contained therein ... knowledge and information ... which you will store in your memory ... available there for your instant recall ... whenever and wherever you need it.*

*When your study period time is up ... your subconscious mind will tell you the time is up ... you have completed the study period ... and you can now continue with all the other necessary things which your busy life requires. You know what is important ... and needs to be done ... and you are also fully aware of the many unimportant things that can waste your precious time. You must avoid the things ... things that are completely unproductive ... things that may affect your studies ... you are in full control ... and will be able to prioritise your valuable time.*

*You will find that you look forward to your study periods ... and get great pleasure and satisfaction when studying ... and you are able to enjoy all the other events that are in your life every day ... things which may have upset and deterred you to study will grow and grow ... but you will be able to handle it. You will get a lot of pleasure ... and a great deal of enjoyment from your studying ... because you and your powerful subconscious mind are in full control now ... study time is most important to you ... but it must fit in with all the other many and varied things that you have to do during your busy day.*

*However ... you are in full control ... and you will decide what time to study ... when to study ... where to study ... and how long to study ... and then when you decide to settle down to study ... just say quietly to yourself ... your special trigger word **Tarot** ... and you will be instantly able to focus your mind and attention into a powerful beam of concentration on the cards or subject which you are about to study ... and you will find it so easy to absorb and store ... all the information and knowledge placed in front of you ... knowledge and information you will store in your memory ... available there for you to instantly recall ... whenever ... and wherever you need it. You will*



*find that you are instantly able to focus your mind and attention into a powerful beam of concentration ... a beam of concentration so powerful ... that you are easily able to absorb and store in your memory ... all the information contained in the Tarot cards or whatever you are studying ... be it from reading ... listening ... psychic ability ... or viewing ... information and knowledge which you will be able to instantly recall ... whenever and wherever you may need it.*

*While you are studying ... you will exclude all unrelated thoughts and distractions from your mind ... and you will concentrate 100% on the material in front of you. Nothing will disturb your concentration ... unimportant noises will just simply fade away into the background ... unless there is an emergency ... and then you will immediately attend to it ... and then return to your studies as soon as possible.*

*Every day in every way ... your determination to study will grow and grow. You will get a lot of pleasure and enjoyment from your studying ... because you are in control. Study time is most important to you ... but it must fit in with all the other things ... which you have to do in your busy day. You are in full control to study ... it will grow and grow ... you will get a lot of pleasure ... and a great deal of enjoyment from your studying ... because you and your powerful subconscious mind are in full control now. Study time is most important to you ... but it must fit in with all the other many and varied things that you have to do in your busy day.*

*You are in full control ... and you will decide what time to study ... when to study ... where to study ... and how long to study. When you decide to settle down to study ... just say quietly to yourself ... your special trigger word **Tarot** ... and you will be instantly able ... to focus your mind and attention ... into a powerful beam of concentration ... on the Tarot cards or the subject you are about to study ... and you will find it so easy to absorb and store ... all the information and knowledge placed in front of you ... knowledge and*

*information which you will store in your memory ... available for you to instantly recall ... whenever and wherever you need it. And when your study period time is up ... your subconscious mind will tell you that you have completed the study time you had previously decided ... and you can now continue with all the other necessary things ... which your very busy life requires you to know what is important ... and what needs to be done. And you are also fully aware of the many unimportant ... trivial things ... which can waste your precious time.*

*You must avoid completely the things that are counter-productive ... and which may affect your studies. You are in full control ... you will be able to prioritise your valuable time ... you will look forward to ... and thoroughly enjoy your study periods ... you will find you will get a great deal of pleasure and tremendous satisfaction whenever you are studying ... and you will also enjoy all the other events ... which take place in your life every day. Things which may have upset and deterred you in the past ... will no longer upset you ... but will now spur you on ... and increase your determination and desire to succeed ... and you will be very happy. And every day in every way ... you will get better and better and better ... today better than yesterday ... tomorrow better than today. Whenever you settle down to study ... just say quietly to yourself ... your very special trigger word ... **Tarot** ... and you will instantly feel totally relaxed ... totally at ease ... and you will tune in to these beneficial suggestions.*

Now use the Coming-Up Exercise

## **That Quiet Inner Voice**

This script is for use if you need to become aware of your own capabilities and gain confidence in your own inner awareness and capabilities in order to reach your goals. It can help you to push forward with your own interpretations of the Tarot cards.

*As you continue drifting deeper with each breath you take ... you can be aware of how little you need to be aware of ... the sounds in the room ... the ticking of the clock perhaps ... the rustle of papers ... sounds outside ... each sound helping you to relax even more deeply ... and you become less and less aware of the importance of all that is unimportant here ... nothing bothers or concerns you ... as your conscious mind drifts off to a place which is comfortable and safe ... and your subconscious mind takes on the responsibility for guiding and directing your awareness down ... into your innermost self ... aware now of that gentle connection ... communication with that part of you that is the essence of you ... that knows all ... remembers each and every event that has served to shape and mould your unique and special personality ... a part of you that you really do hear as a quiet and calm voice from within ... a voice of wisdom and of truth that is so often lost within the clamour and the clatter of the world ... and the demands ... the constraints ... and the noise of those who would have you bend to their will.*

*Now hear that voice ... still quiet and calm ... but now as clear as crystal ... piercing through the fog of indecision and lack of confidence ... unmoved and unaltered in its determination to give you at all times ... good advice ... wise answers ... and solutions to all problems for your highest benefit ... and those who are special to you. This is that creative and special part of you ... that wise inner adviser that is always there for you ... and with your benefit and well-being always the prime consideration ... a constant ethereal part that is you ... and was you before there was awareness of this existence in this time ... an invaluable friend who must be listened to ... and you will ... will you not?*

*You can recognise now that value ... that unique capacity and capability that is yours ... has always been yours ... and how good you can feel with that intense awareness of confidence in your ability to make changes and decisions in your life for yourself. No longer will you allow others to manipulate you or take advantage of you. You now expect to obtain*

*everything that is yours ... that you deserve ... that you are entitled to as a unique and special person ... aware of who you are ... aware of your own talents and special qualities ... always that person who is at the forefront ... always there with a valuable input to every situation ... no longer that person who needs others to make decisions ... you make your own and are comfortable with that.*

*Others will come to rely on you because of the person that you are ... confident and self-assured ... an example to those who admire you ... as you allow those qualities ... that have been so long hidden ... to burst forth from within ... to astound and confound those who would put you down ... try to manipulate you ... and try to control you. You are your own person ... proud ... confident ... who takes responsibility for your own life and well-being ... a true friend of your own wise inner adviser ... that is you personified.*

Finish with the Coming-Up Exercise

## **Enhancing Your Psychic Awareness and Your Tarot Card Interpretations**

This session can be used to enhance your psychic creativity when putting your own interpretations into the Tarot cards, and also help to overcome any mental blocks that may occur when trying to read them.

*Imagine gathering all of the uncertainties that inhibit your psychic awareness and Tarot card interpretations. Imagine just gathering all of these uncertainties and placing them in a sack. The sack now becomes a bundle of energy in a productive and positive way. You now choose to use this energy to accomplish your goal to improve your psychic awareness and Tarot card interpretations. Now just imagine opening the sack and seeing a positive energy emerge. It is a brilliant colour ... all the colours of a rainbow ... filling the room and enveloping your body. It is powerful ... and positive.*

*You begin to see new messages within your Tarot card interpretations ... your psychic awareness is becoming stronger. You can feel this powerful force surge through your body. Your mind becomes clear and focused ... focused ... you feel confident ... sure of your talents and abilities ... eager to set your new found psychic awareness into practise ... and you control the energy and power of this ability in your life ... you are very successful at controlling the energy and power of this psychic awareness in your life ... and now you can use this energy and power to fuel and stimulate your Tarot card interpretations ... to fuel your Tarot card interpretations. You can easily take any of your uncertainties ... place them into a sack ... and change them into a brilliant rainbow of positive energy ... that you can use in the most positive and psychic ways.*

*Now just imagine yourself in a spectrum of colourful energy that surrounds and surges through your body. Now just imagine yourself walking down a busy road ... full of energy ... and intent on reaching your destination of psychic awareness soon ... very intent on reaching your destination. As you are walking ... you notice the area around you ... there is a park across the road that is beautifully landscaped ... and you enter the park and sit on a bench ... so you take this opportunity to take a few breaths and relax ... you take a few deep breaths and relax. You begin to notice how pleasant the day is ... and you begin to feel a new and healthy energy flow through your entire body.*

*Now just reflect on your Tarot card interpretations ... and see them in the most positive way ... visualise yourself approaching your interpretations with a new and fresh energy ... that is calming ... soothing ... relaxing ... and enables you to give the Tarot cards a deeper ... and creative meaning. The more calm you feel ... the more enthusiastic and psychic you become. You are free to go ahead ... all restrictions have been lifted ... all obstacles are gone ... you are free to continue. You continue down the road and in just a few moments ... you will reach the destination where your psychic awareness*

*has been waiting for you. It takes only a few moments ... and the more relaxed you feel ... and the more calm you feel ... the sooner you will arrive at your destination of psychic awareness.*

*Now imagine yourself reaching your destination of psychic awareness. You are relaxed ... you feel a new energy ... you feel confident ... you feel free. Imagine yourself approaching your psychic awareness. This is your destination ... this is your psychic place ... you have arrived ... you feel excited ... you are filled with new energy ... your psychic awareness is active ... you approach your Tarot cards ... take a deep breath ... and feel and see yourself interpreting them ... effortlessly ... and easily. You are absorbed ... involved ... there is a smile on your face ... you are carrying out your own psychic interpretations of the Tarot cards ... you are absorbed in what you are doing ... and all of your interpretations are strong and meaningful. Your mind and body responds in total harmony with your interpretations and feelings. You now visualise as clearly as you can these positive images.*

*Let these positive images and feelings stay with you ... they are easily recalled every time you approach your Tarot cards ... and are easily recalled every time you use your psychic awareness. Anytime you like ... your positive psychic abilities will reappear ... and will fill you and be with you ... and you can continue any spiritual journey you like ... where your psychic awareness becomes clear ... where all direction becomes so obvious ... where all problems are easily solved.*

*From now on ... whenever you experience a block ... just imagine that park bench signalling you to stop ... and take a rest for a few moments. As you imagine your block disappearing ... imagine yourself seeking a special place that will help you to drift ... discover ... and master your skills. Imagine yourself finding a magical path that leads you towards the ocean ... see yourself on this path walking along ... smelling the sea and the clear invigorating air.*

*Now find a place where you can rest. You may come across a beautiful hidden beach where you can sit while you let the warm sun soothe and relax your body ... or your special place may be a boat on which you can just stretch out and drift. Do not try to think ... just let your mind drift and say quietly to yourself ... my psychic awareness and Tarot card interpretations ... can emerge ... can surface ... and can evolve ... this is a perfect time for my psychic awareness and Tarot card interpretations to surface ... a perfect time. I am ready to receive them ... to welcome them ... and use them. As you drift you see clearly and in a positive direction ... you feel your psychic awareness flowing ... and you feel an excited energy ... and as you relax ... your psychic energy is released ... you feel confident ... at ease ... and secure with your talent.*

*You can easily call upon your psychic energy any time you choose ... because all you need to do is relax and recall your special place ... and feel your psychic awareness and Tarot card interpretations begin to flow ... flow easily ... flow easily ... and now just concentrate to drift ... drift ... continue to drift ... continue to let your mind glide free ... let it drift ... and in a few moments ... you will be free to use your psychic abilities ... to enjoy your psychic and creative talent ... and shape ... and form your Tarot readings into strong and meaningful interpretations.*

Finish with the Coming-Up Exercise

# Chakras



Chakra is the Sanskrit (the ancient and sacred language of the Indian Hindus) word for wheel. They are the energy centres that are situated within our aura that act as transmitters of energy to keep the chakra wheels turning. If you think of them as electrical currents then you may be able to understand them easier. It suggests that when the current is not flowing through properly you may feel worn out or tired. We all have thousands of chakras around our bodies, but we are just going to concentrate on the major seven chakras that run from just above the top of your head to the base of your spine.

## **The First Chakra – The Base or Root Chakra**

This is located at the base of your spine, and it is associated with the colour red. It relates with our instinct for survival, our “flight or fight” response. The base chakra is physically connected with your spine, adrenal glands, ureters, outer genitalia, bladder and kidneys. This chakra opens downwards and roots you to all matters related to the Earth and your physical wellbeing and activities. When the base chakra is well-balanced you will feel in tune with the earth and nature, be able to cope easier with stress and have a higher sense of physical wellbeing. When there is an imbalance then it may result from you being overindulgent with food, alcohol and sex, you may suffer with very high or very low blood pressure, and you may even feel that you just want to give up on life.

## **The Second Chakra – The Sacral or Navel Chakra**

This is located just below your navel and is associated with the colour orange. It relates to our relationships with others, how good we are at forming relationships, and how we feel about our own sexuality. The sacral chakra is



connected with your reproductive system: the male prostate and testes, and the female ovaries, tube and uterus. This chakra opens at the front and back of your body and is linked with our emotions or issues connected with them. When the sacral chakra is well-balanced your creative energy is sensitive and loving, you are confident in your actions and your feelings are genuine. When there is an imbalance you may develop a physical disorder, such as impotence, frigidity, hormonal imbalances, infertility, or suffer from fungal infections, such as herpes, genital warts, thrush, and so on. You may also tend to push away those you love.

### **The Third Chakra – The Solar Plexus Chakra**

This is located just below your breastbone and is associated with the colour yellow. It relates to our self-esteem and how we see ourselves fitting into the world as a whole. The solar plexus chakra is connected with your digestive system, including your stomach, gall-bladder, liver, spleen, small and large bowel, and pancreas. This chakra opens at the front and back and is linked with our own sense of destiny, willpower and determination. When the solar plexus chakra is well-balanced you will feel at peace and in harmony with yourself and with those close to you, everything in life will feel fine and you feel that good things are happening. When there is an imbalance it can result in digestive problems, such as diarrhoea, constipation, diabetes, stomach and bowel ulcers, pancreatitis and gallstones. Your personality may be suppressed, and nervous problems can also be connected to the solar plexus.

### **The Fourth Chakra – The Heart Chakra**

This is located in the middle of your breastbone above your chest and is associated with the colour red. It relates to our ability to love and make a connection and union through devotion, feelings, touch, and being selfless. The heart chakra is connected with your heart and circulatory system, and includes the breasts, lungs, capillaries, arteries and veins. This chakra opens at the front and back and is linked with our ability to show unconditional and unselfish love towards everything around us without expecting anything in

return, and is considered to be the point at which we start to develop true spiritual awareness. When the heart chakra is well-balanced you radiate warmth and happiness, and express love, wisdom and empathy to every being and everything around you which leads to universal awareness and growth, and supplies you with physical and psychic protection. When there is an imbalance it suggests that you may be there for others but are neglecting yourself, which may result with you suffering from heart or circulatory problems that can include coronary occlusion or cardiac failure. There could also be problems with high blood pressure and lung ailments, such as cancer.

### **The Fifth Chakra – The Throat Chakra**

This is located at the hollow of your throat and is associated with the colour blue. It relates with our ability to communicate creatively, and knowing when to speak and when not to. The throat chakra is connected with your thyroid gland, larynx, pharynx, trachea, tongue, mouth, jaw, neck, upper lungs, shoulders, arms and hands. This chakra opens at the front and back and is linked with how we express ourselves to others and our ability to communicate our thoughts and feelings in a creative way. When the throat chakra is well-balanced you are able to express your feelings and thoughts in a creative and professional way, maybe through writing, music, painting or any other creative communication or work that can influence your position within society. When there is an imbalance you deny your thoughts and feelings and suppress your dreams and creativity. This can result in high blood pressure, toxic goitre, weight loss, palpitations, nervousness and lack of energy, and also sore throats, laryngitis, tonsillitis, tinnitus, bronchitis and asthma.

### **The Sixth Chakra – The Third Eye or Brow Chakra**

This is located in the middle of your forehead and is associated with the colour purple. It relates to our spiritual energies and higher mind. The third eye chakra is connected with your lower brain, left eye, sinuses, nervous system, and pituitary gland. This chakra opens at the front and back and is

linked with our ability to understand and attain knowledge through insight, intuition and psychic sight. When the third eye chakra is well-balanced it becomes easier for you to visualise and understand concepts, and have the ability to work on ideas in a practical way. Your subconscious is active, you are able to visualise with meditation or self-hypnosis, and develop your psychic ability. When there is an imbalance your imagination may become far distanced from reality, and you may suffer with headaches from sinus congestion, migraines, nervous tension, eye problems and endocrine imbalances due to over-stimulation of the pituitary gland.

### **The Seventh Chakra – The Crown Chakra**

This is located at the very top and centre of your head and is associated with the colours of violet and white. It relates to finding spiritual illumination, understanding, self-realisation and a state of pure bliss. The crown chakra is connected with your upper brain, right eye and pineal gland. This chakra opens from the top of your head to allow cosmic energy to flow in and down through your body. When the crown chakra is well-balanced your spiritual and earthly life is in unison, you are receptive to the spiritual energy from the higher planes and able to see through the illusions of life. You are connecting and merging with the divine. When there is an imbalance you feel lost, as if you are groping in the dark, and may lack any purpose to your life. This can be the result of a lack of sleep, rest and a poor lifestyle that has led to a lack of melatonin, which is a hormone produced by the pineal gland, causing an imbalance in the other glands within your body, that may eventually lead to psychological depression.

### **Balancing Your Chakras**

The following is a meditation/self-hypnosis exercise to balance your chakras in order to maintain physical, emotional, mental and spiritual harmony. This exercise comprises of:

The Breathing Exercise  
The Relaxation Exercise  
The Garden Visualisation  
The Grounding Exercise  
The Chakra Opening/Balancing Exercise  
The Chakra Closing Exercise  
The Coming-Up Exercise

Firstly, sit down with your feet apart and flat on the floor, and make yourself comfortable. Close your eyes, do the Breathing Exercise, the Relaxation Exercise and follow up with the Garden Visualisation. Now continue with the other exercises.

*As you are relaxing there ... imagine a bright white light coming down from above ... entering the top of your head ... and filling your whole body. Feel it travelling through every cell ... joint ... and muscle in your body ... pulsating ... cleansing ... and refreshing as it goes through. Feel all the tension and stresses just drifting away ... with each breath you take. Feel your body and soul being revitalised. As you inhale ... draw in more pure white light ... and let it flow out from your heart ... fingers ... and toes as you exhale ... and see this pure white light now swirling around you ... protecting you ... and cushioning you from harm. Now you are totally protected by this aura of pure white light.*

## **The Grounding Exercise**

Grounding is an important exercise especially for those people who may feel a little nervous or scared of what they might experience. Sometimes it may seem that you are floating from your body and not quite “here”, so the grounding exercise helps to anchor yourself to the earth. Even when you have finished the meditation/self-hypnosis exercise you may find it hard to return back to earth because you enjoy the feeling, therefore it can also be used after the exercise to bring you back. This exercise is as follows:

*Now while you are still relaxing there in your garden ... focus on your feet ... and feel them firmly rooted to the ground. Visualise long roots coming from your feet ... reaching into the ground ... and connecting with the earth's energy. Feel that energy travelling through your feet ... calves ... knees ... thighs ... buttocks ... hips ... into your stomach ... up your spine ... over your shoulders ... down your arms ... into your hands ... and out through your fingertips. Now feel the earth's energy going up through your neck ... up through your head ... and coming into contact with the pure white light. You are now aware that every part of you feels heavy and relaxed.*

*Now focus on the base chakra ... at the base of your spine ... and pointing towards the ground ... and feel it begin to open as you take each breath. Visualise a glowing ball of red light coming towards you ... and draw it up through your base chakra. As you draw it in ... it becomes brighter and warmer ... filling your whole body with the colour of red. Feel it pulsating ... cleansing ... and balancing your base chakra ... and while it does this ... focus on how much you feel more in tune with the Earth and nature ... feel a higher sense of physical wellbeing ... and how much easier it is to cope with any stress in your life.*

Spend a minute with this chakra before you move on to the next

*Now focus on the sacral chakra ... just below your navel ... and opening at the front ... and back of your body. Feel this chakra begin to open at the front and back of you ... as you take each breath. Visualise a glowing ball of orange light coming towards you ... and as it gets closer ... see it split into two orange balls of light ... making it easier for you to draw into the front and back of your sacral chakra. As you draw them into the front and back they become brighter and warmer ... filling your whole body with the colour of orange. Feel them pulsating ... cleansing ... and balancing your sacral chakra ... and while they do this ... focus on being more sensitive ... loving ...*

*and creative ... more confident in your actions ... and more genuine with your feelings.*

Spend a minute with this chakra before moving on to the next

*Now focus on the solar plexus chakra ... just below your breastbone ... and opening up at the front and back of your body. Feel this chakra begin to open at the front and back of you ... as you take each breath. Visualise a glowing ball of yellow light coming towards you ... and as it gets closer ... see it split into two yellow balls of light ... making it easier for you to draw into the front and back of your solar plexus chakra. As you draw them into the front and back ... they become brighter and warmer ... filling your whole body with the colour of yellow. Feel them pulsating ... cleansing ... and balancing your solar plexus chakra ... and while they do this ... focus on feeling at peace ... and in harmony with yourself ... and with those close to you ... believe that good things are going to happen ... and everything in life will feel fine.*

Spend a minute on this chakra before moving on to the next

*Now focus on the heart chakra ... in the middle of your breastbone ... and above your chest ... and opening up at the front and back of your body. Feel this chakra begin to open at the front and back of you ... as you take each breath. Now visualise a glowing ball of green light coming towards you ... and as it gets closer ... see it split into two green balls of light ... making it easier for you to draw into the front and back of your heart chakra. As you draw them into the front and back ... they become brighter and warmer ... filling your whole body with the colour of green. Feel them pulsating ... cleansing ... and balancing your heart chakra ... and while they do this ... focus on radiating warmth and happiness ... expressing your love ... wisdom ... and empathy to every being and everything around you ... and universal awareness and growth ... that will supply you with physical and psychic protection.*

Spend a minute with this chakra before moving on to the next

*Now focus on the throat chakra at the hollow of your throat ... and opening up at the front and back of your neck. Feel this chakra begin to open at the front and back of you ... as you take each breath. Now visualise a glowing ball of blue light coming towards you ... and as it does ... see it split into two blue balls of light ... making it easier for you to draw into the front and back of your throat chakra. As you draw them into the front and back ... they become brighter and warmer ... filling your whole body with the colour of blue. Feel them pulsating ... cleansing ... and balancing your throat chakra ... and while they do this ... focus on expressing your thoughts and feelings ... and see yourself communicating your creativity in a confident ... and professional way ... enabling you to push your plans forward ... and influencing your position within society.*

Spend a minute with this chakra before moving on to the next

*Now focus on the third eye chakra ... in the middle of your forehead ... and opening up at the front and back of your head. Feel this chakra begin to open at the front and back of you ... as you take each breath. Now visualise a glowing ball of purple light coming towards you ... and as it does ... see it split into two purple balls of light ... making it easier for you to draw into the front and back of your third eye chakra. As you draw them into the front and back ... they become brighter and warmer ... filling your whole body with the colour of purple. Feel them pulsating ... cleansing ... and balancing your third eye chakra ... and while they do this ... focus on visualising and understanding concepts ... and your ability to develop your ideas in a practical way. Be aware that your subconscious is active ... and that you are now able to visualise ... and develop your psychic ability with meditation or self-hypnosis.*

Spend a minute on this chakra before moving on to the next

*Now focus on the crown chakra ... at the very top and centre of your head ... and opening up to the sky. Feel this chakra begin to open wider ... as you take each breath. Now visualise a glowing ball of violet light coming towards you ... and as you draw it into your crown chakra ... it becomes brighter and warmer ... filling your whole body with the colour of violet. Feel it pulsating ... cleansing ... and balancing your crown chakra ... and while it does this ... focus on the cosmic energy flowing through your body ... feel your spiritual and earthly life working in unison ... be receptive to the spiritual energy from the higher planes. See through the illusions within your life ... and feel yourself connecting and merging with the divine. You are now in complete control ... and able to tap into the power of your subconscious mind ... to receive information and answers from your inner or Higher self ... and able to examine your past ... present ... and view your possible future.*

Spend a minute on this chakra, and when you are ready you can start to close them down.

## **Closing the Chakras**

*When closing your chakras ... start with the base chakra and focus on slowing it down by turning off a switch ... or any other method you can visualise. Do not fully close the base chakra as it always stays open. You will know how far to close it ... and when you have ... then seal and protect it ... by mentally drawing a circle of light around it.*

Spend a few moments closing this chakra before moving on to the next

*When you have done that go on to the next five chakras ... from the sacral to the third eye. This time ... close them all completely ... and remember that there are two openings with each of these chakras ... one at the front and one*



*at the back. Close them fully using whatever method you like ... and then seal and protect them with your circle of light.*

Spend approximately two minutes closing these chakras before moving on to the next.

*Now move on to the crown chakra ... and leave this one open ... but slow it down using your method ... and protect it with your circle of light. After you have done that ... draw in more pure white light into your body ... and feel it cleanse and refresh you. Do this a few times then focus on your feet.*

Spend approximately one minute before moving on

*Feel your feet being rooted to the ground again ... and making them feel heavy. Feel your chakra energies settling down ... and feel yourself coming back in tune with your body. Ask for guidance ... love ... protection ... and growth ... and when you have said or asked what you feel is necessary ... give thanks and sit quietly for a moment.*

When you are ready, continue with the Coming-Up Exercise.

# Spirit Guides



Before we move on to spirit guides we first need to take a look at the ego and the role it plays in our lives.

## The Ego

Our ego is part of us and is used to push ourselves towards our goals, build up our confidence and survive in this “dog-eat-dog” world. However, it can also be a barrier to spiritual awareness, because as you are trying to make contact with your spirit guides through meditation or self-hypnosis, your ego may decide to manifest itself in some form making you think you had made contact with a spirit guide. In fact you were visualising yourself in a different guise and taking guidance from yourself.

To release your ego you need to do all the following exercises:

- The Breathing Exercise
- The Relaxation Exercise
- The Garden Visualisation
- The Grounding Exercise
- The Meeting and Releasing Your Ego Exercise
- The Coming-Up Exercise

## Meeting and Releasing Your Ego Exercise

First of all sit down and make yourself comfortable with your feet apart and flat on the floor. Do the Breathing Exercise, the Relaxation Exercise, the Garden Visualisation and the Grounding Exercise. Now continue with the next exercise.

*As you are relaxing and sitting comfortably against your tree, you notice a doorway that has been built into it. You open the door ... and go through it ... finding yourself going down some steps that are lit by lanterns. When you arrive at the bottom of the steps you start walking along a mirrored corridor ... it seems to go on forever but you are curious to find where it leads.*

*You walk a little further ... and notice a door ahead of you ... this door has a powerful warrior-like man standing by it. As you approach the door this powerful man asks you ... “Are you ready to see your ego?” ... “Are you ready to let it go?” ... “Are you ready to free yourself of it?” ... “Are you ready to work from your soul rather than from your ego?” ... and “Are you ready to embrace life without your ego making judgements?” You say yes ... and move forwards towards the powerful man ... you notice the door is so heavy and solid ... that the powerful man has to push it open for you using all of his weight.*

*As the door opens ... the powerful man asks you to enter the room and find the throne within ... to sit on it ... and wait for a moment. You enter to find the room full of purple mist ... then you hear the door close behind you. You find the throne easily and sit there for a moment ... quietly curious and excited at the same time.*

Spend a few moments with your thoughts

*Suddenly you see something approaching through the purple mist ... it seems to look like you ... then you realise it is you. This is your ego ... the one you created to protect yourself from the fears and pressures of your daily life.*

*Look at yourself as others see you ... like you are looking through the eyes of someone meeting you for the first time ... take a good look at him/her ... “What do you feel about this person?” ... “What kind of vibes is he/she projecting?” ... “What is your reaction to meeting this stranger?” Talk to your*

*ego ... and ask all the questions that you want to ask yourself when you do something that is not really you! "How does it feel being detached from your ego and its responsibilities?" "Do you feel happier ... lighter ... freer ... or powerless ... weak ... or vulnerable?" Now you are just you. If your ego tries to come back and attach itself to you ... just gently push it back ... and it will stand back.*

*Spend some time with your ego ... because without it you would not be here. However, remember that your ego can hinder the reality of situations in your life ... it can make you defensive or aggressive ... it wants you to be something you are not ... and wants you to have all the things you do not have or actually want. You are now the real you ... but if you want your ego back all you have to do is call it ... and it will come and attach itself to you again. If you decide not to work with your ego anymore ... feel the difference as to how the real you works. If you decide to free yourself of your ego ... say thank you and let it return through the purple mist to where it came from.*

*Now walk back to the heavy door ... bang on it ... and the powerful man will open it for you. You see and hear the door slowly creak open ... and you step out of the room. Briefly thank the powerful man for his assistance ... and leave back down the mirrored corridor. Do you see any changes in the corridor? When you reach the steps ... go up them ... open the door ... step out into the garden ... close the door ... and sit down against your tree ... and relax.*

When you are ready do the Coming-Up Exercise.

## **Spirit Guides**

### **What Are They?**

Spirit guides are souls or entities who have lived on Earth before. You have probably heard said by someone, that they thought their guardian angel was

with them when something went wrong at a certain point in their life. However, they can appear in many forms, such as animals, coloured lights, a breeze, a certain smell of scent or any other representation. Spirit guides have no gender because they are pure energy, but if you want them to appear in a guise that you are familiar with then they will oblige, they will always manifest in a form that your mind is compatible with. Therefore, if you expect your spirit guide to look like the magician Merlin or the Greek goddess Aphrodite, then it will usually appear in that form.

We all have more than one spirit guide and some always stay with us and some come and go to teach us specific lessons during our lives. We all have protective guides and they stay with us always, and other spirit guides will come with a specific role to help you with your development, and will move on when you have learnt what is needed. You have the opportunity to learn and grow spiritually if you are able to acknowledge the presence of your guides and work with their energies.

Spirit guides are interested in the work you are involved in, and their main concern is to teach you the spiritual truth and knowledge that is held back from most people who live on the earthly plane. They are willing to help and want you to do well but you have to ask permission, and they will not do anything until you ask. When you do they will come to encourage you to learn the lessons of life, but they will not do it for you. You will probably end up feeling that you need to take a good look at yourself and maybe make changes to some aspects of your life, and they will definitely leave you to take responsibility for yourself. Spirit guides will not tell you what to do, they will leave that up to you to make your choices, and besides, it will hinder your spiritual growth if they told you exactly what to do. However, they will guide you in the right direction, teach you important lessons, keep you safe and help you to achieve your goals in life.

Do not confuse your spirit guides with ghosts. Ghosts are a different form of energy and a much more confused one at that, possibly a fragment of their memory that has become detached from its soul energy and has not managed to cross over into the spirit world. They do not understand or will not accept that they have passed away and are still attached to the earthly plane, which stops them from moving completely into the spiritual plane. Ghosts are lost and lonely, they are usually wandering around looking for *your* help and guidance, and the only way to help a ghost to move on is with love and compassion. They are not dangerous but can be a nuisance, so if you see one, it is best to leave it alone. If you have one at home and want it to move on you will need help from a medium unless you have the ability to do it yourself.

Going back to spirit guides, when you do manage to make contact trust what you see, have confidence in yourself, in what you see and in what advice you may receive.

### **Questions to Ask Your Spirit Guide**

When you are in contact with your spirit guide be aware of questions such as the following ones while you are induced in meditation or self-hypnosis:

- What am I feeling, seeing or sensing now?
- What message is my guide trying to communicate to me?

The following questions to ask your spirit guide are more personal:

- Will you help me with what I am supposed to learn in this lifetime?
- How can I make my spiritual growth an easier journey?
- What specific actions can I take to make it easier to follow my spiritual path?
- Why do I never have enough money?
- What can I do to create more abundance in my current life?

- What is my highest spiritual goal at this time?
- How can I become more creative?
- Why am I always angry with my partner?
- Why can't I find the right partner?
- What can I do to improve the communication with my spirit guides?
- What is needed to improve my psychic ability regarding my Tarot cards?
- How can I improve my psychic readings to help others?
- Why do I feel so tired all the time?

The list of questions can go on forever, so you need to establish what you want to ask your spirit guide when you make contact, and make your questions honest, open, specific and straight to the point.

## **Contacting Your Spirit Guide**

When making contact with your spirit guides you will need to do the following exercises:

- The Breathing Exercise
- The Relaxation Exercise
- The Garden Visualisation
- The Grounding Exercise
- The Ego Exercise (Optional)
- The Contacting Your Spirit Guide Exercise
- The Coming-Up Exercise

Firstly sit down and make yourself comfortable with your feet apart and flat on the floor, close your eyes, do the Breathing Exercise, the Relaxation Exercise, the Garden Visualisation, and the Ego Exercise if you wish. Now continue with the following exercise:

*While you are still relaxing there in your garden ... imagine a bright white light coming from above ... entering the top of your head ... and filling your whole body. Feel it travelling through every cell ... joint ... and muscle throughout your body ... pulsating ... cleansing ... and refreshing as it goes through. Feel all the tension and stresses just drifting away with every breath you take. Feel your body and soul being revitalised. As you inhale ... draw in more pure white light ... and let it flow out of your heart ... fingers ... and toes as you exhale ... and see this pure white light now swirling around you ... protecting you ... and cushioning you from harm. Now you are totally protected by this aura of pure white light.*

Spend a minute feeling this protection.

*You are now ready to meet and communicate with your spirit guides ... and suddenly a door opens within the tree. You stand up and go through the door ... and find yourself going down some steps that are lit with lanterns. As you get to the bottom of the steps ... you are in a mirrored corridor with many doors down each side ... and you are curious as to what is behind these doors ... but intuitively know that you have to keep walking down the corridor. As you are walking along you notice a door at the very far end of the mirrored corridor ... that is surrounded by a brilliant white light.*

*As you get closer still ... you see an old man with a long white beard ... carrying a long staff ... and sitting on a throne beside the door. As you approach the door the old man asks "Are you ready to see your spirit guides?" ... and "Have you got your questions prepared?" Answer yes ... and move towards him. The old man stands up ... and bangs his staff three times on the door ... it starts to slowly open. The old man tells you that your spirit guides are beyond this door ... and asks you to enter. As you enter into the brilliant white light ... you immediately feel surrounded by love ... and notice flashes of coloured lights dotted around ... and moving within the white*



*light. Take a few moments to get your bearings within this strange dimension ... and to adjust your eyes to the light.*

Spend a minute adjusting to this environment.

*Suddenly you notice a presence coming towards you ... this presence may appear as a coloured or white light ... a sound ... a human form ... or another way that you can relate to ... and makes you feel comfortable. This is your spirit guide. Ask your guide to present itself ... greet your guide ... and ask if it has any information that may be valuable to you at this time. Note what you feel ... see ... or sense ... as your spirit guide comes closer. "What is the message your spirit guide is trying to communicate with you?" Commit to memory what you see and hear in the presence of this pure spirit.*

*Ask your spirit guide if it has a name you can use in future communication ... and say that name in your head so that you don't forget it. Carry on a conversation with your guide ... and ask it to help you to open a path of communication for future contact. Ask if your guide is a specialist in any particular field ... start to ask more questions ... as many as you like ... and repeat your guides responses in your head ... so you don't forget them. Your spirit guide's loving energy is entering your aura ... and becoming stronger ... feel it cleanse you with this pure loving energy.*

Spend three minutes communicating with your spirit guide.

*When you have finished asking your questions ... and taken in your guide's responses ... enjoy the presence of your guide's energy. Before you say goodbye to your spirit guide ... ask it to strengthen a link to make it easier for you to make contact for future sessions. Thank your guide ... say goodbye ... and make your way towards the door.*

*As the door opens ... step out into the corridor where the old wise man is waiting for you. The old man tells you that your spirit guide has left a message for you in the last room on the left in the corridor ... just before you start walking back up the steps. He tells you that you will have to push the door open ... and in the middle of the room ... you will see a table with a huge dusty leather bound book on it. The old wise man tells you this book is the Book of Life ... and asks you to open this book ... and read what is on the page you open it at ... as it will tell you something that is relevant to your life at this time. Thank the wise old man ... say goodbye ... and make your way to that door.*

*As you walk down the corridor ... “How do you feel?” “Do you feel any changes within yourself?” “Do you feel enlightened?” “Has a weight lifted off your shoulders?”*

*Spend a minute on your feelings.*

*As you approach the end door on your left ... a violet light is emanating around it. You go up to the door and begin to push it open ... it needs more strength than you thought ... but it begins to creak open ... and you manage it. The violet light enters your body ... with every breath you take ... strengthening your intuition. You see the huge book on the table ... it is heavy ... but you manage to open it at a random page. Read this page ... “What is it telling you?” “Is it something you need to do?” “Is it something you had never thought of?” “Is it a message that educates you?” Whatever it is ... take it on board and repeat it in your mind so you don’t forget it.*

*When you have digested the message ... close the book ... and as you exhale ... the violet light will flow from your fingers ... toes ... heart ... and third eye. Make your way to the door ... and it will automatically slowly close behind you. Now you are back in the corridor ... begin to climb the steps ... and open the door in the tree that leads back into your garden. When you*

*are back in the garden ... close the door on the tree ... and sit down against it ... and relax.*

Spend a minute reflecting on the message in the Book of Life.

When you are ready continue with the Coming-Up Exercise.

You have now made contact with your spirit guide. You can repeat this exercise as often as you like. Be open to the advice your guide offers you, and write down the answers to your questions and the experiences you observe or feel.

## Final Thoughts



When reading the Tarot cards there is no right way, the only way is your way. Your common sense and intuition will usually dictate the reading. However, the Tarot cards will not tell you what to say it is down to you and your responsibility as to how you put your words across. We are learning all the time throughout our lives, therefore it

is advisable that you adopt this frame of mind because there is always something new to learn with the Tarot, as with any other practise, exercise or technique.

If you start to believe that you know it all you will stop growing as a psychic reader. Learning the Tarot cards takes time and patience and cannot be rushed and you will learn what you need to know all in good time. You will make mistakes along the way, we always do, but that is also part of the learning process, however it feels good when the successes start to outweigh them.

Before too long you will not be able to keep your ability to yourself and will start to do readings for your friends and family. You will eventually find that as your ability grows your friends and family will probably come to you for advice. This is the time when you will realise that you will have to set a time limit on your readings, because even though it can be very fulfilling it can also be very energy sapping. If you are working through the day, there is nothing worse than just arriving home to find someone knocking on your door expecting you to sort out their problems there and then. This is why you need to set limits and say no, and fix a time to suit you.

As you progress, your Tarot readings will become more and more accurate, which could possibly start you on a part-time career, and eventually leading to something bigger. You can start by making yourself some leaflets and buy some of those plastic leaflet holders for you to put them in, and place in New Age shops, health centres, hairdressers, beauty salons, hotels and even pubs. You can even try putting a small advert in the local newspaper. When I first started out and put an advert in the paper I had lots of calls and had lots of bookings from them. However with newspaper advertising I found that work came in cycles depending on the time of year, for example, there were obvious lulls on the follow up to Christmas, Easter and the summer holiday period. Advertising in the papers is an option that does bring in business, but you just need to find when there would be a lull in your area. Always have some business cards on you, a lot of people are interested in psychic readings and you can hand them out to interested people.

If you are out for a drink with friends ask the landlady/landlord if they wouldn't mind holding a Tarot reading night in their pub at some time during the week. The last time I did readings at a pub too many people turned up and I couldn't handle it all myself, so I had to call in another medium to help me out. Eighteen people arrived to have there readings done that night, and if I didn't get help it would have took me about nine hours to read them all, anyway it was fun though.

Another way to start is to try and get a table at a psychic fair in your local area. Quite a lot of these organisations advertise these days, however you need to get an application in well in advance, but it is well worth it because you can guarantee a decent turnout. However way you go about it, be patient, and you never know, you may hit the big time.













